

146/8

A
V O Y A G E
TO THE
C A P E O F G O O D H O P E,
TOWARDS THE
A N T A R C T I C P O L A R C I R C L E,
A N D
R O U N D T H E W O R L D:
BUT CHIEFLY INTO THE
COUNTRY OF THE HOTTENTOTS AND CAFFRES,
FROM THE YEAR 1772, TO 1776.

BY ANDREW SPARRMAN, M.D.
PROFESSOR OF PHYSIC AT STOCKHOLM, FELLOW OF THE ROYAL ACADEMY OF SCIENCES
IN SWEDEN, AND INSPECTOR OF ITS CABINET OF NATURAL HISTORY.

TRANSLATED FROM THE SWEDISH ORIGINAL.

WITH PLATES.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

L O N D O N:

PRINTED FOR G. G. J. AND J. ROBINSON, PATER-NOSTER-ROW.

M DCC LXXXV.

8



P R E F A C E.

RELATIONS of voyages and travels have at all times, and in all ages, since the invention of letters, been favourably received by the public: but, perhaps, in no age so well as in the present; writings of this kind being bought up with avidity and read with eagerness, more especially in this island, not only by the learned and polite, but also by the rude and illiterate. The reason is evident. The age in which we live, has not unfrequently been accused of frivolity and indolence. With what justice, it is not our business at present to determine. Its turn for experiment, however, and disposition to enquire into facts is universally acknowledged: and indeed, may, perhaps, be partly deduced from the principle above-mentioned. Now every authentic and well-written book of voyages and travels is, in fact, a treatise of experimen-

tal philosophy. From these sources natural history derives its most copious streams : and the observations which, in compositions of this kind, every where occur on winds and seasons, soils and climates, in short, on the whole of what may be called *still nature*, are undoubtedly of the greatest advantage to physical science. With respect to moral philosophy and metaphysics, it may be sufficient to mention the works of PAUW, RAYNAL, KAIMES, and ROBERTSON, to evince the utility of journals and descriptions of voyages in these and similar researches. It is also worthy of observation, that it is the modern philosophers chiefly, and the living instructors of our own times, who have mostly had recourse to these treasures, as containing the best materials for the purpose of building their systems, or at least, as being best adapted to the support and confirmation of their doctrines.

Few, indeed, are the travellers, whose writings may be relied on as the pure sources of truth, unadulterated with error, or undisguised by wilful misrepresentation. But is the number of writers answering to this description greater among those who have collected and reported facts, avowedly for the purpose of rendering them subservient to philosophy ? Have not, on the contrary, the major part of these collectors greatly distorted and misrepresented the facts they have laid before the public, in consequence of a previous attachment to favourite systems ? Doubtless they have ;

have; and it is therefore in the original writers of itineraries and journals, that the philosopher looks for genuine truth and real observation; as the authors of them for the most part have had neither philosophical abilities, nor any other motive sufficient to induce them to report these facts, otherwise than they have presented themselves to their notice.

The author of this journal, though a man of much *real* knowledge and genuine learning, discovers in every page of his book too little attachment to system and hypothesis, to allow us to suppose him likely to be guilty of a similar error. Fired with the love of science and of truth, he set out for the desert wilds of Africa, without money, and without friends or support of any kind; and was even obliged to labour for some time, before he could acquire wealth enough to enable him to put his favourite scheme in execution. In this respect, indeed, he may deserve to be compared to our illustrious countryman, the present president of the Royal Society, whose zeal for the promotion of useful knowledge induced him, at nearly the same age, though at a somewhat earlier period, to go on a much more dangerous and extensive expedition, than that which is the principal subject of the following sheets, and to sacrifice fortune, ease and health, in the cause of science.

Indeed, exclusively of the considerations above-mentioned, the work itself in every page bears evident marks of
that

that passionate regard for truth, which first inspired the undertaking. In the descriptions of animals he is accurate to a degree; insomuch that it is to be feared, that some of his readers, who are not sufficiently apprized of their general utility, may think him tedious: but in describing scenes and situations, whether partaking of the sublime, the beautiful, or the ridiculous, he is no longer an author, he is a painter: and, quitting his pen for the pencil, sets every object before us in colours equally vivid with those of nature herself. Physician, naturalist, and philosopher, neither human manners, nor civil institutions, rural œconomy, nor police, nothing, in fine, escapes the keenness of his observation. Never relying on the relations of others, except when it is impossible for him to do otherwise, he sees every thing with his own eyes, and trusts only to the report of his own senses: and at the same time knows perfectly well (which is never the case with the ignorant traveller) both how to see and what to look for. Hence we have so many accurate descriptions and drawings of animals never before seen, or else strangely misrepresented by his predecessors.

In fact, the account given by him of the whole face of the country, may be considered, in a great measure, as new: though (besides such navigators as have occasionally touched at the Cape, from whom, indeed, much information could not possibly be expected) several others, the

chief of whom are KOLBE and DE LA CAILLE, have either resided in this part of the world for several years, or made expeditions into the country previously to our author. It might appear invidious in us to expatiate on their demerits, or to enquire into the causes of their failure in their respective undertakings. We will therefore rather confine ourselves to that which is the subject of the following sheets.

Our author, together with a spirit of observation not seen in every traveller, had, as we are informed by his friend Mr. GEORGE FORSTER, admittance into the houses of the first families at the *Cape*. This advantage he seems to have been very solicitous to turn to the best account; and to it we, perhaps, in a great measure, owe the annexed map of the country, which is certainly no small acquisition to geographical science.—Before he had attained the state of manhood, he had prepared himself for an expedition of this nature, by a voyage which he made under his kinsman, the Chevalier EKEBERG; and the *Amœnitates Academicæ*, published under the inspection of the great LENNAUS, exhibited divers proofs that he had not made the voyage in vain. On his return to *Upsal*, he applied to the study of physic; but his attention was principally engrossed by the science of botany, which he pursued with the greatest ardour under its celebrated restorer, and became one of his favourite disciples. With an education of this kind,

that passionate regard for truth, which first inspired the undertaking. In the descriptions of animals he is accurate to a degree; insomuch that it is to be feared, that some of his readers, who are not sufficiently apprized of their general utility, may think him tedious: but in describing scenes and situations, whether partaking of the sublime, the beautiful, or the ridiculous, he is no longer an author, he is a painter: and, quitting his pen for the pencil, sets every object before us in colours equally vivid with those of nature herself. Physician, naturalist, and philosopher, neither human manners, nor civil institutions, rural œconomy, nor police, nothing, in fine, escapes the keenness of his observation. Never relying on the relations of others, except when it is impossible for him to do otherwise, he sees every thing with his own eyes, and trusts only to the report of his own senses: and at the same time knows perfectly well (which is never the case with the ignorant traveller) both how to see and what to look for. Hence we have so many accurate descriptions and drawings of animals never before seen, or else strangely misrepresented by his predecessors.

In fact, the account given by him of the whole face of the country, may be considered, in a great measure, as new: though (besides such navigators as have occasionally touched at the Cape, from whom, indeed, much information could not possibly be expected) several others, the

chief of whom are KOLBE and DE LA CAILLE, have either resided in this part of the world for several years, or made expeditions into the country previously to our author. It might appear invidious in us to expatiate on their demerits, or to enquire into the causes of their failure in their respective undertakings. We will therefore rather confine ourselves to that which is the subject of the following sheets.

Our author, together with a spirit of observation not seen in every traveller, had, as we are informed by his friend Mr. GEORGE FORSTER, admittance into the houses of the first families at the *Cape*. This advantage he seems to have been very solicitous to turn to the best account; and to it we, perhaps, in a great measure, owe the annexed map of the country, which is certainly no small acquisition to geographical science.—Before he had attained the state of manhood, he had prepared himself for an expedition of this nature, by a voyage which he made under his kinsman, the Chevalier EKEBERG; and the *Amœnitates Academicæ*, published under the inspection of the great LINNAUS, exhibited divers proofs that he had not made the voyage in vain. On his return to *Upsal*, he applied to the study of physic; but his attention was principally engrossed by the science of botany, which he pursued with the greatest ardour under its celebrated restorer, and became one of his favourite disciples. With an education of this kind,

kind, which, it must be owned, was the most favourable that could well have been imagined to such a purpose, he set out for the *Cape*, at a time of life the best adapted to an enterprize of this nature, nominally to instruct the children of M. KERSTE, the resident at that place; but in reality, to search for the works of the Creator in a part of the world hitherto hardly known to naturalists. How he has succeeded, the reader must judge for himself.—But it was not this obscure corner of the globe only that he was destined to illustrate. By the arrival of the RESOLUTION and ADVENTURE at the Cape with Messrs. FORSTER, he had an opportunity offered him of extending his researches to an infinitely greater distance, and all nature now lay open to his view. It was, perhaps, not more to the advancement of natural knowledge than to that of these gentlemen's reputations, that chance threw so great a zoologist as Dr. SPARRMAN in their way at so critical a juncture; and it is to be hoped, that we shall one day be informed of the extent of our obligations to him on this score. In the mean while, we must content ourselves with the few specimens he has given us in the Swedish Transactions, where he has inserted, and still continues to insert, the various discoveries he has made on the continent of Africa.

Our author having, in December 1775, during his absence from his native country, been promoted to the degree
of

P R E F A C E.

ix

of doctor of phyfic, was on his return home made a member of the Royal Academy at *Stockholm*, and of several other learned societies. After the death of the great entomologist Baron DE GEER, who had engaged Dr. SPARRMAN to live with him at his house, the Baron having bequeathed his magnificent collection of natural curiosities to the Academy, our author was made inspector of it. He was likewise invested by the Academy with the nominal dignity of professor: and, on resigning to his successor the charge of president of this society, after having held it for the space of three months, pronounced an oration "on the augmentation and advantages which science in general, and more particularly that of natural history, have acquired, and are farther likely to acquire, from exploring the Pacific Ocean." Published at Stockholm in 1778.

To this short account of the author it may be necessary to add, that we have taken the liberty of reforming the orthography of most of the places mentioned in the course of the work, both with respect to the map and to the work itself: the author, whose pursuit was things and not words, having been careless in his language, and more especially in his nomenclature, to a high degree: as likewise that we have adopted the divisions into chapters and sections made by the editor of the German translation, as rendering the following sheets more intelligible,

VOL. I.

a

and

and greatly relieving the attention of the reader. Having mentioned this, we will no longer trespass on the reader's time and patience, but leave this work, which, to use the words of Mr. GEORGE FORSTER, the author's friend and German editor, is *adapted to every class of readers*, in the hands of its best judge and protector, the Public.

I N T R O D U C T I O N.

I N the month of September I had occasion to think of making a voyage to the southernmost promontory of Africa. What gave rise to this design, was the following circumstance.

The ingenious Captain EKEBERG, who never neglects any opportunity of promoting the interests of science, had, during a short visit he had made to the Cape of Good Hope, made it his business to obtain permission to send thither a natural historian.

But in order that this person, in the course of his researches after plants, insects, and other objects of his inquiry, might not run the risque of being considered as a spy on the country and its government, and at the same time that he might compass his intentions with as little expence as possible, it was agreed that he should instruct

the resident's children in *Falſe-bay* in geography, French, and mathematics.

M. EKEBERG was no ſtranger to the turn I had for natural hiſtory, having been acquainted with it in the courſe of a voyage to Canton in China, which I had the happineſs to make under his command, in the years 1765 and 1766. He therefore had me in view when he thought on this voyage to the Cape.

I accepted his offer with the greateſt pleaſure, as I had long wiſhed for an opportunity of ſeeing diſtant parts of the world. Still, however, it depended entirely on the ſpecial favour of the directors of the Royal Swediſh Eaſt-India Company, whether I could be allowed a paſſage in ſome veſſel bound for the *Cape* and *Canton*.

M. EKEBERG, therefore, mentioned my intended voyage to the board, as likely to be of ſervice to ſcience. From the conſideration of ſo ſpecious an object, I was flattered by theſe gentlemen with the greateſt hopes of ſucceſs in my application, till ſuch time as, agreeably to their ſtatutes, a written petition ſhould be preſented to them on this ſubject.

The late Archiater LINNÆUS, as zealous for the advancement of his favourite ſcience as he was deeply ſkilled in it, heard of this with peculiar pleaſure; and, in his own name, drew up a petition for the voyage to be made.

The

The directors * well knowing, that a well-regulated commerce as well as navigation in general, has its foundation in science, and at the same time receives light from it, while this, in return, derives support from, and owes its extension to the two former, not only consented to what I requested, but likewise, in their great kindness, went beyond my desires.

Accordingly they ordered, that I should have my passage gratis from Gottenburg to the Cape, together with every convenience, in one of their ships, called the *Castle of Stockholm*, which, it was expected, would be ready to sail on the Christmas following. The last-mentioned place was pitched upon, for the first station to be resorted to for the purpose of taking in refreshments in our way to China.

Before I begin the journal of my travels, I must assure every gentleman of a hearty welcome, who intends doing me the honour to accompany me in them by means of this paper-conveyance, provided he will deign to be pleased with his entertainment.

* BARON FABIAN LOEVEN.

Messieurs PETER THEODORE KOENIG.

———— MARTIN HOLTERMAN.

———— DAVID OF SANDEBERG.

———— JOHN ABRAHAM GRILL.

———— JOHN MALM ERICSSON.

———— CHARLES GODFREY KYSEL.

A man

A man who travels to a great distance from home, can never meet with the objects of his researches in the order and arrangement that he himself would wish for: how then should he be able to dispose and arrange his travels upon paper, agreeably to every one's peculiar taste and liking? With respect to my style, which, in consequence of my being unused to composition, is sometimes so unequal, as well as unhappy in point of expression, that I have frequently been displeased with it myself, I have need, more than most authors, to beg for the reader's kind indulgence. In fact, all my writing for these many years past, has consisted chiefly in short notes and memorandums, expressed sometimes in one language and sometimes in another, (just as my occupations and the part of the world I was in gave occasion to) and sometimes in many languages blended together in one. From this medley I have now translated and expressed in a more diffuse style, and in my native language, what I had formerly set down, in the manner above-mentioned, by way of memorandum only. And though I do this with pleasure, conceiving it to be a duty I owe to my curious and inquisitive countrymen, yet the performance of this task is by no means unattended with anxiety; inasmuch as on account of the want of practice for many years, proceeding from my attention to affairs of greater importance, I do not find myself

self able to come up to the reader's wishes in this particular.

Nevertheless, though I can pledge myself for the principal article requisite in all compositions of this kind, viz. for the truth of the occurrences here related, it will be of no avail, if at the same time, I cannot avoid being considered as being rather unsuccessful in the choice of my materials, in the variety and uncommonness of them, and lastly, in the style and manner in which they are presented to the public. Indeed, it has been given me to understand, that from one, whom a restless inquisitive disposition has enticed from his native country, to follow the calls of destiny all round the globe, and more particularly through the land of the Hottentots and the wild and desert regions of Africa, from such a man accounts are expected of a most entertaining and wonderful import. Nor is this expectation absolutely ill-founded. Nature has presented herself to me in various shapes, always worthy of admiration, often enchanting, and sometimes terrible, and clothed with horror. But at the same time I must apprise the reader, that a great many prodigies and uncommon appearances, about which I have frequently been asked by many, who have been brought to entertain these conceits by perusing the descriptions of others, are not to be found in my journal. Men with one foot, indeed, Cyclops, Syrens, Troglodytes, and such like imaginary beings, have almost entirely disappeared

appeared in this enlightened age. At the same time, however, many have been hitherto induced to give credit to tales almost as marvellous, with which authors, who have before me visited and described the Hottentots, have feigned their relations, in order to make them go down the better with the public. So that the reader must not be surprized to find my accounts frequently differ much from those of various of my predecessors; and at the same time, I shall now and then be obliged to take up my own and his time with some very narrow limitations of what they have advanced. Otherwise, in fact, the public would have reason to doubt of my own veracity.

I must here likewise previously inform the reader, that I do not undertake to give a full and complete history of the Cape of Good Hope, but merely such relations concerning every thing remarkable, as I have either been able to collect, or have myself observed with respect to this part of the world. A deficiency of this kind may, perhaps, even in matters of importance, meet with a ready excuse from many of my readers, when it is considered, that without being either rich myself, or in the least supported by others, I undertook an expedition, which, when considered with respect to these circumstances, will appear to be of no small extent. The whole of the sum that I took out with me to bear my travelling expences was about twenty-five rix-dollars, and what, by dint of œconomy, I had made myself

self master of by the time I got home, was somewhat more than double that sum.

Thus so far was I from being able to purchase collections, or to obtain at my ease, or by dint of money, opportunities of enlarging the sphere of my knowledge, that I even could not possibly arrive at them without great trouble and danger. In this case, I have been obliged to content myself with what fortune has thrown in my way, as I may say, gratis.

The arranging by way of journal the occurrences and events which I have described, though in certain respects it be not the best method, is yet in general, the most natural. In order to acquire an adequate idea of a variety of objects out of the great number of those that have presented themselves, it conduces not a little to know on what days they were seen. In fact, the time, the manner, and the order, in which things occur, are accidental circumstances from which much light may be derived. But the greatest advantage accruing from this method is, that hereby it becomes easier both for the writer and reader to distinguish, what is the actual result of the author's own experience, from what he has, in defect of this, been obliged to advance on the strength of the information given him by others.

At the same time, in order to come to a more speedy and pleasing conclusion of the travels themselves, certain descriptions, critical strictures, and reflections are deferred

at present, which will be inserted at the end of the second volume *, partly in the form of notes to this, and partly constituting distinct heads by themselves. Above two thousand of the productions of nature hitherto unknown, which, in consequence of a moderate degree of attention only, I have discovered in Africa, (a country in many respects very different from the rest of the globe) but have not been able as yet fully to arrange and put in order, cannot have place here, either described at full length, or in the more compressed form of sketches and definitions.

* This second volume, if it should ever appear, must evidently be considered as a work of a very different nature from the present: the translator, therefore, did not think himself bound to take any notice of it in the title-page.

C O N-

C O N T E N T S.

I N T R O D U C T I O N.

Occasion and design of the voyage. Some general reflections and strictures on writers of travels and voyages.

C H A P. I.

VOYAGE FROM GOTENBURGH TO THE CAPE.

Departure from Gottenburgh in Sweden. Description of a violent storm. Distressed situation of a Dutch vessel. Lights in the sea. A dissertation on their nature and their different species. Arrival at the Cape, p. 6.

C H A P. II.

RESIDENCE AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE TILL THE AUTHOR'S VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH SEA.

S E C T. I.

Residence at Cape Town.

Description of the Cape Town and the adjacent country. The author waits on the governor and commandant. Sketch of the character and history of Baron Van PREHM, p. 13.

C O N T E N T S.

S E C T. II.

Residence at Bay Falso.

Goes to Bay Falso to wait on the resident, whose children he is to educate. Is entertained on the road at night by a rich boor, with gritty bread, and meat preserved with pepper. Peculiar courtesy of the French nation contrasted with the manners of the Dutch at this colony. Meets with his old chum, Dr. Thunberg, at Cape Town. Description of False Bay and the adjacent country. Dutch politeness at table. Story of an English lady going to be married in the East-Indies. Seal-shooting. The torpedo. Description of various fishes, insects, and plants, p. 29.

S E C T. III.

Residence at Alphen, near Constantia, till the author's trip to Paarl.

Removes to Constantia with the resident. The plants there. The vineyard. The silver-tree. Uncommon disposition of Table-mountain, with respect to rain. Beautiful prospect from the south-side of it. Adventures in consequence of losing his way at night. Dissertation on the Constantia and Cape wines. Hout-bay described. The palmites plant. Divers kinds of small antilopes. Several sorts of viverræ, or weasels. The method of catching them, and their uses. A young hippopotamus. The esteem in which botany is held at the Cape, exemplified in the behaviour of a Cape physician, p. 50.

S E C T. IV.

Trip to Paarl.

Letter to a brother sailor, describing a six-weeks excursion made on foot in October. Hires a bastard, a man of family, for his guide. Racks, wheels, and gibbets, exposed in the public roads. New species of cicindela. Is taken up by a waggon drawn by twelve oxen, but soon quits it. Concert of jackalls, frogs and owls. Is lodged and entertained by a slave. Battle between the house-slave and the cow-herd. The sorts of seed sown in this colony. Curious method of serving at the same time God and mammon. Salutation of a boor. The author
very

C O N T E N T S.

xxi

very ungallantly neglects to requite the services of a female slave. A slave's revenge on his niggardly master. At a rich widow's house is in danger of being kicked out of doors, on his hat being discovered with the brim stuck full of insects. Floats naked over the river to an islet on a bundle of palmites plants, in order to botanize there. Behaviour of a surly but hospitable miller. Makes a sexton and his wife happy, by prognosticating the death of the latter. Is hospitably received by a learned boor. The tower of Babel. Drunken soldiers. Obligated, together with his host, to bolt his chamber-door, for fear of being murdered by the slaves. A curious love-scale. Prices of slaves and cattle. Bad consequences of the slave-trade. His guide has not the least idea of a deity. Conclusion of the letter, p. 77.

S E C T. V.

Residence at Alphen, after the author's return from Paarl.

Observations on the uniola and pifang, p. 79.

C H A P. III.

VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH SEA.

S E C T. I.

The circumstances which gave occasion to this Voyage.

Goes round the world with Capt. Cook, as an assistant to Messrs. Forster.
The occasion of his undertaking this voyage, p. 84.

S E C T. II.

Voyage from the Cape of Good Hope to New-Zealand.

Continuation of the journal of the voyage, p. 87.

S E C T.

S E C T. III.

First Voyage from New Zealand to Otakeite, and from thence back again to New Zealand.

Some events not related by Cook and Forster, p. 91.

S E C T. IV.

Second Voyage from New Zealand to Otakeite, and from thence back again.

Journal continued, p. 97.

S E C T. V.

Voyage from New Zealand to Terra del Fuego, and from thence farther on towards the South Pole.

Journal continued, p. 99.

S E C T. VI.

Return to the Cape of Good Hope.

Return to the Cape. Ship's provisions utterly spoiled, p. 104.

C H A P. IV.

JOURNEY FROM CAPE TOWN TO THE COUNTRY OF THE CAFFRES.

S E C T. I.

Residence at Cape Town, previous to the author's African Expedition.

Dangerous situation of a vessel in Table-bay. A shipwreck. Lives of the crew saved by an old soldier on horseback. Cruelty and ingratitude of
of

of the government at the Cape. Humane institution of the Chinese in these cases. Register of the weather at the Cape, for May, June, and July, 1775, p. 113.

S E C T. II.

Preparations for the African Expedition.

Undertakes an expedition into the interior parts of the country. Equipment for that purpose. Buys a waggon with twelve oxen. Is accompanied by Mr. Immelman, the son of an officer at the Cape, p. 119.

S E C T. III.

Journey from the Cape to the Warm Bath.

Bad accommodations on the road. Manner of travelling in the African waggons. Description of Gustavus's sceptre, a plant. No bridges in Africa. Account of the manner in which they pass the rivers with waggons in this country. Description of the landscape about Bot-river. Wretched wine at Agter de Berg. Sees various sorts of gazels in his way to the warm bath; and likewise whole troops of zebras. Ostrich-hunting. Method of reckoning the length of journies here; and of harnessing the oxen, p. 135.

S E C T. IV.

Residence at the Warm Bath.

Hottentot-Holland's warm baths described. The bathing-houses and wells. Chemical analysis of the waters. Cures performed by means of them. Dissertation on their origin. Remains of a volcano. Onkjes, vernal flowers of the iris kind; their uses in food, and in reckoning time. Shoots a wild cat in a tree. The different sorts of them in this country enumerated and examined. Description of a porcupine-hunt. Cape partridges and pheasants, the korr-hen, and secretaries-bird, otherwise called the serpent-eater, described. Uses of this latter, and its manner of attacking serpents. The author frequently visits a patient in these parts, and is paid in milk and provisions. Wild dogs very dangerous animals. Their manners. Hunt in packs, and sometimes
3 turn,

turn, when hunted, and hunt their pursuers. Tiger-wolf, or hyæna, eats up the carcases and bones of animals which are left untouched by other wild beasts, and would otherwise contaminate the atmosphere. Its cowardly but artful manner of attacking other animals. By imitating the cries of other creatures, it decoys them away from the rest of the herd, with a view to devour them. Is the most voracious as well as watchful of all animals. Betrays its approach by an involuntary barking, proceeding from an empty and constantly craving stomach. At night is suffered to enter the town at the Cape, being of great use in clearing the shambles. Adventure of a drunken trumpeter with a hyæna. This species never before accurately described. Eats up one of the traces belonging to the author's waggon. Pretended change of its sex accounted for; as likewise the stories of its imitating the human voice, and enchanting the shepherds, so that they cannot stir from the spot where they are. Seldom caught, and hardly ever shot. Use of this creature's long shaggy coat, p. 171.

C H A P. V.

JOURNEY FROM THE WARM BATH TO ZWELLENDAM.

The driver has not the least knowledge of the road. Not being able to get a Hottentot any where to lead their oxen, make a virtue of necessity, and turn ox-leaders themselves. Procures a Hottentot to drive his waggon, who gets at the brandy the author had taken with him, for the purpose of preserving animals in, and treats his companions with it. The author and his friend in danger of being murdered by these fellows in their liquor. The author puts a live serpent into the liquor. Hottentots used to swallow the poison of serpents, considering it as a preservative against the bite of these animals. Is cheated in the bargain he made for his oxen. One of them runs home. The farm and forest at Tiger-hoek described. Description of the persons, clothing, ornaments, and arms of the Hottentots. Besmeared with grease and foot, which alters their natural complexion. This ill described by authors. The males have no defect in the organs of generation, nor have the females any superfluity in those parts: what appears there being not natural but artificial. Hottentots perfume themselves with the powder of a plant called bucku. Do not wear the intestines of animals, but a number of leathern rings about their arms and legs. Their field shoes. Method of making them particularly described. Their craals or villages and huts. Their manners and disposition. Boshies-men, or wild Hottentots. Their

Their maxims and weapons. Live in deserts on berries, caterpillars, and other insects. Their amazing voracity. Are small and slender, but, after being caught, are fattened in the space of a few weeks. The colonists hunt them like wild beasts; and frequently make parties for the purpose of catching and enslaving them. Very much given to run away, but never carry any thing off with them. Almost always in a starving state, and numbers of them perish for want. Neither they nor the Hottentots have any conception, neither can any be infused into them, of a God. Consider rain at all times as an evil. Bully the thunder. Have great faith in sorcery. The sorcerers are their physicians, and cure them of their diseases by thrashing them. Instances of various cheats put on them by their forcerers. Though superstitious, are not afraid of darkness: yet seem to have some notion of spirits and a future life. Respect, but do not worship insects of the mantis kind. Do not worship the moon. Kolbe's mistakes with respect to this point corrected. Christianity taught at Tygerhoek by a Moravian, who was accused of sinister practices. No remains of religion here at present. Two Hottentot girls pay them a visit. Their odd behaviour. The author endeavours in vain to hire a driver for the expedition. At last a lad agrees to go as far as Zwellendam with them. Sloth and idleness of the Hottentots. Hard fate and sensible reflections of a slave. Register of the weather for August. Hessaquas kloof. A singular disorder among the horses. The Landroft of Zwellendam offers him a better team of oxen. State of the weather at that place. Zebras and quaggas, both species of the wild horse. The former do not fear the hyæna, but guard the other cattle from its attacks. Both sorts eat less, and are more hardy than the common horse, and might be used for drawing. Misfortune of a man who harnessed some quaggas to his carriage, before they were properly tamed. Riet valley. Language of the Hottentots, compared with that of the Snesé Hottentots. Their musical instruments and tobacco-pipes. Curious method of smoking. Their card-playing, improperly so called by the colonists, p. 231.

C H A P. VI.

JOURNEY FROM ZWELLENDAM TO MUSCLE-BAY.

Black-monkeys. Groot Vaders-bosch. Stop a bit, a plant growing there. Lose their way at night. Saddle-oxen. Visit a Hottentot craal, and are entertained with milk curdled by being kept in the skins of animals.
 VOL. I. c Sweet

Sweet milk unwholesome. The Hottentot Captain Rundganger. Captain an empty title. Captains spies on their countrymen. Hottentots oppressed by the Dutch, and obliged to shift their quarters continually more inland. Thorn- or gum-arabic tree. Large dairy-farms. River of butter-milk. Distinction between the carrow, sour, and sweet fields. The first rendered fertile by aqueducts. Cows that gnaw each other's horns. Hottentots continually shifting their quarters, from superstitious motives: a practice which prevents the degeneration both of their lands and cattle. Colonists faulty in this respect. Rhinoceros-bush. Overflowing of Gauritz-river. Hoar frost of salt. Description of Muscle-bay. Houtniquas-land. Algoa-bay. Hints for the advancement of trade and the improvement of the colony, p. 260.

C H A P. VII.

JOURNEY THROUGH THE HOUTNIQUAS.

Animals to be found in Houtniquas. Description of the bosch-bock. Hadelde-bird. Register of the weather. Almost a whole province intoxicated with a hoghead of brandy. Description of a Hottentot mistress. Bastards not christened. Stratagem of a burgher at Batavia to get his child baptized. Style of building in this province. The author's Hottentots run away on being corrected for drunkenness. State of the weather in September, p. 291.

C H A P. VIII.

JOURNEY THROUGH LANGE DAL.

Departure from Houtniquas. Lose their way on horseback. Pass the night out of doors, exposed to a violent rain. Artaquas-kloof. Infested with a herb called p—grass, which kills the cattle with the strangury. Obligated to live abroad in the air, the walls and every part of the house being covered by flies. Curious method of killing them. Canna's land. Mistake of Mr. Mason with respect to it in the Philosophical Transactions. The Canna shrub, a new species of *salsola*, described. Method of fertilizing the most dry barren country. New method

method of dressing partridges. Immoderately fat sheep, with tails weighing above twelve pounds. The author bleeds a Hottentot lad. An instance of Dutch compassion. Hottentot women's lamentation over the dead. The boy comes to life again. African otters and fish. Taken in by a farmer's wife in a bargain about a pair of oxen. Strange case of a prolapsus uteri. Lose their way again. Unkind behaviour of some Hottentots. His horse sinks with him into the mire. Princely shepherds. Miserable condition of Hottentot fugitives. Stone-heaps. Pitfalls for the larger kind of game. Mountain Hottentots. Flight of a Hottentot child. Coal-black lizard. The dass, an animal of the *cavia* genus. Dassen-piss taken for petrolæum. Seems to be the menstrual evacuation of this animal, p. 310.

C H A P. IX.

JOURNEY FROM LANGE DAL TO SITSICAMMA, AND FROM THENCE TO
SEA-COW RIVER.

Kromme-rivier. Eschen-bosch. The pneumora, an insect supposed to live on the wind. They come to a person when called. Boshies-men carousing on elephants flesh. Description and admeasurement of the remains of the carcase. How this animal was shot by two farmers. The best methods of shooting these beasts discussed. One man will attack a whole herd of elephants. Cease to fly when wounded. Elephant's way of swimming. Histories of some dangerous rencounters with them. De la Caille's strange anecdote a mere imposition. Do not copulate like human creatures. Never seen in the act of copulation, excepting once, by two of the author's acquaintance. Elephant's diet. Expence of keeping them. History and use. Negroes buy and sell the tails at a vast price from superstitious motives. Tails described. Fossil elephant's teeth. Mammouth's bones found in Siberia are nothing but the bones of elephants. The theories of Buffon and others overturned. Lemning-mouse, and other migrating animals, adduced as proofs of the author's assertions. Divers instances of the sagacity of elephants. Wreck of the Doddington East-Indiaman on this coast. Survivors robbed by the Hottentots. A Dutch captain sent from the Cape to look after the cargo, comes back purposely without doing any thing. Bilious fever prevails among the Hottentots.

Strange

Strange method of cure used by the author. Hottentot-ball. The bee. Monkey-dance. Polygamy of the Hottentots. Pitiful case of an old polygamist. Marriage ceremony performed among the Hottentots by sprinkling the bride and bride-groom with urine. Manner of burying their dead. Bury alive or expose such children as have lost their mothers. Starve their old people to death. Extenuation of their crime. Preparations for the expedition through the desert. White ants eaten by the Hottentots. Mischief done by them. Hottentots imagine the swarms of locusts with which the country is sometimes over-run, to be sent to them for food. Locust soup. Locusts of use in clearing the lands, p. 368.

E R R A T A.

- Page 1, line 1, for A Voyage from Gottenburgh, &c. read Voyage from Gottenburgh to the CAPE.
- 18, l. 7, for quaae, read quaade.
- 40, l. 6 and 7, for figgar, read liggar.
- 64, l. 13, before the 'squire's half brother, read of.
- 179, l. 3, for Tigerhoek, read Tygerhoek.
- 236, l. 15, for wait, read stop.
- 283, l. 16, should be read thus: and was besides as well besmeared with foot and grease.

E R R A T A.

- Page 11, l. 2, from the bottom, before 66 *read at.*
 — 37, l. 3, *for* Kuranoi, *read* Kurenoi.
 — 43, l. 20, *for* orignate, *read* originate.
 — 16, l. 7, *for* peculiar, *read* singular.
 — 60, l. 4, from the bottom, after kill, *read* with guns.
 — 65, l. 8, from bottom, *for* is, *read* proves.
 — — 7, ———, after as, *read* in that case.
 — 248, l. 7, from bottom, *read* CHAP. XV. JOURNEY FROM AGTER
 BRUNTJES-HOOGTE TO THE TWO VISCH-RIVIERS, AND RE-
 SIDENCE AT THOSE PLACES.
 — 289, l. 18, *for* globules, *read* small lobes.
 — —, l. 26, *for* bafes, *read* base.
 — 300, l. 9, from bottom, *read* CHAP. XVI. JOURNEY BACK TO THE CAPE.
 — 303, bottom, *for* only, *read* but.
 — 304, l. 1, *for* and at the same time blowing, *read* blew at the same time.
 — 313, l. 7, from bottom, *for* of, *read* or.
 — 320, l. 12, *for* variatas, *read* varietas.
 — 313, bottom, *for* relation, *read* relations.

In the original of this Journal, as well as in the map, the author has written *Drooge* and *Vet-rivier*. But *Vet* is a Swedish word, signifying wet in English; and as the river spoken of is in a Dutch colony, it should doubtless have stood *Drooge* and *Natte-rivier*. We have accordingly printed it thus at page 244, Vol. I. though we have not taken the liberty of making any alteration with respect to this word in the map,

DIRECTIONS TO THE BOOK-BINDER.

The Landscape is to make the Frontispiece to the first Volume. The other Plates belonging to this Volume are to be placed at the End : the Map last of all.

The Plates belonging to the second Volume are to be placed at the End of it.

A
V O Y A G E
TO THE
C A P E O F G O O D H O P E.

C H A P. I.

A VOYAGE FROM GOTTENBURGH, &c.

ON the 10th day of January, in the year 1772, I failed from Gottenburgh in the *Castle of Stockholm*; a ship belonging to the Swedish East-India Company. The wind was favourable, so that we soon dismissed our pilots, and even in a short time lost sight of the delightful pastures of Sweden. We found the weather, as it usually is at this cold season, something milder in the open sea, than it was upon the coast. The Swedish East-Indiaman, the *Louisa*, destined for Cadiz, to take in refreshments there, with money

1772.
January.

1772.
January.

for both ships, kept us company till we passed the north of Scotland. The stormy weather however, usual in these parts, and at this time of the year, made us separate before we intended it. The wind blowing still stronger likewise, carried away our main-top-fail, though it was quite new, and made of a strong cloth. The damages were reckoned to amount to several hundred rix-dollars.

This ravage and destruction afforded in itself nevertheless a fine spectacle, which to me was entirely new. Sudden gusts of rain now combined with the night to throwd every thing in darkness. Let the reader represent to himself for a moment the foaming billows on all sides surrounding the ship, and swelling up sometimes even to our yard-arms; while the long shivers of the top-fail got loose, and being white, were distinctly discerned waving to and fro in a most alarming manner, and at length totally vanished through the darkened air. At the same time the violence of the wind caused those parts of the sails which yet remained on the mast, together with the ends of the broken cordage, to beat about, and crash with such force as for a time to drown every other noise.

This spectacle did not make the less impression, when by degrees we could better distinguish the roaring of the sea, the swell of the waves, the blustering of the wind, and the crackling noise made by the masts and the joints of the planks; particularly when to this we add, that the captain was continually roaring out, and was answered in the same strain by the men at the helm, *star-board and port*, as the stem of the ship heaved to right or left;
not

not to mention the usual noise and bustle from all quarters of the deck, the sailors and tackling being in constant agitation and motion.

1772.
February.

On the 2d day of February in the afternoon, when we had got to 34 deg. 22 min. N. lat. 1 deg. 32 min. east of the meridian of Paris, a ship at a distance fired several guns, thereby giving us to understand that she was in distress, and desirous to speak with us. We accordingly waited for her coming up, and found her to be a Dutch East-Indiaman, called the Duivenbrock, bound homewards, and commanded by Capt. CONRAD LOUE. They had lost their rudder, and in consequence of the great swell of the sea, had not been able to lash on another; on which account likewise the ship had got so far out of her course. The crew were emaciated to a great degree, and in want both of water and provisions. Our commander made them a present of as much of both as their long-boats were able to carry; but at length, the night coming on, and the wind blowing up fresher, they were deprived of that farther degree of assistance, that every one of us very much wished to give them. Even our common sailors not only shewed great compassion on their parts, but assisted them effectually out of their own stock with tobacco, and other refreshments.

On the 12th day of February, just under the tropic, or 24. 51. N. Lat. we saw a sea animal seven or eight feet long, known to sea-faring men by the name of the *sea devil*. It is reported by writers of voyages, to be very dangerous to the people engaged in the pearl-fishery. In a voyage to China I formerly made, I happened to see one

1772.
February.

of these animals, and on examining it, concluded it to be a species of RAY.

On the 21st day of February at six in the evening, 3 deg. 24. min. N. of the equator, we observed a beautiful meteor. It was like a red hot cannon-ball, which waved to and fro with a gentle whizzing noise, directly over our vessel, and between the mast-tops; but notwithstanding what the sailors prognosticated from it, it did not seem to bring with it any change of weather.

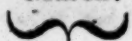
On the 4th day of March we passed the line, when a number of idle ceremonies were performed according to custom.

On the 5th, at about 37 deg. S. lat. and 21 deg. west of Paris, beside the usual lights that frequently appear sparkling, as it were, on the surface of the sea, there was seen in the night a strong gleam of light, called by the sailors *maarsken*, or sea-shine. It appeared chiefly in a round form of three feet diameter, and was like a glowing light throughout its whole extent. As the shape of it was sometimes changed to an oblong, it was conjectured, from this circumstance, to be occasioned by the dashing of the sea. With luminous bodies of this kind the whole extent of the ocean was now adorned, sometimes at the distance of several times the length of the ship from each other, and sometimes only a few feet asunder. We were not fortunate enough to examine them nearer.

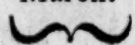
The wind at times blew fresh, being sometimes accompanied with heavy showers of rain. The next day there was nothing uncommon to be observed on the surface of the

the

the sea, that might be considered as the cause of this luminous appearance. A night or two before this, we had already begun to perceive some of these lights. The weather at that time was only overcast. Some of the most experienced among the sailors informed me, that these lights were met with particularly in the north seas, as well as in the creeks on the coast of Mexico; and that from these appearances they used to prognosticate a speedy change in the weather. The lights that are usually seen in the sea are supposed to proceed partly from the constituent parts of the sea itself, and partly from the fish and other kinds of infinitely small animals which have their abode there. But with respect to the *maarsken*, I have not found any navigators speak of them. Are they not occasioned by some slimy or gelatinous animals (such as the *mollusca*), which only of nights, at certain places, and in consequence of certain changes of the atmosphere, rise to the surface of the sea? The same rising and sinking motion, which I now observed in these animals, I remember to have perceived in the *Medusæ*, particularly in the year 1775, in the bays about the Cape of Good Hope, after my return from my voyage round the world. At that time it had been stormy the whole preceding night, with a great part of the following morning; when, to my great amazement, after so long a voyage, I now, for the first time, saw these sea-animals in such quantities, as to form a thick mass of several fathoms depth, as if they had been pressed down together. Where they were collected into a thinner mass, one might discern that one part of them was blue, another of a flame-colour, and another again of a lighter hue.

1772.
March.

1772.
March.



hue. They were mostly of the form of a necklace (*monili-formes*;) and at that time were probably driven together in so great numbers by the storm; so that the great quantities of *maarsken*, serve to give a still greater degree of credit to my conjecture. A small corner only of the sea, viz. *Table-bay*, at this time afforded nourishment to more animals at once, than perhaps are to be found on the whole face of the earth. This opened to me a door, if I may be allowed the expression, to nature's copious storehouse in the deep; so that at one hasty view I could get a glimpse of that amazing superfluity, which feeds millions of fishes, and at the same time lines the inside of the whale, that great Colossus of the deep, with that oily fatness, with which it abounds.

It may from hence be readily concluded, that it was these insects that the fat sea-lions and seals, diving and amphibious fowls, many kinds of albatrosses, (*diomedææ*) *procellariæ*, together with sea-gulls of all sorts, were in quest of, when I saw these latter so assiduously hunting about near the Cape, and in the South Sea.

On the 12th of April we got sight of the Cape, and came the same day to anchor in *Table-bay*.

C H A P. II.

RESIDENCE AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE TILL THE
AUTHOR'S VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH SEA.

S E C T. I.*Residence at Cape Town.*

THE Cape is usually mentioned in too high terms by sea-faring men; particularly by such as have been there only for a short time. The reason probably is, that people, who are weary of a long and tedious voyage of several months duration, are usually enchanted with the first spot of earth they set foot upon, of which they afterwards make their reports according to the impression it first made upon them. This is so much more likely to happen with respect to the Cape, as sea-faring men are seldom used to stay there long enough to be weary of it. On the contrary, however, it is not unusual for sailors to pine and grow unhappy even here, after being some months on shore, and to long to go to sea again. I have been informed by

1772.
March.

1772.
March.

by Captain Cook, that he, as well as Sir JOSEPH BANKS and Dr. SOLANDER, prejudiced by the relations of others, considered the Cape, the first time they saw it, as the most delightful and fertile place in the world. So that even the barren heaths to the north of the town, were at the same time very innocently mistaken for fine fields of corn.

For my part, not to lead my readers into any error concerning this point, the account I here give of the Cape has not been written without some consideration. I must, notwithstanding, previously remind them, that a view of the map inserted at the end of the book, will give the best and clearest idea of the position of the harbours and creeks of this part of the world, as well as of the names and situation of the different mountains. By this means the following description will be the more easily understood.

The town itself is the only one in the whole colony, and is properly called the *Cape*, though this name is often injudiciously given to the whole settlement. The above-mentioned town is situated between the shore and the north side of the mountain, which, in consideration of its apparent equality of surface, has obtained the name of the *Table*. According to the measurement of the Abbé de la Cailles, the shore of this bay is 550 toises above the surface of the sea, and 1344 toises in length, when taken from East to West; the middlemost part of it being situated South-east of the town, and 2000 toises from it.

Duyvel's-Kop, (the *Devil's-Head*,) called by the English *Charles Mountain*, is in a great measure connected with the *Table Mountain*, but is full 31 toises lower,


and at the same time is peaked and bare. *Leeuwen-Kop*, called by the English the *Lion's-Head*, and likewise the *Sugar-Loaf*, is a hill more separated, but less elevated, than the former: the same may be said of its neighbour, the *Leeuwen-Staart*, called by the English the *Lion's-Rump*, and likewise the *Lion's-Tail*.

1772.
March.

From one of these signals are given, by the firing of guns for every vessel that comes that way, and appears bound for the harbour. When they approach still nearer, a flag is hoisted on this mountain, which serves for a signal to the captains of the Dutch ships; but nobody but they and the governor of the Cape know, how the colour of the flag is to be varied for each respective month. The intention of this regulation is, that a Dutchman who is coming into the harbour, may immediately know, if the harbour is fallen into the hands of the enemy, and accordingly take care not to run into it.

The above-mentioned hills are in a great measure bare, and that part of Table Mountain that looks towards the town is pretty steep. The bushes and trees (if they may be so called) which here and there grow wild, are stunted partly by their own nature, and partly by the South-east and North-west winds. Hence they, most of them, look dried up, with pale blighted leaves, and, upon the whole, have a miserable appearance. Some of them, sheltered by the cliffs, and at the same time watered by the rills that run down the sides of the mountain, may perhaps be somewhat more healthy and vigorous; but they are universally deficient in that lively verdure which adorns the oaks, vines, myrtles, laurels, lemon-trees, &c. planted at the

1772.
March.



bottom near the town. Still farther on, the dry heathy lands and sandy plains on the strand, contribute to give the country an arid and barren look. It must be owned, indeed, that a considerable quantity of the most beautiful African flowers are scattered up and down in different parts during the fine season; but they cannot shew their splendid colours to any great advantage among the various kinds of grass here, which are mostly perennial and of a pallid hue, among the dry bushes, and in the fields, which, at least near the Cape, are almost continually grazed off. These plains, therefore, cannot captivate the eye, nearly so much as the European Flora, with her green meadows replete with annual grass. I am ready to allow, indeed, that the verdant plantations, together with a few acres of arable land round about the town, make a beautiful appearance, opposed to the African wilds and deserts with which they are surrounded, and which serve to set them off to a greater advantage; but then clipped and trimmed trees, with regular plantations of groves reared up by art, cannot so long keep their ground in our taste, as that lively verdure of nature which a European, at least after having resided for some time at the Cape, I think cannot help missing.

The town is small, about 2000 paces in length and breadth, including the gardens and orchards, by which one side of it is terminated. The streets are broad, but not paved; a great many of them are planted with oaks. The houses are handsome, two stories high at the most; the greatest part of them are stuccoed and white-washed on the outside, but some of them are painted green: this latter

latter colour, which is never seen upon our houses in Sweden, being the favourite colour with the Dutch for their clothes, boats, and ships.

1772.
April.

A great part of their houses as well as churches are covered with a sort of dark-coloured reed (*Restio tectorum*) which grows in dry and sandy places. It is somewhat more firm than straw, but rather finer and more brittle.

How this thatching is performed, certainly deserves the consideration of our country gentlemen and men of landed property; and a description of it will be given by Captain *Ekeberg* on some other occasion. The rest of the houses in the Cape are covered with what is called Italian tiling, which resembles the flat tiles we use for floors.

The company's gardens, so differently spoken of by KOLBE, BYRON, and BOUGAINVILLE, are the largest in the town, being 400 paces broad and 1000 long, and consisting of various quarters planted with cals, and other kinds of garden stuff, for the governor's own table, as well as for the use of the Dutch ships and of the hospital. Fruit-trees are planted in some of the quarters, which, in order to shelter them from the violence of the South-east wind, are surrounded with hedges of myrtle and elm. Besides this, the greater walks are ornamented with oaks thirty feet high, which by their shade produce an agreeable coolness, and are much resorted to by the strangers that visit the port, and chuse to walk in the heat of the day.

The four quarters that lie nearest to the governor's residence, which is situated in the pleasure-garden towards the north, have indeed some beds of flowers in them; but this pleasure-garden is very far from deserving the com-

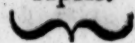
1772.
April.

mendations bestowed upon it by KOLBE, who cries it up as having no equal, and being stored with the most costly plants from all parts of the world. At the end of the pleasure-garden and to the east of it, is the menagerie, palisaded and railed off, in which are shewn *ostriches*, *casuaries*, *zebras*, and sometimes different sorts of *antilopes*, and other smaller quadrupeds, almost all of them natives of the country. In another partition are kept various foreign and domestic fowls.

The fortifications lie some hundred paces north of the town, being separated from it by a verdant mead, which is cut through with canals and roads. On both sides of the town towards the strand, batteries are placed; and to the south, where the land is higher, are seen the burial grounds of the Chinese and free Malays that live at the Cape; as well as one belonging to the Dutch, which has a wall round it. But what disgraces the town is a gallows, with racks and other horrid instruments of torture, which the governor has lately ordered to be erected in the place of honour, if I may so call it, or opposite to the fortification in the above-mentioned meadow. Besides this, the well-known hardness of heart of the Dutch settled in the Indies, has shewn itself here by two other gibbets erected within sight of the town, viz. one on each side of it.

On the 30th of April, being the morning after we came to anchor, I for the first time set foot upon African ground. The first thing I did was to wait upon the governor, Baron JOACHIM VON PLETTENBERG, to whom I paid my respects, and intimated my wish to live under his protection. As soon as he was informed of the nature of my

my appointment, he granted my request without the least difficulty; and soon offered me the privilege of practising physic, as I had given him to understand, that it had been my principal study. Upon the whole, I received great civilities from many members of the regency, particularly from the commander of the troops, Baron van PREHM, who was an African born; but, what is very rare with his countrymen, and to his honour must be mentioned, he had visited Europe, and was a lover of science. Neither must it be passed over in silence, that he had served in the capacity of a Prussian *aide de camp* in the last German war; and, as a proof of his having been in the wars, bore about him the scars of several wounds. As it may give pleasure to such as are fond of hearing that merit meets with its reward, I will add, that he returned invested with the place he now enjoys, and about the same time made his fortune, by marrying the finest woman in the whole colony.

1772.
April.

S E C T. II.

Residence at Bay Falso.

1772.
April.

ALTHOUGH I had already been some days at the Cape, I had not yet had an opportunity to see the resident, (now *sub-governor*) whose children I was to instruct. The reason was, that he was gone to *Bay Falso*, about eighteen miles from the Cape, in order to receive and make provision for the ships which had just before run into the Bay. I therefore set out to pay him a visit there; but staid over night at a respectable yeoman's, to whom I was addressed, in order that he might be my guide. Here I for the first time found, what inconveniences a man is exposed to, who does not understand the language of the people among which he lives. I had made a shift to pick up a little German in my voyage from *Gottenburgh* to the Cape; but this was but of very little service, either towards my making myself understood in this place, or towards my understanding a Dutchman in his language. The necessity, however, that I was under of communicating my thoughts, contrary to what I had supposed, increased my power of comprehending others, as well as that of expressing my own meaning. My host, who was very inquisitive with regard to affairs

1772.
April.

in Europe, as well as desirous to get some information on medical subjects, was incessantly propounding his questions to me, as well as he could, in the German tongue. I, on my side, repeated my answers again and again, expressing them, in I myself did not know what language. It should seem, that the German, Swedish, and Dutch languages have a great analogy to, and much in common with each other; but the great difference in the pronunciation of them, as well as in their dialects, seldom allows one to perceive the similitude. My phlegmatic hostess, who stood by with open mouth to overhear our conversation, without understanding one single word of it, relying upon my ignorance of the language, asked her husband, whether any thing else than absolute want of the necessaries of life in Europe could possibly induce me, and many other strangers, to come to reside in Africa? This remark shewed, that she had conceived very indifferent notions of strangers; and was the more difficult for me to digest, as they had given me a very moderate supper, consisting of stewed red cabbage, meat preserved with pepper, and gritty bread. I mention this, however, only as a proof, that the Africans, ignorant of every thing beyond the limits of their own habitation, universally entertain most advantageous and flattering ideas with respect to their own country.

The next morning I arrived at *Bay Falso*. The resident there promised to perform his engagement with Captain EKEBERG, and likewise conferred upon me immediately the post of interpreter between him and the French, who came to that harbour. The politeness of this nation in conjecturing what one is going to say, and
at

1772.
April.

at the same time correcting one in the most insinuating manner when one makes use of an improper expression in their language, was at this juncture extremely agreeable to me; and the more so, as I had not the least knowledge of the dialect and terms in use among them in India. In this kind of civility, which proceeds from a good disposition as well as a good education, many of the inhabitants of the Cape, the fair sex in particular, were most lamentably deficient. On this account, the Europeans are apt to conceive rather unfavourable ideas of the politeness of the African colonists. However this be, these latter learn very little of any foreign language, though they are otherwise indefatigable in their application to trade, and every thing that tends to their emolument; and although the income of the whole colony, as well as the particular interest of most of the inhabitants, depends entirely on their trade with foreigners.

The next day I went back again to the Cape, to fetch my baggage from on board of ship, and take leave of my friends. I could not help being tenderly affected at parting from them, and indeed this was the last time that I saw many of them. It was not till I had lost sight of the Swedish colours, that I felt myself an absolute stranger on the African coast.

During the few days, however, that I yet had to stay in town, I enjoyed the greatest felicity in the company of an old *Upsal* chum, Dr. THUNBERG, now demonstrator in that university, whose taste for botany had induced him to undertake a voyage to this remotest point of Africa. He travelled at the expence of some gentlemen in Holland, and had come hither with a Dutch ship a few days after me.

me. Nothing could have happened more unexpected to him, than to see in person at the Cape, a man whom, agreeable to the latest advices, he now supposed to be at Upsal, engaged in courses of academical lectures; and nothing could be more pleasing to him, than to receive the letters which I brought him from his friends and relations.

1772.
April.

I was soon however obliged to return to *False-bay*, by which means I lost the company of my countryman, who alone could make the *Cape* for me a little Sweden; and render our favourite study, which we both applied to in common, still more easy and delightful. In the meanwhile, perhaps none but a lover of natural history can imagine, what pleasure we enjoyed together among the herbs and flowers. At first almost every day was a rich harvest of the rarest and most beautiful plants; and I had almost said, that at every step we made one or more new discoveries. And as I had many Swedish friends, and particularly the great LINNÆUS, always present in my memory, every duplicate or triplicate of the plants that I gathered, gave me a sensible pleasure; though my covetousness for myself and my friends, frequently induced me to gather more than I was able to attend to, and dry in a proper manner. This, doubtless, happens more or less to every botanist who travels into foreign parts: but besides this circumstance, I was not a little taken off, by my business with the resident, from the more agreeable application to my beloved science.

By this means I was often deprived of opportunities of investigating some of those plants that I had collected: I therefore neglected no opportunity of sending to Sir CHARLES

1772.
April.

LINNÆUS duplicates of every thing I found, together with my remarks upon them. Unfortunately this great man's illness, declining years, and intervening death, have prevented us long from seeing them in print, in a *Mantissa tertia*.

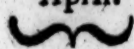
I was now to reside in *False-bay* till the end of the winter, which is called the bad season (in Dutch, *quade mousson*;) and is reckoned from the 14th of May till the 14th of August. It is not distinguished by any particular degree of cold; for we had frequently at this time the finest summer days. Once or twice there fell some hail, but I never saw any snow. We had sometimes the most violent showers of rain, and that mostly for several days in continuation, by which means the air was very sensibly cooled. We were not unfrequently troubled with the north-west wind, and this is principally the reason why the Dutch ships, at the time of year before-mentioned, have been ordered to run into *Table-bay*, ever since the year 1722; when out of ten ships belonging to that nation lying there, eight were cast on shore and lost. This likewise has induced the Dutch company to have ready at hand every necessary for their ships, under the inspection of the Resident at *False-bay*. They have erected here an extensive magazine, which at the same time includes forges and baking-houses, with house-room for the workmen, who do the whole duty of the guard, and are commanded by a serjeant and two corporals. The slaughter-house makes a distinct building by itself, as do likewise the Resident's house and the hospital. About the time of my departure from Africa, they were building another large and handsome house for the accommodation of the Governor, when
he

he chuses to retire thither for his pleasure. Good fresh water is conveyed from the neighbouring hill to a quay, where it is very convenient for use. A tradesman or two have got leave to build an inn here, in which, however, there is not always room and conveniencies sufficient to receive all such as, after a long sea-voyage, are desirous of refreshing themselves on shore; the ships that land here being chiefly such as contain not much above twenty passengers. Board and lodging are paid for here as at the *Cape*, from one rix-dollar to one and a half a day; a tolerable good table is likewise usually kept here, and the attendance is none of the worst. A person that wishes to go post from *False-bay* to the *Cape*, a distance of about sixteen miles, will find it comparatively dear enough. Three or four rix-dollars must be paid for a saddle-horse, and from twelve to sixteen for a waggon; which is, for the most part, inconvenient, and usually drawn by three or four pair of horses, or else by the same number of oxen.

Excepting in the winter, *False-bay* is seldom or ever visited by any ships, as the south-east wind, which prevails at every other time of the year, makes this Bay in many respects inconvenient; blowing with such violence, as to cover two hills there with a thick layer of drift sand, all along from the strand up to their very tops. This ridge of sand is seen from afar from the mouth of the harbour, and serves as a beacon for ships; for *Simon's-bay*, which is the place where they are to anchor, lies directly from the east, or something more to the south. The breadth of *False-bay* is not so great, but that in clear fine weather, one may see from *Simon's-bay* the lands laying opposite in

1772.
April.

1772.
April.



the east, or the *Schaapen-Bergen* (Sheep-Mountains) in *Hottentots Holland*; and with a perspective glass, one may even distinguish the houses in the last mentioned place.

From the point of land, called the Cape of Good Hope, straight on to the town itself, there is extended a chain of hills, which, following the course of the strand in *Simon's-bay*, is continued to the northernmost part or bottom of *False-bay*; and afterwards, striking off to the westward to *Constantia*, goes on to the north of it, to join *Table-Mountain*. This range of mountains, however, reckoning from *Simon's-bay*, is intercepted in two places, viz. first, by means of a dale near *Constantia*, through which the road goes to *Hout-bay*; and next, by a sandy vale a little to the north of *Simon's-bay*. Through this vale there is a short way between the western and eastern coasts; and in all probability it was formerly a small straight or sound, which has been gradually filled up by the winds and surge of the sea. The whole of the low lands, consisting of sandy plains and tracks of heathy country to the east of the town, was in all likelihood formed in the same manner; and the Cape of Good Hope was in the beginning an island, which was not connected with the *Tiger-Mountain* and shore of *Hottentots Holland*, but by degrees, and in the course of time. It is, in my opinion, particularly with sand, sea-shells, trunks of trees, and such like rubbish, that the sea has thus encroached upon the land, and set itself narrower limits. To this the violence of the south-east wind contributes not a little, as it sometimes tears up hedges, trees, and vegetables of all kinds by the roots,

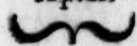
roots, at the same time casting up high ridges of sand, as I mentioned before.

1772.
April.

Even *Table-bay* is by degrees grown shallower; so that the house that is built by the sea-shore is now farther from it, and time after time they have been obliged to lengthen the quay that has been made in the harbour. Farther, in respect to this circumstance, I can refer to the shells of different sizes that I found in the sandy parts of a meadow a little below Tiger-Mountain. A well-behaved and sensible yeoman, CORNELIUS VERVEY by name, who conducted me to this place, situated at the distance of about two leagues from the sea-shore, was of opinion, that the sea-shells were left in that place, after the sea had retired from it, but were by no means brought thither by the Hottentots, as they could not possibly live there on account of the want of water.

The road between the *Cape* and *False-bay* is very heavy, and even sometimes dangerous. At this latter place, at the time that the south-east wind prevails, there is wont to be so high a tide, that the sea, even at its lowest ebb, at some places rises up to the foot of the mountains, which partly encompass this extensive harbour; so that one is obliged to travel for a long way (as it were) below the shore, though the surf or surge of the sea often rises above the nave of the wheels, and even into the body of the waggon; nay, it sometimes seems as it would carry out to sea waggon, horses, and all. For which reason they have in general extremely strong and substantial waggons, and steady horses, that are accustomed to this kind of work, together with sober and skilful drivers, so that an accident

1772.
April.



accident of this kind cannot easily happen: relying upon these, people sometimes even drive a little below the sea-shore, as the sands are there pressed down and even; whereas higher up they are loose, deep, and heavy. In a large plain, that closes up the north side of *False-bay*, there is a considerable field of sand, through which the road is carried. This the violent rains, that fall in the winter season, joined to a higher tide than usual, are wont sometimes to lay entirely under water; so that travellers are in danger of getting up to the middle in holes and pits. Some accidents of this kind happened the winter I was there.

Ships of various nations, English, French, and particularly the Dutch East-Indiamen, anchored this season in *Simon's-bay*. The principal officers and passengers of this nation lodged chiefly with the resident; so that at meal-times, various European dialects, together with the languages used in commerce with the Indians, viz. the Malay, and a very bad kind of Portuguese, were spoken all at one time; so that the confusion was almost equal to that of the Tower of Babel. The dissimilitude likewise in manners and behaviour was sometimes equally great. A circumstance that occurred on this occasion, and that appeared to me rather singular, deserves to be mentioned. When the strangers of other nations began their desert, two Dutch captains put on their hats and lighted their pipes. Upon this I asked some Dutchmen that sat by me, whether this was not looked upon as unusual and impolite? I was answered, that tobacco was a more delicious desert, and had more charms for an old sailor, than cakes and
sweet-

sweet-meats; and that this custom is still more practised in other places in the East-Indies. Indeed I observed at the Cape, that the Dutch commonly wore their hats in the house, and that even in company, without its being looked upon as the least breach of politeness. At least the custom, which is constantly practised in Europe, of carrying one's hat under one's arm, is still more unnatural. This most undeniably absurd practice I never observed in the East-Indies.

1773.
April.

We often enjoyed the company of English ladies, some of whom even staid out our elegant desert of pipes and tobacco. Some of these ladies came from the East-Indies, on their return from Europe, and some from England. The married ones, to see their husbands either at *Bombay*, *Madras*, or *Bengal*; the unmarried ones, to get husbands. Some of the former had not seen their husbands for several years, these not having being able to fend for them before, for want of having acquired money enough to keep house in the expensive manner requisite in this part of the world. The latter seldom make the voyage in vain, being extremely welcome to such of the single men, as have had time to get a tolerable share of the treasures of India, but could not persuade themselves to wed the dark Indian beauties, (as many however are accustomed to do) and have not had leisure to go to Europe merely for the purpose of chusing themselves wives. It was therefore supposed, that some of these beautiful travellers were actually, in a manner, sent for by commission, though not inserted in the invoice.

Be

1772.
April.

Be that, however, as it may; they all in the mean while seemed highly deserving of rich and good husbands, as well for their courage and resolution in venturing upon the ocean, as for many other fine qualities they were possessed of. As they were always in the company and under the care of some respectable married lady, nobody seemed to harbour the least doubt of their good conduct. On this occasion, the following anecdote deserves to be mentioned.

One of the ladies, who had some time before passed by the Cape, had been sent for to be married to a certain governor. He, as soon as she arrived, was for performing his engagements immediately; but the lady positively refused, and finally gave as a reason for her conduct, that she did not chuse to deceive him; for during her voyage, she had betrothed herself to the captain of the ship, who however was base enough to retract his promise, although she feared that their connection had been productive of certain disagreeable consequences. The governor repaid her frankness by the most generous conduct; and was not at all surprized that she should rather give her hand to a young fellow, who had besides had the advantage of being on the spot, than wait in uncertainty for an elderly man, who was an absolute stranger to her, and was moreover at a distance from her. He therefore married her himself without hesitation, after having in vain endeavoured to persuade her false lover to take this step.

The little island of *Malagas* in *Falfe-bay*, is particularly resorted to by *penguins* and seals; and although *Robben* (or Seal Island) otherwise called *Penguin Island* in *Table-bay*, bears the name of these latter animals, yet they are seldom found

1772.
April.

found there now, since the island has been inhabited. But on *Dassen* Island they are found in much greater quantities, infomuch that sometimes a general shooting party is made with advantage to destroy the seals there, for the sake of their blubber. Their skins, though very good in their kind, are to be had very cheap; and are, as far as I know, in request only among the boors for tobacco-pouches, for which they are extremely well calculated, as they keep the tobacco from growing dry. I brought home with me the stuffed foetus of a *phoca* from the Cape. It is of the same species with those that I investigated together with Messrs. FORSTER, and eat at *New Zeeland*, *Terra Del Fuego*, and the *Southern Thule*. When the train-oil was separated, the flesh was really good and eatable, especially as in those places we could get nothing better: we imagined indeed, that it tasted like beef, but it must be owned that it had a disagreeable black hue.

I have opened the intestines of divers *phocæ*, and always found them empty, excepting a little sand and small sea-shells, together with a few stones from the size of a nut to that of an egg. The reason of this emptiness of the bowels may have been, either that these creatures have very strong digestive powers, so as speedily to dissolve the sea animals on which they probably live, or else, that during their dwelling and copulating on shore, they abstain for a long time from all food whatever.

Various sorts of *sea-fish* are taken at the *Cape* and *False-bay*. At the latter place they had just caught the electric *ray-fish*, (*raia torpedo*) but unluckily I chanced to be absent, while it was yet alive, and experiments were made

1772.
April.

with it. Out of several that touched it, every one had felt (as it were) a strong electric shock, the resident only excepted, who could handle this fish without the least inconvenience. Whether he was in like manner insensible to ordinary electricity, he had never tried; but it was very likely that this was the case, particularly as we find an instance in MUSSCHENBROEK'S *Introduct. to Nat. Phil.* §. 832, No. 3, of three persons, who were found to be exempt from the operation of electricity, though the experiment was made on them more than once. I am besides acquainted with a certain man, who seems to possess a great antielectric power. From the result of many experiments made with the *torpedo*, and related in the *Philosophical Transactions* for the years 1773, 74, 75, and 76, there appears to exist an incontrovertible analogy between electricity and the above-mentioned fish.

The cancer norvegicus, a kind of lobster, is often eaten in the Bay. A sort of snail or cockle, *klipkaus* (*Haliotis*, LINN.) from half a foot to a foot and a half diameter, is usually stewed, but makes in my opinion a very unfavoury dish. The same may be said of the *sepia loligo*, and the *sepia octopodia*, which are made into soup, and are known to our sailors by the name of *black-fish*, and *sea-cats*, and to the English by the name of *cuttle-fish*. A small kind of oyster is likewise found in a particular spot in the Bay, and is kept by the governor for his own table. As to muscles I saw but few of them; but in *Table-bay*, below the Lion-Mountain, they are found in great abundance, and have a delicious taste. The *myxine glutinosa*, was not easy to be discovered among the *vermes*; it is like an eel or a snake

snake with a flat tail. Its mouth was formed by an oblong opening under its nose, not transverse, but longitudinal in the direction of its body, with double and moveable jaws well furnished with teeth. The bite of it is reported to occasion a disagreeable tumour, but not to be mortal.

1772.
April.

Among the vegetables that I found in Bay-Falso, the *cunonia capensis* was almost the largest tree there, though barely twice or three times the height of a man. It grows near the water, and contains in its peculiar *stipal. bivalv. sagittat.* a cream-like matter to appearance, but in fact a viscid or gummy substance. Various *sophoræ* bloomed here towards the spring, and required a good soil: but on the *sophora capensis*, there was found in particular a new sort of *viscum* in great abundance. The *antholyza æthiopica* grew from three to six feet in height, with beautiful red flowers, being always found at no great distance from the shore, and chiefly in the shade of other plants. I met with it afterwards in the woods near the Cape, particularly in the *Houtniquas*. The *antholyza maura**, remarkable for its flowers, half white and half black, I found on one spot only of the mountain near one of the rivulets, that trickle down just before the slaughter-house. A very small *triandrous* plant (*staminibus monadelphis*) with comparatively large but beautiful yellow flowers, in the fine part of the day adorned a large plat of ground with its open blossoms, which however at other times were so entirely closed, as almost to disappear. The *calla æthiopica*

* This composes now a new genus, and is called by Dr. Thunberg the *wittenia maura*.

1772.
April.

delighted chiefly in moist places near the sea-shore, and was in flower the whole winter. *Proteas, ericas, cornuses, gnaphaliums, gnidias, ecbias, phyllicas, brunias, and periplocas*, two varieties of the *myrica cerifera*, together with *cliffortias, thesias, polygalas, hermannias* and *asters*, were strewed promiscuously over the dry places on the declivity of the mountain. Among these some *restios* seemed quartered on the bare sand, together with divers *mesembryanthemums*. The *hyobanche sanguinea*, a parasitic plant, towards spring, began to throw out its blood-red tufts of flowers in the naked sand; an *osteospermum* or two, as well of the arboreous as herbaceous kind, were now and then likewise found in the bare sand. *Arctotides, calendulas, and otbonnas*, throve chiefly in sandy places. On the mountain besides *proteas, brunias, diosmas, ericas*, and the *stilbe*, we found *indigoferas, erinuses, selagos, manulias, cbironias* of different kinds, together with many gynandrous plants. We likewise found greens and kitchen-garden plants in great plenty at this inauspicious time of the year. Towards spring, divers sorts of *ixias, gladioluses, moreas, oxalises, mesembryanthemums, antirrhinums*, and even various beautiful small *irises*, several inches high, with the corolla partly white and partly blue, began to push out of the ground.

Of the partly known and partly quite new plants which we met with at this spot, some were rather uncommon, others again was not to be found again in the other places I visited in Africa. Every district has always something peculiar to itself: no wonder then, if Dr. THUNBERG and I should have passed over various specimens of the vegetable

table tribe unnoticed, and the common saying, *Semper aliquid novi ex Africa*, should still hold good for many years to come. Botanists, therefore, must not expect in this place a more accurate catalogue of plants, which would be too tedious a business; but content themselves with acquiring, *en passant*, as it were, and at a distance, by means of the preceding list, some idea of the country, just as it is, covered with the herbs and trees most commonly found in it on different spots, and at different times of the year.

1772.
April.

SECT.

S E C T. III.

Residence at Alphen near Constantia, till the Author's Trip to Paarl.

1772.
April.

WHEN the winter was past, and the ships now preferred anchoring in *Table-bay*, I went with the resident to an estate of his called *Alphen*, situate in the neighbourhood of *Constantia*, about three miles from it, and nearly half way between *Table* and *Simon's-bay*. Before we could get over the mountainous part of this road, we observed a troop of baboons very nimbly clambering up the steep rocks, and scouring away as fast as they could to save themselves from our hounds, which set after them in full cry. On the plain before us we saw a large flock of *flamingos* (*phœnicopt. ruber*) a species of bird of the crane kind (*grallæ*) seeking their food in pools and puddles that were beginning to dry up. As they were larger than our cranes, and of a snow-white colour, with their wings of a flaming rosy hue, it is easy to imagine, what an agreeable appearance they made on the green field, clad in so beautiful a livery. After this our road was over a sandy plain, a place that, during part of the winter, one is obliged to wade over, as it then lies under water. We then

1772.
April.

then came to a field overgrown with a great many different sorts of heath and other shrubs and bushes, with some small trees of the *protea* kind. Part of the flowers and herbs that were scattered among these shrubs, I found later than in *False-bay*; probably by reason, that in this latter place they were brought forward partly by the vapours arising from the sea, and partly by the sun-beams reflected upon the mountains. On the other hand, divers *ixias*, *gladioluses*, *moreas*, *hyacinths*, *cyprias*, *melanthias*, *albucas*, *oxalises*, *asperugos*, *geraniums*, *monsonias*, *arctotises*, *calendulas*, *wachendorffias*, and the *arctopus*—some of them never, some of them rarely seen in the Bay, were now found every where by the road-side in their greatest beauty. The pleasure enjoyed by a botanist, who finds all at once so rich a collection of unknown, rare, and beautiful vernal flowers, in so unfrequented a part of the world, is easier to be conceived than described. I was now quite impatient to get to the end of my journey, however agreeable it was otherwise. At length we arrived at the resident's country-seat, and I did not delay a moment to procure myself a still more delightful recreation, viz. that of walking out to reconnoitre such plants as were yet unknown to me.

The premises are very well built, and contiguous to them is a pretty extensive garden, and a considerable vineyard, which increases yearly in size. But there is hardly an acre of arable land to be found in the whole neighbourhood; nor did the owners of the vineyards here think it worth their while to trouble themselves about the culture of it, but were then, viz. towards the end of the month of August, busied in digging about their vine-stocks,

S E C T. III.

Residence at Alphen near Constantia, till the Author's Trip to Paarl.

1772.
April.

WHEN the winter was past, and the ships now preferred anchoring in *Table-bay*, I went with the resident to an estate of his called *Alphen*, situate in the neighbourhood of *Constantia*, about three miles from it, and nearly half way between *Table* and *Simon's-bay*. Before we could get over the mountainous part of this road, we observed a troop of baboons very nimbly clambering up the steep rocks, and scouring away as fast as they could to save themselves from our hounds, which set after them in full cry. On the plain before us we saw a large flock of *flammingos* (*phœnicopt. ruber*) a species of bird of the crane kind (*grallæ*) seeking their food in pools and puddles that were beginning to dry up. As they were larger than our cranes, and of a snow-white colour, with their wings of a flaming rosy hue, it is easy to imagine, what an agreeable appearance they made on the green field, clad in so beautiful a livery. After this our road was over a sandy plain, a place that, during part of the winter, one is obliged to wade over, as it then lies under water. We then

1772.
April.

then came to a field overgrown with a great many different sorts of heath and other shrubs and bushes, with some small trees of the *protea* kind. Part of the flowers and herbs that were scattered among these shrubs, I found later than in *Falfe-bay*; probably by reason, that in this latter place they were brought forward partly by the vapours arising from the sea, and partly by the sun-beams reflected upon the mountains. On the other hand, divers *ixias*, *gladioluses*, *moreas*, *hyacinths*, *cyprias*, *melanthias*, *albucas*, *oxalises*, *asperugos*, *geraniums*, *monsonias*, *arctotises*, *calendulas*, *wachendorfias*, and the *arctopus*—some of them never, some of them rarely seen in the Bay, were now found every where by the road-side in their greatest beauty. The pleasure enjoyed by a botanist, who finds all at once so rich a collection of unknown, rare, and beautiful vernal flowers, in so unfrequented a part of the world, is easier to be conceived than described. I was now quite impatient to get to the end of my journey, however agreeable it was otherwise. At length we arrived at the resident's country-seat, and I did not delay a moment to procure myself a still more delightful recreation, viz. that of walking out to reconnoitre such plants as were yet unknown to me.

The premises are very well built, and contiguous to them is a pretty extensive garden, and a considerable vineyard, which increases yearly in size. But there is hardly an acre of arable land to be found in the whole neighbourhood; nor did the owners of the vineyards here think it worth their while to trouble themselves about the culture of it, but were then, viz. towards the end of the month of August, busied in digging about their vine-

stocks,

1772.
April.

stocks, and planting new. They never destroy their vine-plants; that is, they do not let them run up to any height, but cut them down low, and generally surround their vineyards and fruit-trees with hedges, in order to shelter them the better from the wind. A small species of *curculio* in particular, did infinite damage to the vine-buds, and the tender leaves. They were therefore very busy in plucking this insect from the plant as soon as ever it appeared, and as soon as they could possibly get at it; the only means yet known of preventing the ravages of this creature.

As summer was now approaching, the *exacum* and the * *gentiana exacoides* began to cover the ground with yellow patches; and many sorts of shrubs of the extensive genus of *aspalathus*, came out by degrees with their yellow blossoms. But the *protea argentea*, or the silver-tree, as it is called, exhibited the whole year throughout its glossy white, or silver gray leaves. This tree has at first a very uncommon, and indeed beautiful appearance. I am of opinion, however, that we should not chuse to change for it our delightful aspen-groves. The silver-tree scarcely ever grows higher than twenty feet; and if I remember right, I have been informed, that they arrive at this height in twelve to fifteen years. But in a rich soil this tree grows twice as quick, and is the largest of all the *protea* kind. One or two of them are found planted near some of the farms; but we seldom meet with any that have grown wild of themselves in these parts, though a little grove of them is seen

* Now the *sebaea exacoides*.

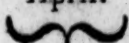
near

1772.
April.

near *Constantia*. For this reason it has been supposed, that the silver-tree was transplanted hither from the beginning; yet no one has been able to inform me from what place it first came: probably it was brought from the borders of *Anamaqua*; for I now travelled over the whole north-east side of Hottentots Holland, without finding it either in its wild state or planted. In the mean while, as it is the largest of all the *proteas*, and indeed almost of all the trees *indigenous* at the *Cape*, it is remarkable, that together with some others it has not attracted the attention of government to the planting of it, especially as they cannot be ignorant that the consumption of wood stores, as well for the use of the ships as that of the town, daily increases faster than they can be supplied by their resources. It is chiefly from the level ground near the shore, that the company at present fetches its wood, which consists chiefly of two small and crooked sorts of *protea*. That wood is dear at the Cape, may be concluded, from the circumstance of private persons rather finding their account in getting it from the mountains by means of slaves; though it takes up one of these a whole day to get a moderate load of shrubs and dry branches of trees, the value of which is generally the fourth part of a rixdollar. And indeed it is so far fortunate for the Dutch in a place so bare of wood, that a fire is not wanted in this country, excepting for dressing of victuals, lighting their pipes, and the women's stoves.

Alphen, or the farm where I passed this summer, was on the southern side of Table-Mountain, about a mile and a half from the foot of it. This mountain seems here, as well as at Table-Bay, level at the top, though there it

1772.
April.



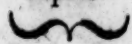
has considerable inequalities. In the rainy season large pools of water are found upon it, but by no means any lake, as some pretend. When a cloud covers this range of mountains, and the north-west wind blows, it should seem that this same wind must inevitably drive the cloud over the neighbouring plains on the other or south side of these mountains, at the same time causing it to rain there; but on the contrary, the fact is, that it never does rain there; a circumstance that, without doubt, like all other natural phenomena, has its real and certain foundations in nature. The most probable solution that occurs to me is this, that the vapours, which are driven up from the sea by the north-west wind, gather round the mountain in consequence of their being attracted by it, and there remain as long as they preserve any degree of rarefaction; but when at length they become more and more dense and pressed together, so as necessarily rather to yield to the greater force of the wind than to the attractive power of the mountain, they are carried away too quick to fall in rain directly at the foot of the mountain; a circumstance that does not happen before they reach the other side of *Zout Rivier*.

Having several times in my walks been, without any reason, apprehensive of being wetted through by the above-mentioned cloud, at length I resolved to ascend the mountain, in order to see how things were situated. The weather was at that time fine at the bottom of the mountain, and the wind pretty still; but at the upper edge of the mountain I met with several gusts of wind, which precipitated, as it were, down upon me, moist and cold, and with

1772.
April.

with a sensible violence. The temperature of the air, with which I was surrounded for about three quarters of an hour, varied according as the weather changed from fine to hazy, and from that to drizzling or downright rain. The barrenness of the mountain and the coldness of its air, together with the small number of plants upon it, and those stunted by the climate; nay, the rainy weather itself, all combined to form around me a backward autumn. From this spot, however, I had an agreeable summer prospect towards the bottom of the mountain, viz. the verdant plains lying round about it, enlightened and warmed by the genial rays of the sun. At the bottom of this range of hills there seemed to shoot out many roundish oblong ridges, pretty nearly of the same form, and parallel to each other, and separated by a like number of dales, at the bottom of several of which ran the water previously collected by the mountain, and destined, as it were, to water the plains. A number of green trees and shrubs, which had planted themselves along the sides of these rills, formed a beautiful girdle on the declivity of the mountain, and on the hillocks projecting at the foot of it. Several neat compact farms scattered up and down, the houses belonging to which were white with black roofs, at the same time that the grounds were laid out in a regular and judicious manner with verdant orchards and vineyards, lay distinctly open to the eye in all their respective ground-plots, forming a most natural as well as beautiful picture. Next to these, a little further on, were seen pale and bleak tracts of heath, among which were strewn, as it were, various plots of sand, together with

1772.
April.



sandy roads winding about in a serpentine form, and waggons and timber-tugs creeping along them with a sluggish motion. These extensive plains were bounded by *Tyger-mountain* and the shores of *Hottentots Holland*. Next to these, but farther on, were seen other mountains, which, according to the distance at which they were placed, grew more and more indistinct, till they entirely disappeared in the clouds. From hence too, besides several pools of rain-water, a great part of the creek which forms *False-bay*, was seen. This, from its calmness and distance, appeared at that juncture as smooth as a looking-glass; at the same time that it was terminated by the ocean, or rather, according to the appearance it made in my eyes, by the horizon itself.

From the mist, or fog, which surrounded me on the mountain, I perceived at times specks of clouds snatched off by the north-west wind, and driving along with violence through the air both above and below the spot I then stood upon, and directly followed by their shadows formed upon the same plains. In a word, this extensive and delightful spectacle was as enchanting as it was singular. Being not used to run any great risks, I did not venture so far out as I would have wished, in order to examine the top of *Table-mountain* on this side; for, as it grew towards dark, I might have easily lost my way, and fall a prey to leopards and hyænas, which frequent these parts in great numbers, and at night are very bold and daring. A little while before they had committed ravages in a farm yard just below the mountain; I likewise heard their howlings the same evening about dusk,

dufk, from the very place where, two hours before, I had been botanizing. That very day, at broad day-light, I narrowly escaped being plundered by a troop of slaves, that had some time before run away from their masters, and who were suspected at that time to have their haunts about *Table-mountain*. A fire that I found there newly extinguished, was probably some of their reliques. Still, however, the beautiful prospect that I have just been describing, would perhaps have kept me longer on the mountain, if I had not begun to feel a kind of stiffness and rheumatic pains in my limbs, owing to my having got into a cold air at the top of the mountain all in a sweat and too lightly clad. This probably would have had serious consequences, if I had not accidentally wrought myself into a most violent sweat; the fact was, that in my descent, wishing to examine some of the closest thickets on the sides of the rills, that trickle down the mountain, I went out of the right path, and got into a very thick over-grown coppice, so that I could not without the greatest difficulty extricate myself from it.

1772.
April.

Some time before this, or in the beginning of September, I rode to town to take leave of Dr. THUNBERG, who was going to take a long journey up the country, at the expence of the Dutch East-India company. I staid at his house rather late in the evening, which occasioned me in my way home to be caught in the dark and to miss my way. I therefore rode up to a farm-house to enquire for the road, and from the information I got, thought to find my way home; but, it beginning to rain, and the darkness increasng, I took a bye-road, which led me

1772.
April.

me to an elegant house, the property of a private gentleman. After I had stood out the attacks of a number of dogs, there came out a heap of slaves, from sixteen to twenty. These fellows were so malicious as not to answer me, though certainly some of them understood me extremely well, and though, after having promised them something to drink, I asked them the way in tolerable good Dutch; on the contrary, they conferred with each other in broken Portuguese or Malay, in such a manner, as to make me suspect, that they had no better will towards me, than they have to others of a different nation from themselves, who are accustomed to sell them here, after having partly by robbery and open violence, and partly in the way of bargain or purchase, got them from their native country, and thus eventually brought them to the grievous evils they then sustained. Had the master of the house been at this time at home, of which however I much doubt, it would have made very little difference to me, as even in that case I could not have spoken with him; for every body in this country is obliged to bolt the door of his chamber at night, and keep loaded fire-arms by him, for fear of the revengeful disposition of his slaves. This being the case, it was still easier for them to murder me, and afterwards conceal the deed by burying my body, or drag it into a thicket to be devoured by wild beasts; I therefore took again to the road, in search of a better fate. To this end I gave my horse the bridle, in hopes that he would hit upon the right road better than myself. In consequence of this he made such use of his liberty, as to quit all the beaten tracks, perhaps with a view to find the shortest way home:

1772.
April.

home: so that I soon found myself in a heavy marshy ground, overgrown with bushes, and full of brooks and rivulets, till at length he made a sudden leap, on which we both tumbled head over heels into a pit, and parted. My horse's sudden flight gave me reason to fear, that some wild beast being near us was the occasion of it; for which reason, not thinking myself over and above secure, I immediately prepared to defend myself with a large knife, which I generally carried about me for the purpose of digging up the roots of plants. The best step I could now take, was, like many more foot-passengers, to make up to some farm-yard, and run the risk of being torn to pieces by great dogs, which are let loose at night for the purpose of keeping off thieves. To pass the night in the open air, at a time when the weather seemed set in for rain, was as disagreeable as dangerous. In the mean time I took to walking about, to keep myself warm. In the space of a few minutes, after I had gone over a little hill, I found myself near a farm-house. It being dark, I was obliged to consider some time before I could know it again to be my own house. I found my horse already at the stable-door, standing quite still and quiet, and was lucky enough into the bargain, to be able to conceal the whole adventure from the family, as the particular footing on which I was at that time required.

Constantia is a district consisting of two farms, which produce the well-known wine so much prized in Europe, and known by the name of *Cape*, or *Constantia*-wine. This place is situated at the distance of a mile and a half from *Alphen*, in a bending formed by, and nearly under the
ridge

1772.
April.

ridge of hills, which comes from *Meuifsen-mountain*, and just where it strikes off towards *Hout-bay*. One of these farms is called *Little Constantia*. Here the white *Constantia* wine is made. The other produces the red. According to M. DE LA CAIL's account, not more than sixty *figgars* of red, and ninety of the white *Constantia* wine are made, each *figgar* being reckoned at six hundred French pints, or about one hundred and fifty Swedish cans; so that the whole produce amounts to twenty-two thousand five hundred cans. As the company are used to keep one third of this for themselves, the remainder is always bespoke by the Europeans long before it is made. At the Cape this wine is seldom seen at table, partly because it is dear, and partly because it is the produce of the country. The red *Constantia* wine sells for about sixty rixdollars the half awin; but the white is usually to be purchased at a more reasonable rate: otherwise the price of the common white wine at the Cape is from ten to seventy rixdollars the *figgar*, according to the year's growth and the demand that is for it. They make besides, in the environs of the Cape, *Burgundy*, *Madeira*, *Moselle*, *Muscadel* wines, so called from some analogy they bear to the European wines of the same name, as well as from the respective places in Europe whence the vine-stocks were first brought. These wines are at a proportionably higher price than the ordinary white. As the Cape wines, in consequence of the great demand from the ships, have all a quick sale, they are seldom to be found of any age; otherwise by longer keeping, together with better care, and a less liberal use of sulphur, they would doubtless be equally good with the best European wines.

wines. The genuine Constantia wine is undeniably a very racy and delicate desert wine, and has something peculiarly agreeable in the flavour of it. That its superiority is not owing to any thing peculiar in the manner of preparing it, I am fully convinced; for then, without doubt, a great deal more of it would be made. But the fact is, that the genuine wine can only be produced by certain particular soils. The districts that lie next to these yield merely the common Cape wine, notwithstanding that they have been planted with vine-stocks taken from this, as well as with some brought from the banks of the Rhine, whence it is supposed that the true Constantia first originally comes; nay, even though all the vineyards about Constantia seem to have the same soil. We have instances at the Cape, as well as in Europe, that good grapes sometimes produce a bad wine; while, on the other hand, bad grapes will yield a good sort of wine: therefore, towards making wine of a certain quality, besides finer materials, there must be certain conditions and circumstances, which, by a diligent and rational investigation, might probably be explored to the great benefit of mankind.

Such as are apprized in what quantities Constantia wine is consumed in Europe, have perhaps already remarked, that my calculation of the produce of the above-mentioned wine is too limited. This, however, is by no means the case; the overplus being the produce of avarice, which, goaded on by the desire of gain, will always hit upon some method of satisfying the demands of luxury and sensuality. The votaries of these, accustomed to be put off with empty sounds, do not seldom drink with the

1772.
April.



1772.
April.



highest relish, an imaginary *Constantia*, with which, however, this liquor has nothing in common besides the mere name. It is therefore adviseable, even at the Cape itself, to take care, that whilst one has a genuine sample given one to taste, one is not made to pay for a made-up red *Constantia*, which otherwise is in general sold for half the price. When a wine of this kind has been (as it usually is) meliorated by a voyage, and at the same time christened with the pompous name of genuine *Constantia*, of which it has indeed in some measure the flavour, it easily sells for such in Europe.

This summer likewise I visited *Hout-bay*. The direct road to it goes through a narrow vale, from which the harbour is supplied with fresh water, by means of a little river or stream covered with *palmites*, a kind of *acorus* with a thick stem and broad leaves, which grow out from the top, as they do in the palm-tree, a circumstance from which the plant takes its name. These *palmites* are found in great abundance in most rivers and streams, which they block up more or less by means of their stems and roots intertwining with each other. On the other hand, this same *Hout-bay* has very little title to the name it bears; as, in direct contradiction to the signification of it, there is and seems ever to have been, a great deficiency of timber and brushwood in that place. Considered as a harbour, this bay seemed to me to be extremely narrow, and at the same time too open to the south wind. The anchorage, however, was good; at least, I was so informed by two fishermen I met with there. A heap of sand is driven up by the sea to the farthest part of the bay, and there

1772.
April.

there appeared to form a shoal of a considerable extent, by which means the river above-mentioned is not a little blocked up. This sand was at that time very loose at many places, so that one could not walk upon it without danger of being drowned in the water that lay under it. In time, perhaps, the apertures will be entirely filled up, so as to become solid. A nook in a mountain on the west side of the bottom of the bay is entirely covered with sand, which probably has been carried up from the strand by the violence of the wind from the sea. The east side is composed of a steep mountain, which reaches to the brink of the water, while the western shore is very much covered with large loose granites. There are, nevertheless, very good landing-places here for boats. In other respects the harbour is inconvenient, as well in respect to the gusts of wind that come from the mountains, as from the want of a convenient watering-place, and a wind to carry the ships out to sea.

A farm with plantations of vines lay a few stones throw higher up in the vale. The owner, a European, was the only one in Africa who had sense enough to make use of asses; being of opinion, that as they were more serviceable in hilly countries as beasts of burden, and at the same time their food, consisting of shrubs and the coarser kinds of grass, was easier to be procured, they were better adapted to that part of the world than horses. I had here a hasty glimpse of a little black quadruped, in shape approaching nearest to the otter, which ran and hid itself in a heap of stones.

1772.
April.

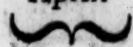
The game here, and in the country about Constantia, consists chiefly of small *antilopes*, as in *False-bay*, viz. of *steenbocks*, the *antilope grimmia* of PALLAS, and of *Klip-springers*, which, however, I have not had an opportunity of examining near; likewise of *diving goats*, so called from a peculiar manner they have of leaping and diving, as it were, under the bushes. The method of hunting these small antilopes is to drive them from their cover among the bushes, which is best done by hounds; at which time the sportsman must take care to be ready with his gun. They are likewise caught with snares placed at the entrance into vineyards and kitchen-gardens. These snares are fastened to the top of an elastic branch or bough of a tree, one end of which is made quite fast in the earth, and the other being bent downwards, is attached very slightly to a board, which is laid on the ground, and covered a little with earth. It is farther so contrived, that when the animal treads on the board, this gives a little swing, upon which the elastic bough flies loose, and draws the snare over one or two of the animal's legs, at the same time lifting the creature up along with it into the air, so that it remains hanging there. Among other animals I saw here *ichneumons* (*viverra ichneumon*) and *civet cats* (*viverra genetta*) caught in traps near farm-houses. They were something bigger than a common cat, and have a bad name with housewives for making great havock among the poultry and eggs; though, on the other hand, they do a great deal of service by destroying the larger kind of rats. In the more general œconomy of nature, these animals are still more serviceable; more so indeed than the people at
the

1772.
April.


the *Cape* are capable of distinguishing, or know how to turn to their advantage. The river *Nile* and *Egypt* itself for instance, would be full of *crocodiles*, if their eggs were not in a great measure destroyed by the *viverra ichneumon*. In the East-Indies this animal is famous for lessening the number of lizards and venomous serpents, which too much abound there; and the same service is undoubtedly done by the *viverra* species in Africa. These certainly contribute also to keep the number of moles within certain limits. The *ichneumon* is likewise used to be made tame in the East-Indies, so as to follow its master as tractably as a dog; and by its means it has been discovered, that the *ophiorhiza* is an excellent antidote against the bite of serpents. Probably a discovery of equal utility might be made at the *Cape*, if the *ichneumon* was made tame there, and these animals were purposely suffered to be bitten by several sorts of serpents, and at the same time it was observed what antidote they had recourse to; for nature, which has given, and indeed imposed on the *ichneumon* the same office in *Africa* as in *Asia*, viz. to limit the increase of the race of serpents, has in both places furnished them with equally good weapons, and an equally good preservative. Experiments of this kind certainly deserve to be made with the *viverra genetta*, and some others of that genus. The *folliculus* of this latter creature contains a kind of musk, in all probability not without some particular intention in its all-wise Creator, nor without some use to the animal itself; perhaps, indeed, for that of men, when they shall be at the pains to make the discovery.

It

1772.
April.

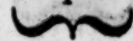


It would not be amiss to make mention in this place of a third species of *viverra*, which is found in these parts, though I did not get a sight of it till after my return from the South-Sea; this was the *viverra putorius*, which an acquaintance of mine caught on Mr. DREIJER's farm at *Rondebosch*, situated nearer to the Cape than to *Alphen*. This animal is not known to be found any where but here and in North America; in one word, in the northern parts of the new world, and the southernmost promontory of the old, which is directly contrary to what M. BUFFON says he is morally certain of. The surest step this great and masterly natural historian could have taken, would have been to have contented himself with the contemplation of nature, which is never without its use, without endeavouring to lay down universal laws for her; as if no other animal could be common to the old and new world, than those which could easily pass by land from *Asia* to *America*.

In one of my excursions between *Alphen* and *Rondebosch*, near a marshy place in a dale, I came unawares upon an animal with which I was totally unacquainted; but notwithstanding it was within 70 or 80 paces of me, I could not get a perfect view of it, on account of the intervention of the bushes, and the creature's running away immediately. It did not seem however above three feet and a half high, but from its ash-grey colour, and remarkably heavy gait in running, I was induced to think it could be nothing else than a young *bippopotamus*, or, as it was here called, a SEA-COW. Creatures of this kind are, indeed, never seen in this part of the country; but they are used to wander far, so that perhaps this had the night before chanced to stray

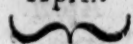
stray from *Zeekoe-valley*, near *Falfe-bay*, a place to which they frequently resort. Were it so, I am not at all sorry that I did not get a nearer view of a creature otherwise so very dangerous, as, according to my usual custom, I had no other weapon about me than my knife and insect-scissors.

1772.
April.



The reader will scarcely imagine, that the *fauna* and *flora Capensis* would this summer leave me any time for the hyp or vapours; I must, however, confess, that some solitary and idle hours, combined with other circumstances, now and then gave room and occasion for envy and disgust. The days at the *Cape*, by reason of the greater vicinity of that place to the equator, are shorter in summer than with us. Urged by an ardent zeal and inclination for natural history, I could not help repining, that in a place where I had the best opportunities for this purpose, I found my hands tied, in some measure, by other business in the day-time, and in the long evenings was in want of books and many other necessary helps; but I more particularly felt the want of friends, and of society with some one, who set a proper value upon study, particularly on the study and investigation of nature, of which here follows an instance.

A Cape physician, who had studied some time in Holland, paid me a visit at the villa where I resided, and asked, I do not know upon what occasion, to see my herbal. I, for my part, was in the highest degree desirous to give myself, as well as him, this pleasure, as I could not but hope to learn the virtues of divers plants in medicine. But in these hopes I soon found myself deceived; the African *Æsculapius* knowing scarcely the names, much less the use, of any one plant. On this subject the country

1772.
April.

try people had already given me some, though upon the whole, but little information. Of some hundred plants that I laid before him pasted in a book, we had scarcely turned over the third part, before he began every now and then to gape. I therefore thought it high time to give another turn to the conversation, and ceased to trouble him any longer with my enquiries. Instead of that, I endeavoured to rouse him out of his dream, by communicating to him my thoughts of the virtues of such and such an herb; for what disorders such a particular plant might be tried with safety and hopes of success; and this in consequence of its affinity and similitude to other plants already known, and whose virtues had undergone the test of experience, or (as far as one might conclude from hence) from the place it held among the *natural orders*, &c. My visitor all this while was neither polite nor intelligent enough to give his assent to what I said, but continued yawning and gaping. I therefore left above half the plants untouched, and turned the discourse to the subject of commerce and shipping, upon which the conversation immediately became more lively; an event, which did not at all surprize me; for this worthy physician's income depended more upon merchandize, than upon Apollo and the Muses; and it is much the same case with the rest of the faculty at the *Cape*, to the great prejudice of the sick in particular, as well as to that of natural knowledge and the art of medicine in general.

Should this journal ever chance to fall into the hands of the physician, who was pleased to yawn over the collection of useful simples that I had the honour of laying before him,

1772.
April.

him, it is to be hoped, he will kindly excuse my having borrowed so pleasing an original as himself, in order to give a more lively idea of the great esteem and credit in which botany stands with the collective body of Æsculapius's sons in Africa. I must, however, do him the justice to confess, that he was really, in my opinion, the most able of the faculty in that part of the world. I acknowledge with gratitude all the civilities he afterwards shewed me; but he must not take amiss my not being able to conceal a truth, which discovers the reason of the small progress made by the sciences in *Africa*, and, perhaps, in some other parts of the globe: he will likewise pardon the freedom I have taken, in setting the whole affair forth in its natural colours, just as it appeared to me; as in such case, the reader is enabled to pass sentence of judgment himself, frequently better, perhaps, than could be done by the relator.

S E C T. IV.

Trip to Paarl.

1772:
April.

SINCE my design, as I have already said, is to give my readers the description of this country and people in the same order and manner, in which I myself became acquainted with them, I have thought proper to insert in this place an account of an excursion I took to *Paarl* and its environs, just as I drew it up immediately on my return home, in a letter to a worthy friend and quondam ship-mate. It is written in the true sea-style, the descriptions and narrative being plentifully interlarded with divers phrases in common use among the gallant sons of Neptune.

S I R,

With a carcase quite wearied out, I am just returned home from a journey on foot over the parched and torrid plains of Africa, after having had occasion to visit several African *boors*. So they here call a set of hearty honest fellows, who, though they do not, indeed, differ in rank from our Swedish peasants, and make no better figure than the yeomen in our country, are yet for the most part extremely

1772.
April.

tremely wealthy. On the 9th of October in this present year, I fet out for the *Cape*, to fee the burghers perform their exercife, and likewise, according to a previous agreement with Mr. O——G, a countryman of our's, to take a view of the vegetable and animal productions of this country. By this you will find, Sir, that I intended to kill two birds with one ftone. With regard to the military operations, the brave warriors kept within doors on the 10th on account of the high wind, which indeed was fo violent at the bottom of *Lion-mountain*, whither I went out a botanizing, that I was feveral times obliged to lay myself down upon the ground. On the 11th the whole burgeffy turned out into the field; the coats, as well of the horfe as of the foot, were, to be fure, all blue, but of fuch different fhades, that they might as well have been red, purple and yellow. Their waiftcoats, particularly thofe of the infantry, were brown, blue and white, in fhort all the colours of the rainbow. A French prieft, clothed in black, with red heels to his fhoes, ftood near me, and could not help expreffing to me his amazement at feeing fuch a party-coloured equipment. However, this did not hinder them from going through their exercife extremely well, as a great number of them were Europeans, who had ferved in the laft war in Germany, and fince that time had been in garrifon at the Cape, when, in confequence of having ferved five years, they had become denizens of the country. Ambitious, therefore, of keeping up their military reputation, and puffed up with pride in confequence of their fuperiority in point of fortune, they took it into their heads feveral years ago to confider it as a very difgraceful circumftance, that

1772.
April.

they should be obliged to make front against the garrison, which, on their side, felt themselves so much hurt by the comparison, that the attack became very serious; so that among other things they loaded on each side with coat-buttons, pieces of money, and the like. Since this accident, both these corps are never exercised at one and the same time. Being disappointed at not having the company of our countryman, I set off on my expedition with a Mulatto for my guide, whom I hired for a quarter of a rix-dollar per diem. Over his shoulder he carried a staff, at one end of which hung my apparatus for keeping my herbs, at the other a counterpoise composed of a wallet filled with provisions and a few clothes. This guide of mine, proud of the name of *bastard*, soon gave me to understand, that he was no slave, as most of the blacks are, but was free-born by his mother's side, as her mother was a Hottentot, and her father an European (as he supposed) of a tolerable good family. To make short of my story, I quitted the town, implicitly following my blind destiny and my tawny pilot. We steered our course north-west, and after a number of traverses over the plains, by twelve o'clock we had got to the gallows. *Heus Viator!* Here we stopped a little to contemplate the uncertainty of human life. Above half a score wheels placed round it, presented us with the most horrid subjects for this purpose; the inevitable consequences, and at the same time the most flagrant proofs of slavery and tyranny; monsters, that never fail to generate each other, together with crimes and misdemeanors of every kind, as soon as either of them is once introduced into any country. The gallows itself, the largest
I ever

I ever saw, was indeed of itself a sufficiently wide door to eternity; but was by no means too large for the purpose of a tyrannical government, that in so small a town as the *Cape*, could find seven victims to be hanged in chains. Farther on, where the sand had been formed into a hard mass by the rain-water lying upon it, I found a number of cicindelæ skipping about, of an unknown species. At this my companion, who had never before seen an insect-hunter, fell a laughing as if he was out of his wits, and seemed all wonder and astonishment.

1772.
April.

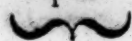
There is not a bridge to be found in all Africa. We were therefore obliged to wade over some pretty deep brooks and rivers; so that herborizing, it must be owned, is a very troublesome business here: but then, on the other hand, the harvest is rich. As soon as I had sat myself down, I made a curious discovery of a remarkably prickly *rumex* (or dock), and likewise of the *tribulus terrestris*. Now and then we rambled up and down recruiting for my regiment of insects, and my collection of plants; an employment which, in proportion as it enlivened my mind, infused fresh spirits into my body, and strength into my limbs. These latter I had likewise an opportunity of resting on the following occasion. Among the waggons that overtook us, there was one drawn by six pair of oxen, after the fashion of the country. In this a slave lay asleep, as drunk as David's sow, likewise in a great measure after the country fashion. Another however more sober than he, sat at the helm, with a whip, the handle of which was three times the length of a man, and the thong in proportion. In this country they never use reins to their oxen, for which reason,

1772.
April.

reason, though he flourished his whip about from right to left with great dexterity, the beasts not being under much discipline heaved continually from larboard to starboard, sometimes across the road, and sometimes along-side of it; so that the driver was not unfrequently obliged to jump off from the waggon, in order to impress his sentiments with the greater energy on the foremost oxen of the team. The waggons are so large and wide in the carriage that they cannot easily overturn, and where the road is worse than ordinary, the foremost oxen are usually led. Up in the waggon sat a Dutchman, who being much hurt at seeing me on foot, very courteously obliged me, together with my servant, to get into the waggon and ride. In about the same latitude we were overtaken by a farmer. We hailed one another, that is, we called to, and saluted each other, as ships do at sea; and were informed by him, that he was a *Mother-country* lad (so the Europeans are called here), and had a wife and family near the *twenty-four rivers*, at the distance of forty *uurs* from thence, in one of the prettiest spots, to his mind, in the whole country. But I now began to reflect, that neither TOURNEFORT in the *Levant*, nor LINNÆUS in the *Lapland* mountains, nor any other botanist, had ever gone out a herborizing in a fix-yoked waggon, and at the same time that my studies and collections could be in no wise forwarded by a carriage of this kind; moreover, that although by this means my legs might get some ease, the other parts of me would suffer for it in consequence of the jolting of the carriage; therefore taking to my feet again, I went on till I arrived at the company's farm. The
steward

1772:
April.

steward (or as they call him there, the *baas*) presented me with a glass of a strong-bodied wine, which was by no means adapted to quench my thirst; but the water here was brackish, and had a salt taste, and they had no milk nor cows, although there was upon the farm a considerable number of horses and other cattle. The reason of this was, that in such places there is usually stationed a guard of soldiers, who care more for wine than milk; the pasture was likewise greatly in fault, being unfavourable for milch-cows, and drying up their milk. I therefore took leave of the *baas*, an appellation given to all the christians here, particularly to bailiffs and farmers. The next farm belonged to a peasant, who was a native of Africa. I now took it into my head for the first time, to make a trial of this people's so much boasted hospitality; but unluckily the man himself was gone to the review at the *Cape*, and had left only a few slaves at home, under the command of an old Crone, who said that the bed-clothes were locked up. I could easily perceive, that she had as little desire to harbour me, as I had to stay with her. It was now already dark, but notwithstanding this and my stiff and wearied legs, I resolved to go on to another farmhouse, that appeared in sight. We missed our way in a dale, and wandered among the thickets and bushes. The *jackalls*, or African *foxes*, now began their nightly serenade, pretty much in the same notes as our foxes in Europe; frogs and owls filled up the concert with their horribly plaintive accompaniment. At length we came to a little rising ground, whence we could again discern the farm, and discover the right road. A guard of dogs, which in
Africa

1772.
April.

Africa are allowed the unlimited privilege of falling foul on such foot passengers of a night, (the later the more liable to suspicion,) set upon us, and frightened us not a little. It was now half an hour past eight; however, as the people were not yet in bed, they came out to our assistance, so that we received no other wounds than those inflicted on the skirts of our coats. We were turned into the kitchen, where we heard a piece of news, that sounded like a thunder-clap to us; this was, that the *baas* or steward was gone to the review, and that every accommodation was locked up. But I felt the pressure of this difficulty still more at break of day. In the mean time the slave, with the greatest good-nature and respect, begged me to be so kind as to make shift with a little tea and bread which he had of his own. My servant, together with this house-slave, and another that looked after the cattle, fell on board a loaf of coarse bread and lard; to them a most delicate and savoury dish. After they had deliberated some time upon the matter in the Portuguese language, I was put into the absent *baas's* own bed-chamber. The bed was tolerable, but the floor was made of loam, the walls bare, and the whole furniture consisted of a cracked tea-canister, with a few empty bottles, and a couple of chairs.

As the door would not lock I set the chairs against it, so that in case any attempt should be made against my life I might be awakened by the noise. After this I laid myself down to sleep, with a drawn knife under my pillow. The many murders that, to my knowledge, were committed in this country, rendered this caution extremely necessary.

The

1772.
April.

The next morning I began to ask for my breakfast, which consisted of some stale *smalt*, a kind of lard prepared and kept in a wooden trough, to be used by way of butter; I likewise got hold of a chop of venison, which they broiled for me, but seasoned it too high with pepper. My hunger made me so civil, as not to show any slight to my black host's entertainment, but I did not sit long at table. An unexpected but very violent quarrel, carried on in the Portuguese language, which I did not understand, now arose between the domestic slave and the cow-keeper. Both their black faces looked like coals on fire. At last the latter taking out his knife, the other was forced to buy him off with a large slice of meat; upon which lighting his breakfast pipe, he went his way, after they had on both sides renewed their friendship with looks of the utmost cordiality. However, for all this seeming reconciliation, the house-slave took a cruel revenge on his antagonist's dog, which happened to stay behind in the kitchen. Yet, notwithstanding his having been guilty of so mean an action, this slave had caught so much of the generous flame of the African hospitality, that I could not easily persuade him to accept of a trifling acknowledgment for his services. Soon after break of day I set out again on my journey, when, for the first time since my arrival in these parts, my eyes were gratified with the sight of extensive corn-fields, which were now in full verdure, with their blades rising a foot out of the ground; for in Tyger-mountain district, where I was at this time, the tillage of corn is the husbandman's chief employ. Wheat and barley, however, are the only sorts of corn that are

1772.
April.

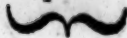
found in the whole colony. The former is used only to be bread, the latter merely for the purpose of foddering horses; partly in this way, that the green corn is cut down in the blade once or oftener according as the growth of it will admit, and partly by grinding it into groats, and then mixing it with the cut straw for their horses as soon as it comes to its full growth, as is practised with us. About ten o'clock I took shelter from the rain in a farm-house, where I found the female slaves singing psalms, while they were at their needle-work. Their master, being possessed with a zeal for religion quite unusual in this country, had prevailed with them to adopt this godly custom; but with that spirit of œconomy which universally prevails among these colonists, he had not permitted them to be initiated into the community of christians by baptism; since by that means, according to the laws of the land, they would have obtained their freedom, and he would have lost them from his service. This very godly *boor* was born at Berlin, and had been mate of a ship in the East-Indies. This occasioned us to enter into a conversation on the victories of his much-loved monarch, and in the space of an hour after that, upon every subject that could be imagined. My throat still felt as if it was burnt up with pepper, and my stomach was tormented with hunger. The former was assuaged by a couple of glasses of wine, but being ashamed to complain of the latter, I left it to its fate to wait till noon (when perhaps I might chance to get an invitation from some good soul,) and returned to my botanical calling and occupation among the shrubs and bushes, with which this country is almost entirely covered, excepting such spots as are cultivated.

1772.
April.

Hardly a stick of wood, indeed scarcely any wild tree, is to be seen here. The soil hereabouts, viz. round about *Tyger-berg* and *Koe-berg*, is, to all appearance, mostly a dry barren sand or gravel; yet, in this district, so full of hillocks, there are certain dales covered with mould, and yielding a plentiful harvest to a few peasants, who apply to the culture of lemon, orange, and pomegranate-trees. At three in the afternoon I arrived at the house of farmer *Van der Spoei*, who was a widower, and an African born, and likewise brother to the person, who, you know, is proprietor of the red or old *Constantia*. Without seeming to take the least notice, he stood stock-still in the house-passage waiting for my coming up, and then did not stir a single step to meet me, but taking me by the hand, greeted me with *Good day! welcome! how are you? who are you? a glass of wine? a pipe of tobacco? will you eat any thing?* I answered his questions in the same order as he put them, and at the same time accepted of the offer he made at the close of them. His daughter, a clever well-behaved girl about twelve or fourteen years of age, set on the table a fine breast of lamb, with stewed carrots for sauce; and after dinner offered me tea with so good a grace, that I hardly knew which to prefer, my entertainment or my fair attendant. Discretion and goodness of heart might be plainly read in the countenance and demeanour of both father and child. I several times addressed myself to my host, in order to break in upon his silence. His answers were short and discreet; but upon the whole, he never began the conversation himself, any farther than to ask me to stay with them that night: how-

1772.
April.

ever, I took leave of him, not without being much affected with a benevolence as uncommon to be met with, as undeserved on my part. In my great zeal for botany, I did not pay the least attention to my stiff and wearied legs, but hobbled as well as I could over the dry and torrid hills, moving all the day long as if I was upon stilts. Towards evening I felt myself less weary, as, by a continuation of the motion of walking and jumping, my limbs were grown more pliable. Not far from the farm we had a brook to cross, where we met with a female slave, who very officiously and obligingly shewed us the shallowest places. She seemed to lay her account in receiving some amorous kind of acknowledgment, in which she could not be otherwise than disappointed, as she had the misfortune to meet with a delicate as well as a weary philosopher. In the evening I arrived in good time at a farm, where the father and mother were from home; but *Master John* and *Miss Sussey* gave me house-room notwithstanding. It was a handsome building, and, like all the rest on the road, composed partly of brick, and partly of well-wrought clay, but without any other floor than the bare earth. I had intended to go on farther, but when I saw a large churn on the floor, and heard from *Sussey's* own mouth, that they had thirty milch-cows, you may imagine that I did not think of going, especially as I had seldom found milk very plentiful since my arrival in Africa. The farm was said to yield about three thousand two hundred bushels of corn yearly, which was from ten to fifteen times the quantity that was sown. A good wheaten loaf, light and well-baked, and about two feet in diameter, was set upon the

1772.
April.

the table, and of this, with some milk and fresh butter, I made an excellent meal. They seemed to take a great pleasure in entertaining me, and (though they strove to conceal their laughter) appeared highly entertained in their turn with my broken Dutch, and my apparatus for catching and preserving insects. My collection of herbs they liked very well, as they themselves prepared a kind of plaister with herbs and wax. The next morning they brought me coffee, which I left untouched, it being full of grouts, and, according to the custom of the country, as weak as small beer. However, I set out again on my journey, quite lively and brisk after the high treat I had had of milk. As my box of insects was already quite full, I was obliged to put a whole regiment of flies and other insects round the brim of my hat. On the road we passed a cow-keeper, who was roasting a small tortoise, the flesh of which tasted like that of a chicken. Two or three miles farther on we met with a shepherd, that was regaling himself with roast lamb at his master's expence. My companion, who knew the full value of his liberty, expressed great satisfaction at finding, that poor slaves had sometimes an opportunity of revenging themselves on their tyrants by a breach of trust. He informed me, that it was common for shepherds, who had rigid and niggardly masters, when a ewe had twins, to keep always one of them for themselves, and very often the other too, whenever they had an opportunity of concealing the theft. At three o'clock we came to another farm. Here I had some conversation with the old lady of the house about her gout, which she had in her hands and feet, and at the same time

con-

1772.
April.

concerning her good man's rheumatism, which in order to get rid of by sweating, he was gone on a journey to the warm baths. A house plaistered up in a slovenly manner with clay, a heap of dirty scabby children, a female slave dragging after her a heavy iron chain fastened to one of her legs, the features of the old woman herself, her peaked nose, her perpetually scolding her servants, and lastly, her entertaining me with nothing but cold water, plainly indicated that poverty dwelt in her house, and at the same time that the gout had in her choleric temperament a very fertile soil to grow in. She advised me to set myself down in the *Paarl* (a tract of ground a little way from thence planted with vines, and inhabited by vine-dressers,) in order to make my fortune by turning quack. She informed me, that there had been a physician there before, who had had no practice, as his price was too high. She said, that she never could, nor ever should be persuaded to be bled, or to take any kind of physic; nevertheless, she thought it very comfortable for a person to have access to a physician in case of sickness. You see, Sir, that an African cottage will afford you a view of mankind, similar to what you may have had in the palaces of Europe, where (it must be owned) they call in physicians to their assistance, but seldom fail to manage themselves in a great measure according to their own caprice. In pursuance of the information I got I took the road to the right, which, I was told, would carry me to the house of a rich and infirm widow of fifty-two years of age. My servant, who was acquainted there, warned me not to frighten the good woman into fits with my insects stuck on the brim of my hat;

1772.
April.

hat; for which reason, having arrived there about five o'clock, and been well received by her, I took care to turn the crown of my hat away from her, and afterwards hid my hat in a corner of the room. Immediately my mouth was crammed with bread, butter, and cheese, wine and tea, and at the same time was employed in giving dissertations on the gout, apoplexy, violent bleedings at the nose, coughs, and her poor deceased husband's dropfy. The good lady was attentive to hear, and I to eat, as much as ever my lectures would permit me. During these, a tell-tale hussy of a female slave, who was a favourite with her mistress, had been pumping my servant in the kitchen, on which she whispered her mistress in the ear, that my hat was full of little beasts (*kleine bestjes*.) The old lady immediately quitted the fine instructions that I was about giving her with respect to diet, in order to go and look at the strange and wonderful sight that was to be seen on my hat. But what astonished her the most in this affair was, to see the little animals run through the body with pins, and fastened to the brim of my hat. An explanation was required on the spot. It was now necessary for me to cease eating a while, for fear of being choaked with some of the big words and long Dutch phrases, which I was obliged to coin on the spot, in order to convince her of the great utility of understanding these little animals for medical and oeconomic purposes, and at the same time to the glory of the great Creator. Fortunately for me I descanted on this subject with great success, though not without some inquietude; for, in case I had not succeeded, I should certainly have been turned out of doors for a conjuror (*bex-meester* :)

1772.
April.

meester :) but now, on the contrary, the good woman begged me to stay, and I promised myself a good night's rest in such an elegant and well-furnished house. Soon after there came a light cart, with company. This consisted, first, of her daughter; secondly, of a very stout fat country 'squire or yeoman, Mr. M * *, who was said to be able to give each of his daughters four thousand guineas on their marriage, one of whom had, by some accident or other, already lain in of a black child, the father of which, as a reward for his kindness, had been advanced from the condition of slave to that of prisoner for life in one of the *Robben* isles, and the lady herself to that of wife to her father's bailiff; thirdly, the 'squire's half brother, still more corpulent than himself. The father of these gentlemen was a native of *Livonia*, and had been a soldier in the Swedish service. They had seen an insect-hunter before, but when they looked into my collection of herbs, and found it to contain not only flowers, but likewise grass and small branches of shrubs and trees, they could not forbear laughing at a sight so unexpected. The young lady got from me all the intelligence I could give her on the subject of pimples and freckles, and, by way of reimbursing myself, I asked her several questions concerning domestic remedies and the warm bath, which she had lately used for three weeks. She likewise, together with her mother, advised me to practise physic in PAARL; but it is a great pity, they added, that a man who seems to understand our disorders so well, should speak our language so ill.

There

1772.
April.

There was no milk to be had here, but the want of it was amply supplied by a very good and well-dressed supper. The wine went round in bumpers to each others healths, and to the continuance of our friendship and acquaintance. The conversation turned upon various subjects, and among others, those of corpulency, and the custom of sleeping after dinner; and the efficient cause of these, viz. the Livonian gentlemen's use of the warm bath in this climate, was discussed with great precision. We wished one another a good night; but I myself rested very ill; for the unusually purfy batchelor, who fell to my share, snored continually, and proved very troublesome. He looked indeed very good-humoured, as well as his lively and *plaisirige broeder*, but was not able to say much; and when he did speak, he wheezed so much, as to be for the most part unintelligible to me. He puffed and blowed more in putting on his shoes and stockings, than I did when I last went up Table-mountain. The next morning I bid these good people adieu, and took the road leading to *Mountain-river* in *Paarl*. The ferry lay a good deal out of my way, who had no particular business to transact on the other side; so that having observed an uncultivated islet, three or four fathoms distant from the bank, where the sheep and goats could not get to forestall me in the blooming produce of the soil, I ventured over on some bundles of the palmites, I spoke of above, (*acorus palmita*) which were so smooth and brittle, that, if I had chanced to make the least slip, I must have been inevitably drowned by getting between them, or else under them. My hat and queue excepted, I went a botanizing on this island in the same dress

1772.
April.

as Adam wore in his state of innocence. My skin quite parched up by the sun, served, however, to convince me, that I had lost in my little paradise the dominion over the gnats and horse-flies. These diminutive animals soon obliged me to turn back and put on my clothes, when I afterwards botanized along the course of the river, and so passing through several farms, I arrived at *Paarl* at a miller's, who was sitting and taking his afternoon's nap. A more serious and even seemingly furly chap, I never saw in my life. He set before me an old crazy chair, and without asking who I was, said directly, *What will you chuse to have?* (*Wat zal ye bruiken?*) I see, replied I, you have got some tea, be so kind as to give me some bread to it, for I am both hungry and thirsty; I have spent the whole day in culling of simples. *What, have you eat nothing to-day?* Girl, bring some meat, bread, and a bottle of wine! says the cross-grained old fellow. Accordingly I ate my belly full, and afterwards drank to his health; during the whole of which time he was smoking his pipe in silence, and poring over an astrological almanack of the last century. During all which time, he did not once address himself to me; and to a question or two I asked him, he answered me so short, that I imagined he was extremely displeased with my visit, and therefore could not help pressing him to accept of a pecuniary recompence for my entertainment. He answered me positively with a most inflexible air, *No; that I certainly will not, it is our duty to assist travellers.* For my servant, without my knowledge, had ordered a good luncheon of bread and meat, but did not follow me half way over his slippery loam-floor when I took my leave of him. Affected with

with an internal sense of gratitude, I wished within myself, that heaven might pardon so worthy a miller, in case he should at any time chance to trespass on his neighbour's corn.

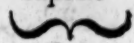
1772.
April.

A little farther on lived a *Koster*, that is, a Sexton, a set of people that are more respected by the Calvinists than with us. He was of black extraction by the mother's side. I went in, sat myself down, and drank a dish of miserable tea without sugar. The *Koster's* wife, who was rather in years, was then sick in bed. I enquired into the nature of the disorder: but when I was told that the patient, notwithstanding the use of the warm bath for three weeks, remained as it were contracted in all her limbs, and her joints quite filled up with chalk-stones, I did not chuse to say any thing more, than that the gout was a terrible affliction, shrugged up my shoulders, and inquired for the right road. Just before the door grew the *Cataputia*. I asked the man if he made any use of the seeds, or whether I might gather any of it? He answered, he did not use them himself, but in general gave them to his friends: *Gather what you will*, continued he, *I never heard any body ask after them before, what do you want them for? For medical purposes*, replied I. I now had brought an old house over my head, and was obliged to go in again, and hear the account of the old woman's illness, as well as explain the cause of it. However, I thought it necessary to inform her, with very little circumlocution, that her stay in this calamitous world was likely to be of very short duration. She was glad to be freed from her misery, and her husband to get rid of a sickly wife; on which account they both of

1772.
April.

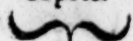
them seemed to hear my fatal prognostic with pleasure, and made me drink a couple of glasses of wine for my pains; and at the same time offered to shew me the church, which stood just by. By this edifice I could plainly perceive, that these boors bestowed no more pains upon God's house, than they did upon their own. This church was, indeed, as big as one of our largest sized hay-barns, and neatly covered, as the other houses are, with dark-coloured reeds; but without any arching or ceiling, so that the transoms and beams within made a miserable appearance. Altars and altarpieces are, I believe, never used in the reformed church. There were benches on the sides for the men, but the women have each of them their chair or stool in the aisle. The pulpit was too plain and slovenly.

From hence I set off for home by a bye-way, as little known to my guide as to myself. Eighteen China oranges, which I had bought in *Paarl* for one skelling Dutch, proved extremely serviceable to me at this time; and a large roll of tobacco which my servant had taken with him, was a still more desirable *vade mecum* for him. He carried really a heavy load, which however appeared to be very little burden to him. On the other hand however, it must be considered, that he went on always in a straight line, while I continually ran from one side to the other, peeping among the bushes. It was already dark when we arrived at a farmhouse, where the boor himself was not at home. During his absence, I drew his wife into a conversation concerning household affairs, and found (what I much wondered at in so substantial a house) that they had seldom any great plenty of milk; and this on account of the dry barren hills
near

1772.
April.

near them, and other causes not worth mentioning here ; but that on the other hand, they had a good stock of sheep, some arable land, and vineyards, which, by means of water-conduits, might be rendered fertile. She was a generous and good kind of woman as one would wish to see, but unluckily happened to offer me just every thing that I did not wish for, wine, brandy, and tobacco. Her husband, a very brisk lively old fellow, being at last come home, immediately drank to me, saying, *Perhaps you suppose that nobody knows any thing but yourself, with your herbs and you, but you shall see that we African peasants are not all so stupid as you think for.* Upon this, by way of surprising me, he displayed a few good books, and a heap of trash, on almost every science ; all of which I could do no other than commend, as he did nothing but run between me and his book-case, and read over the whole title-page of every book, the printer's and bookseller's name not excepted. *You see, says he, that I do not spend my whole time in following the plough.* We almost called one another Cousin-Germans, he being a Livonian and I a Swede. At night there was no danger of starving for want of victuals. *You must eat hearty with us farmers,* said the kind-hearted dame. *Eat and spare not : we do not grudge it you.* They had their butter and cheese, together with hung-beef, or rather buffalo-flesh, from their grazing farms, almost six hundred miles up the country. By the appearance of the soup and green-peas I could plainly perceive, that my learned host had not studied any books of cookery, which in Africa would have been of much more use to him than poetry and the dead languages. The good woman of the house was obliged to

1772.
April.



go to bed alone, while her husband employed himself with the history of JOSEPHUS, in order to convince me of his great attachment to study. Accordingly many people in this country call their slaves, some after the months, and others after the days of the week in which they were born. Early in the morning I was waked here by the horrid shrieks and cries of *January* and *February*, who were undergoing the discipline of their master's lash, because the horses had not been found the preceding evening. Soon after the family got ready for going to church, but were prevented by a shower of rain. In the mean time we ate our breakfasts, and drank to each others health; upon which I returned them thanks and took leave of them, with a luncheon of bread and butter doubled together, and stuffed into my coat-pocket by my host and hostess, by way of (*weegkost*) or provision for my journey. I was secretly much affected at receiving such tokens of good-will, quite undeserved on my part, from the hands of people to whom I was an entire stranger.

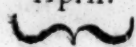
The woman was goodness itself, but this goodness was enshrined in a mighty phlegmatic body. The old fellow's phraseology, as well as his library, discovered, that he was, as well as myself, a run-away student. I likewise afterwards came to know, that he had been a surgeon, and had been sent thither as a soldier by kidnappers; and at the same time I learned, that he had got the greater part of his books by marriage with a parson's daughter, his present wife. This good woman could not have chosen, to counteract her *phlegm*, a more choleric piece of goods for a husband, who, in spite of a naturally good disposition, was

was said, for trifling faults, to have beat several of his slaves to death. I could give you, Sir, many instances, that the exercise of any crime whatsoever, particularly such as the slave trade, or the trafficking with the liberties of mankind, never fails to plunge men into disorders and misdemeanours of various kinds.

1772.
April.

On the lands belonging to this farm stands the Tower of Babel, so they call a hill, which is mentioned by this name by KOLBE, as being of a remarkable size, and which will ever remain a standing monument of this author's inaccuracy. I pass over my little adventures with *serpents, scorpions, cameleons*, and other animals of the lizard kind, well knowing, that you are not endued with taste enough to take pleasure in, and be sensible of, the beauties of these reptiles, a race of animals with which this Canaan of Africa abounds. But I must not omit to tell you, how puzzled and undetermined we frequently were on our return homewards, particularly once on a large plain. Almost at the end of it we met with seven of the company's servants or soldiers, but by no means to our advantage; for these my fellow-Christians, intoxicated with the wine which they carried about them in leathern bottles or calabasses, were at variance among themselves, and seemingly did not wish to give us any information, as every one of them pointed out to us an almost entirely different way. Jabbering to me all at once in High Dutch, Low Dutch, Hanoverian, &c. they all endeavoured to make me believe, that I should meet with rivers, mountains, deserts, and the like, if, according to their sea dialect, I did not steer my course right. Another asked me whither I was bound?

1772.
April.



bound? and then told me how I should lay my tacks to starboard and larboard. I thanked them, and got away from them as well as I could; on which they formed a ring round my servant, and chattered to him about the road till his head was quite turned. At length they got into a dispute themselves about the same subject, by which means we both got loose from them. What was now to be done? Being without chart or compass, I endeavoured to direct my course by the sun, till I overtook a black heathen, who was tending sheep; and in consequence of whose sober and sensible directions, I arrived in the evening at a farm-house, the bailiff of which, a Hanoverian, welcomed me in the most friendly manner, with a hearty slap of the hand, in the African style. He entertained me with milk, and an account of the love affairs and intrigues he had when he was a foldier in England. He also gave me a list (which, by his desire, I took down in my pocket-book, as the result of his own experience) of the constant order of precedence in love, which ought to be observed among the fair sex in Africa: this was as follows. First the *Madagascar* women, who are the blackest and handsomest; next to these the *Malabars*, then the *Bugunese* or *Malays*, after these the Hottentots, and last and worst of all, the white Dutch women. The excessively nice stewed cabbage we had for supper, he supposed to be the best in the world; and at the same time, that its crispness proceeded from the soil being highly impregnated with salt-petre. In fact, the land here was sandy and low, and probably contained much sea-salt. Being but two christians among twelve or fourteen men slaves, we bolted the door fast, and had five loaded

1772.
April.

loaded pieces hung over our bed. During the whole evening I had seen the slaves in such good humour, and so kindly and familiarly treated, that (with regard to their temporal matters at least) they really seemed to be better off than many servants in Europe; I therefore observed to my host, that his mildness and kindness was the best pledge for their good behaviour, and the surest preservative against their attacks. It may be so, replied he, but besides that, several runaway and rebel slaves are continually wandering about, in order to plunder houses of victuals and fire-arms, or else to draw others over to their party; we have likewise instances of the blacks becoming furious at night, and committing murder, more particularly on the persons of their masters; but sometimes, if they cannot get at them, on some of their comrades, or else upon themselves. I am here in the place of a master to them, and am obliged to punish them whenever they behave ill to me or to each other. The Bugunese in particular are revengeful, and nice about the administration of justice. In order to avoid jealousy, quarrels, and murder, my master does not permit any female slaves to be kept here; but I could wish it were otherwise, as well as in other places, where I formerly was a servant. Now they are lonesome and solitary, and consequently slow and sluggish enough. The chief of my master's income from this farm arises from the breeding of horses. Could he keep female slaves here, he would get still more by the propagation of the human species; and indeed, a female slave who is prolific, is always sold for three times as much as one that is barren.

1772.
April.

From the information that I have just given you, you will perhaps, my good friend, be apt to think with me, that even the most supportable kind of tyranny always brings with it its own punishment, in troubled sleep and an uneasy conscience. Slaves, even under the mildest tyrant, are bereaved of the rights of nature. The melancholy remembrance of so painful a loss, is most apt to arise during the silence of the night, when it ceases to be dissipated by the bustle of the day. What wonder then, if those who commit outrages on their liberties, should sometimes be forced to sign and seal with their blood the violated rights of mankind? Ought not my host, gentle as he was, to fear the effects of despair on twelve stout fellows forcibly taken from their native country, their kindred, and their freedom? Is it not likewise to be dreaded, that thus shut out from the commerce of the fair sex, which sweetens life, and renders its cares supportable, their inclinations, which are extremely warm, should trespass against manhood?—In the course of our conversation on rural oeconomy I took notice, that a slave born in the country (especially a *bastard*) who can drive a waggon safe and well, and who can be trusted to inspect the other slaves, or is looked upon as a clever and faithful servant, bears the price of five hundred rixdollars. One that is newly brought from Madagascar, or is in other respects not so skilful nor so much to be depended upon, costs from an hundred to an hundred and fifty rixdollars. A horse that in Sweden would fetch ten rixdollars, costs at the Cape from thirty to forty; a draught ox from eight to ten; but a tolerable good milch-cow from twelve to fourteen; one

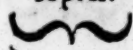
1772.
April.

ditto brought from the mother country or any part of Europe, and of a sort that produces a great quantity of milk, fells for forty or fifty rixdollars, and the purchaser thinks himself favoured into the bargain; all which has since been confirmed to me by several others.

On Monday morning I took leave, and asked the road towards home, when I was answered, "There is no road this way. You must leave the road that goes to the Cape to the right, and then go strait forward through the bushes, when you will come within sight of the mountain that stretches itself between Constantia and the Cape; then go strait forward over the dry barren plains, to the nook in the mountain; you may remember it lies very near Constantia and your house. You will find no more farms in your way home." Well! thought I to myself, this looks as if I should dine upon grafs to-day; I was vexed at having had no breakfast, and was too bashful to give a hint of it to my host, who the day before had received me with such hospitality. We had not long been in sight of the mountain, before we saw a cloud arise from it, which did not turn to rain till it arrived at the plain we were in. This shower, which was pretty heavy, subjected me to the greatest inconveniencies, having exposed myself to be wet through, in order to shelter my herbal. But of such a nature is this climate, that in a few minutes, as soon as the sun shone out again, I was quite dry. In the evening, when I came to *Alphen*, I learned, that it had not rained there in the least, but the cloud covered the mountain in its usual way.

I must not omit to tell you, that on the road I several times entered into a religious discourse with my heathen

1772.
April.



companion; he asserted, that I was the first that had spoken to him on that subject, at the same time that he was so stupid (for so he called himself) as not to know or comprehend any thing concerning it, nor did he think it was for him to trouble himself with these matters; however, he did not seem unwilling to believe every thing that any body should think proper to tell him. His thoughts had never ascended to a superior being, nor led him to the first origin of any thing, to the creature or to the Creator. He very well knew, that the white men assembled together in the churches, but had never thought of asking to what purpose. Very likely it may be so, was the answer he usually gave me, when I talked to him on this subject. Notwithstanding this, he seemed to have in some measure an abhorrence of vice, and a veneration for what was good. The person, who at that time recommended him to my service, gave him the character of being extremely faithful. In other respects his mind was capable enough of being illumined; but as the making of proselytes brings the Dutch in neither capital nor interest, this poor soul, with many others of his countrymen, was neglected. But more of this and other matters by the next opportunity that offers.

I am, &c.

With the botanical excursion, the detail of which is given in this letter, I was extremely well pleased on several accounts. The six last days of it might almost be called a forced march, intermixed with a good deal of leaping, and (what tires one full as much) clambering. With
the

the same inclination, however, I think I could have lasted out several days longer in the same manner. The next day after my departure from the Cape, was, as I have already related, the most tiresome to me; afterwards both my limbs and joints seemed to get more used to the exercise. The two or three first days after I had got home, I felt myself sore and tender, or, as people usually express it, beat and bruised all over, but this went off by degrees: in like manner as, thanks to the violent exercise I had taken, some disagreeable, though slight touches, of a rheumatic gout entirely vanished, with which I had been troubled some time before, and that chiefly in rainy weather; and which did not return upon me, before I was exposed to the cold in the Antarctic polar circle. After my return home, however, I was wise enough to make a little excursion every day.

1772.
April.

S E C T. V.

*Residence at Alphen, after the Author's return
from Paarl.*

1772.
April.

IN one of my excursions I had the good fortune to meet with Mr. Hemming, the sub-governor, on his farm, in the district of Constantia; who, though he thought highly of the science of botany, was yet astonished that my enthusiasm for it should have carried me so far about in the space of six days, viz. from the Cape over *Tiger-berg*, through *Paarl*, *Botlary*, and so in a circle home again, and this by no means by the nearest way.

Mr. Hemming's garden was one of the best in the district; he had taken pains to procure grafts of orange and lemon-trees, and layers of the pomegranate from Spain, from which he promised himself fruit equal to the Spanish, as what grows at the Cape at present is not quite so good. Divers sorts of cherry-trees, that grow here, scarcely produced a single cherry, though various trials had been made with them in different spots. The best method he had found of rooting out a *uniola*, which was overrunning his kitchen-garden, was to sow it with cabbage for a year, as he had observed, that this weed never throve on land where cabbages had been sown. The *pisang* was to be met with in his garden

1772.
April.

garden of a luxuriant growth, but was said not to produce fruit of so high a flavour as it does in its native country. A species of this grows wild in the *Houtniquas* country, a district somewhat to the east of *Muscle-bay*; though I could never find it there myself.

I continued at the farm at *Alphen* till about the middle of November. Entirely taken up with the Cape plants, I did not seldom revolve in my mind, how I should go on with them for months and years ensuing; but fate had ordered it otherwise. In fact, it was ordained, that I should suddenly change the continent of Africa, its delightful summer-climate, and its beautiful flowers, for a bleak cold ocean, blocked up with mountains of ice.

C H A P. III.

VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH-SEA.

S E C T. I.

The Circumstances which gave occasion to this Voyage.

1772.
April.

THE circumstances which gave occasion to this voyage were as follows: The ships *Resolution* and *Adventure*, destined to make a voyage towards the South Pole and round the globe, were at that time at anchor in *Table-bay*. The Messrs. FORSTER accompanied them in the capacity of naturalists; and had an appointment from the British crown of 4000l. sterling, or 8000 ducats, for the whole expedition. They were brought to *Alphen* by Major Van PREHM, in order to be introduced to me. By this means I had the pleasure of enjoying their company for a couple of days. As the southern continent, which was still pretty generally supposed to exist, had taken no small hold on my imagination, this was sufficient reason for me to congratulate these

1772.
April.

these gentlemen on the trust reposed in them, and the good fortune they had in visiting as naturalists, so distant and unknown a part of our globe. I found them not only eager each for his own part to fulfil what the world expected and required of them, but they even went so far in their zeal for the more accurate investigation of nature, as to think of procuring an assistant, at no small cost to themselves, and therefore offered me my voyage gratis, with part of such natural curiosities as they might chance to collect, on condition of my assisting them with my poor abilities. Such an unexpected return to my compliment, had almost deprived me of the power of answering them, had not my heart dictated to me the most lively expressions of gratitude to them for the confidence they placed in me. But before I could give a determinate answer to so lucrative and agreeable a proposal, which at the same time did me so much honour, but likewise set before me a tedious, difficult, and dangerous voyage, the affair seemed to require some consideration. Should I accept this offer, thought I, and the event prove fortunate, I should soon forget my fatigues, nay, frequently remember with pleasure the difficulties I had undergone. On the other hand, should I once neglect this opportunity, I should long have to upbraid myself with the omission. I recollected, that the great Linnæus had frequently said, nothing had vexed him more in his whole life, than that, when he resided in Holland, he had not accepted of the offer which had been made him of taking a voyage to the Cape of Good Hope.

As two Swedes, Dr. SOLANDER and Mr. SPOERING, with remarkable honour to themselves and advantage to science,

VOL. I.

M

had

1772.
April.

had before undertaken a voyage to New Holland, &c. and so round the world, I could not help wishing that a Swede likewise might have the opportunity of making a visit to the south pole, and the continent supposed to be in the vicinity of it. I had reason as well as the Messrs. FORSTER to hope, that the assistance of a third naturalist (meaning myself) might add to the discoveries of the curious productions of nature, which the two others were so intent upon making; especially in those places, which were now about to be visited for the first, and probably for the last time. In other respects, in case that any of the plants which are so useful in the colder parts of the north should be found in the south, who could be supposed capable to collect them with such assiduity, or of preserving the seeds of them with so much care as a Swede? Again, on the other hand, if my voyage should prove unsuccessful, I was in hopes that my miseries, together with life itself, and all its train of attendant evils, would have a speedy end. Occupied by reflections of this kind, I passed the night, perhaps more restless than will easily be imagined. The next morning by day-break, the distraction of my thoughts carried me to my chamber window; here I fixed my eyes on the adjacent meadows, as though I meant to ask the plants and flowers that grew on them, whether I ought to part with them so hastily. They had for a long time been almost my only joy, my sole friends and companions; and now it was these only, which in a great measure prevented me from making the voyage. At length I came to the resolution of undertaking it; yet with a fixed determination, that if I had the good fortune to come back to the
Cape,

1772.
April.

Cape, I would again occupy myself on this same spot with the most delightful of all employments, the investigation of nature. I therefore began to get ready for my journey; and sent specimens of the insects and plants I had collected to Sir CHARLES LINNÆUS and other lovers of the science. The rest of my collections, &c. I left at the Cape, at the president's house, desiring him to dispatch them to Sweden, in case he should receive any certain information of our ship's being lost; or in case my absence for any length of time, should give him reason to doubt of my return. The danger of the journey was, however, the least of my cares; the supposed length of it, together with my ignorance of the English language, as well as of the disposition of the people, with whom I was to be conversant during the whole time, perplexed me much more. The farewell letters I wrote to some of my relations were so much the more painful to me, as I could easily imagine to myself their anxiety and uneasiness on the account of my impending fate. I therefore thought it most adviseable, to represent my journey to be as easy and commodious as was consistent with any degree of probability.

In the seven months that had passed since my departure from my native country, I had had no news from thence. I now gave up all thoughts of getting a single word of intelligence from any part of Europe for four times that period. Thus circumstanced, how much it cost me to go on board, I leave those to imagine who are not entirely devoid of feeling.

What happened during this remarkable voyage, I fear would be liable to tedious repetitions, were I to relate it in

1772.
April.

the form of a journal, partly on account of the frequent occurrence of events pretty nearly resembling each other, and partly by reason that various islands were visited several times; a more particular account of the voyage therefore, I must defer to some other opportunity. In the mean while, for the sake of preserving the order and connexion of time, it seems requisite, that I should here, in its proper place, give some account, though as concisely as possible, of the different regions we explored during the succeeding twenty-eight months, till the time of my landing again safe at the Cape.

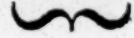
S E C T.

S E C T. II.

Voyage from the Cape of Good Hope to New Zealand.

ON the 22d of November, 1772, at four o'clock in the afternoon, we failed from the Cape. The very same day stormy weather, and the disagreeable kind of sickness which usually attends people at sea on their setting out, appeared to a degree sufficient to make many wish themselves on shore. Within eighteen days from our leaving the flowery meads of the Cape, we found ourselves very near a considerable large floating island of ice. The thermometer stood at a few degrees above the freezing point, while our latitude was only 50 deg. south. How disagreeably we passed the remainder of the summer in this hemisphere, may be gathered from this, that we made our way through floating islands of ice, sometimes as big as mountains, till we came to lat. 67'. 10"; so that we are, and probably shall continue to be, the only mortals that can boast of the frozen honour (as I may call it) of having passed the antarctic polar circle. A hundred and twenty-two days, or something more than seventeen weeks, were elapsed, without our having been able to see land; but not without our having gone through divers perils, not to mention the hardships

1772.
November.



1773.
April.

hardships which we underwent of various kinds; especially that of having, for the greater part of the above-mentioned period, remained in excessively cold latitudes, continually furrounded with ice. The *aurora australis*, which in the south is the same as the northern lights in our hemisphere, a spectacle never before seen by a European, now appeared several times in the month of March, on the 26th day of which month we anchored in *Dusky-bay*, situated near the southernmost promontory of *New Zealand*. From hence we went to *Cook's-strait*, where we had a sight of that most singular junction of the water with the clouds, which by sailors is called the water-spout; and the next day, being the 18th of April, we anchored in *Queen Charlotte's-sound*. The other ship, the *Adventure*, had been separated from us ever since the 8th of January in the preceding year, by a fog. After this she had investigated the western coast of *Van Diemen's Land* in *New Holland*, and a part of the coast by which it is supposed to be joined with *South Wales*, which latter was discovered in Captain Cook's former voyage. It was great pleasure to us to find, that this ship had, fortunately for us, landed at the place previously agreed upon for the rendezvous. The plants and trees in this country are, excepting some of its ferns and mosses, almost entirely unknown, and different from those that grow in other parts of the globe. These, therefore, together with the new species of birds and fishes which are to be found here, afforded me an agreeable occupation. The inhabitants, on the other hand, a race of cannibals, live in such a miserable condition, and have such manners and customs, as may excite our pity and

1773.
April.

and compassion in behalf of our own species; yet, as among civilized nations there are not wanting such as are a disgrace to human nature, so among these very devourers of their own species, one might discover some traces of a good disposition, as well as the seeds of ingenuity, which, under the fostering care of the soul-informing sciences, might render these our fellow-creatures, now plunged in darkness, a much more virtuous and happy people.

This nation chiefly depends on fishing for its support; and by pursuing such an uncertain livelihood, they want both time and inclination for agriculture and the mechanical arts, as well as for that order and regularity which is requisite for the prevention of the barbarism in which these poor people are actually plunged. For while they are seeking after their food in the water, they suffer their lands to be infested with an uncommonly large kind of stinging nettles, with other weeds and thorny plants, so that they are very frequently obliged to transport their huts to desert shores, unstable and floating, as are the animals, which they have to pursue in a boundless element. Notwithstanding this, the soil possesses such a degree of fecundity, that it is capable of being converted into the most fertile arable land or vine-yards, sufficient to give food and other conveniences of life to a great number of inhabitants, who, united among themselves, would compose a very powerful republic, and be in a condition to extend their commerce and conquests over the whole Pacific Ocean. (Collate with this my oration on laying down the office of president of the royal academy of sciences.)

S E C T. III.

*First Voyage from New Zealand to Otaheite, and
from thence back again to New Zealand.*

1773.
June.

ON the 7th of June we sailed from *New Zealand*, and had thoughts of taking in refreshments in some of the warmer islands, as the cold season was now set in in this part of the world. After we had been at sea a few days, we resolved upon killing a fat, though ugly Dutch dog, before the scurvy, together with the short commons of the ship, should render his flesh unfit for eating. Already used in our run between the *Cape* and *New Zealand* to put up with sheep that had died of the scurvy or other disorders, diseased hens and geese, we certainly were not now in a condition to turn up our noses at a roasted dog, which was really nice and well-tasted. After we had passed the tropic, we came in sight of divers islands, some of which had been discovered before, and others had been hitherto entirely unknown; and on the 16th of August we arrived at the far-famed, though, perhaps, too highly celebrated, island of *Otaheite*. We were in the greatest danger of suffering shipwreck on this island, sacred
to

1773.
August.

to love; for our keel struck several times very hard against the coral rocks, before we came to anchor. After remaining here fourteen days we visited the islands of *Huabeine*, *Uliatea*, and *Otaba*, and afterwards discovered a new, but probably an uninhabited island; looked out for the islands of *New Amsterdam* and *New Middleburg*, discovered about a hundred years ago by TASMÁN; and having found them, and taken in refreshments there, returned again to *Queen Charlotte's-sound*, in *New Zealand*, after having been absent from it about half a year. During this run, according to the time of the year it was winter; but, with respect to our feelings and the warmth of the weather, it was summer. We likewise met with a greater variety of remarkable subjects for description (such as the different countries, their produce, the nations that inhabited them, and their peculiar customs and manners) than I am able to comprize here in a small compass. I cannot, however, help relating some few events that happened at different times: as for instance, one evening when both ships, driving before a brisk gale of wind, wanted to speak with each other, they came so near together in consequence of the great swell of the sea, and the dilatory manœuvring of the men at the helm of one of the ships, that notwithstanding the officer of the watch repeatedly called out with the greatest anxiety, *Starboard and port*, they were within a hair's breadth of striking against each other; in which case they would doubtless have dashed one another to pieces in an instant, or else have both gone to the bottom. As besides myself very few people, not even the officers

1773.
August.

belonging to the watch, were on deck, this accident is neither mentioned in the log-book of the ship, nor in any of the journals yet published. It seemed in the beginning as if both ships would strike with their broadsides against each other, but directly upon that the *Adventure* dropped astern, and with the point of her bowsprit came within two or three yards at least of our mizen-shrouds, and so made a flourish over our taffarel and ensign-staff. Upon this, an officer who belonged to another watch immediately observed, that it was in the highest degree imprudent, and without the least shew of reason, to sail up to each other in such a brisk gale and high surge; to which the officer of the watch made no farther reply, than just to repeat several times with great seeming satisfaction, "It is all over now." Indeed, they both allowed, that we were very near suffering shipwreck in the middle of the ocean. The other accident I shall relate, concerned myself alone. Once when I was on a botanical excursion in Huaheine, some Indians fell upon me and plundered me; leaving the upper part of my body quite naked, with several marks of violence on my head and breast. This incident proceeded partly from a fancy the Indians had taken to my clothes, and partly from a desire of revenge; Captain Cook having just before been obliged to drive away an impudent Indian by force, and take his weapons from him.

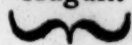
We were separated from the *Adventure* on the coast of *New Zealand* by a storm, and never saw her afterwards. She came to anchor in *Queen Charlotte's-sound*,
before

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

91

before we went from thence, where she had the misfortune to lose her whole boat's crew, consisting of ten men, who were killed, roasted, and eaten by the cannibals. Upon which she set out on her way home, and arrived in Europe a year before the ship commanded by Captain Cook.

1773:
August.



S E C T. IV.

*Second Voyage from New Zealand to Otaheite, and
from thence back again.*1773.
November.

ON the 25th of November in the year 1773, we sailed from New Zealand, in order once more, and during another summer, to explore the cold southern latitudes. From the 13th to the 21st of December we passed for the first, and in all probability for the last time, that part of the globe, which is the direct antipodes to *Sweden*; so that I was now on the spot the most distant from my native country of any on the whole globe, as the nearest way home, supposing one could go through the center of the earth, or the length of the whole earth's diameter, was about six thousand eight hundred and twenty-one miles. This astonishing distance, however, did not prevent my rapid thoughts from frequently visiting my beloved countrymen and relations during this period, while my feet were in direct opposition to their's. After this we advanced still farther, insomuch that on the 20th of December we passed the *antarctic* circle a second time, and did not repass it till the 25th, so that we kept our Christmas-eve (though, it must be owned, a very meagre one) in the frigid zone. On the 26th of the following month

we

we passed the southern polar circle, for the third time. We now penetrated into the southern regions as far as we could go; as before we had got to 71 deg. 14 min. we were prevented by the ice from putting in execution the scheme we had fondly formed of hoisting the British flag in a sixth part of the world, or even in the southern pole itself. We now therefore turned about to the north, in order to take in refreshments in a warmer climate, as winter or the cold season was expected soon to return.

 1774.
March.


On the 14th of March we anchored off *Easter-island*, which is situated in 27 deg. S. lat. and 199 deg. 46 min. W. long. Here we found no good water, and few refreshments of any sort. The lava and other volcanic productions that we saw here, together with some huge images of stone raised to some height from the ground, plainly evinced, that some violent revolution of the earth had defaced a country which had been formerly in a more flourishing condition, and thereby reduced a once powerful nation to the wretched state in which we now found it.

On the 16th of March we sailed from hence, and on the 7th of April anchored off one of the *Marquesas* islands. These are situated in about 10 deg. of lat. The greater part of them were discovered by the Spaniards a hundred years ago. The inhabitants gave us several proofs of their disposition to hostilities as well as thieving, so that we were obliged to leave them some bloody marks of the efficacy of our fire-arms. Having staid here a few days we set sail, and after a quick passage, landed at *Teokea*, in lat. 14'. We met with some hostilities from the people here, but contented ourselves with inspiring them with terror, by firing our cannons over their

1774.
April.

their heads. We afterwards discovered several small islands, and at length, on the 22d of April, came to anchor for the second and last time off *Otabeite*, where we remained till the fourteenth of May. Various circumstances contributed to render our abode here more delightful than before. We now procured many more interesting informations touching this country and people, than were known before. On the 2d of June we were informed by some of the inhabitants, that two ships had landed at *Huabeine* or *Ovabeine*, one of which was larger than ours. By subsequent accounts from Spain we know, that this ship was from the Spanish settlements in America; and that the year before, during our stay at *Otabeite*, some of the crew belonging to a Spanish ship had been left there, one of whom had actually hid himself in a crowd of people, on being, though dressed in the Indian fashion, taken by an English sailor for a European, and accordingly accosted by him in the French language. This, with several other circumstances, makes it highly probable, that the Spanish ships were sent both years to be spies upon us, and to make reprisals upon us in return for our visits in a part of the world of which they are so extremely jealous, and of which they look upon themselves as the sole proprietors; especially considering that previously to this they have, merely on account of their carrying on an illicit commerce, punished many Englishmen, by condemning them to hard labour in their mines. (See the Gottingen Magazine for 1780, No. I. p. 75.)

After we quitted *Otabeite* we paid a visit to *Huabeine* and *Ulitea*, likewise for the second and last time; leaving on the latter island a sensible youth, who about eight months

months before had had the courage to come on board of us. His name was OEDIDE, though otherwise called MAHEINE.

1774.
June.

On the 4th of June we sailed from *Ulitea*, and on the 6th passed by *Hove's* island. On the 16th we discovered *Palmerstone's* island, and on the 20th *Savage* island, so called from our being received by the savages there in a very hostile manner. They hit me on the arm with a large stone, and threw a javelin among us. For which reason we did not stay to anchor here, but went on to *Namocka*, or *New Rotterdam*, one of the friendly isles above-mentioned. In the same vicinity we saw several islands, besides those discovered by TASMAN, and upon one of them there appeared a volcano. On the 2d of July we descried a small inhabited island, which we called *Turtle Island*, and the next day made a hasty landing there. On the 16th we came to the islands discovered by QUIROS, which M. BOUGAINVILLE investigated more narrowly, calling them the *Cyclades*; but Captain Cook, who now discovered a greater number of them, gave to the whole of this *Archipelago* the name of the *New Hebrides*. Off one of these, to which we gave the name of *Mallicola*, we cast anchor on the 22d of July. Here we found a diminutive race of people, with a language peculiar to themselves, and poisoned weapons. They received us in a friendly manner, notwithstanding which there happened a skirmish between us; however, after staying there a couple of days, we parted friends.

On the 3d of August we anchored for a few hours before *Irromanga*, a newly discovered island, the inhabitants of which offered to detain our captain and boat, an attempt which many of them paid for with their lives, although
but

1774.
August.

but two of our people were wounded. On the 4th we anchored before the island of *Tanna*, in 19 deg. 30 min. S. lat. Close by the harbour there was a volcano, which showered ashes upon us every day. The smoke, flame, and loud thunder proceeding from this mountain, afforded a beautiful and sublime spectacle. The inhabitants spoke a peculiar language, of which we had not the least knowledge; and shewed us much friendship, though not without committing some hostilities, which drove us to the disagreeable necessity of staining this otherwise hospitable shore, with the blood of some of the inhabitants. On the 20th we steered again for the northern isles of this Archipelago, but at length quitted them entirely, after having spent in the investigation of them forty-six days; a period of time, in which we alternately experienced pleasure, disgust, and danger. More than once we were exposed to the poisoned weapons of the natives, from the slightest wound arising from which, we had every reason to dread as painful and terrible a death, accompanied with madness, as happened to some of Captain *Carteret's* crew, when they were wounded on the coast of *New Guinea*. At one time our ship had run aground; at another she was in danger of dashing against the rocks; and at another time, viz. on the 1st of August, of being consumed by fire in the open sea; when it would have been our wretched fate, either to be blown up in the air, or to have sought for death in the briny ocean.

On the 4th of September, after three days sail, we discovered the largest island, next to *New Zealand*, in the whole Pacific Ocean, which by Captain Cook was called *New Caledonia*, and seemed with respect to its soil and vegetables

1774.
September.

getables to resemble *New Holland*. The inhabitants were civil and hospitable, but poor, and spoke a language peculiar to themselves. At this place, by great good fortune, I avoided eating the liver of a poisonous fish, in company with the captain and Messrs. *Forster*, who were extremely ill for some days afterwards. On the 15th, for want of wind, we were near being driven on the rocks; and on the 28th at night were in the most dangerous situation, being furrounded by a coral reef. That evening, when I went to bed, there was the greatest probability that I should never wake again, but at my very last gasp: I however had the good fortune to go to sleep directly, and slept very sound, and the next morning to find that I had escaped the most imminent danger that could well be imagined.

On the 10th of October we saw *Norfolk* island, in 29 deg. 2 min. S. lat. the first discovery the English made beyond the tropics. We landed upon it, and found it uninhabited. On the 18th we came for the third time to anchor in *Queen Charlotte's Sound* in New Zealand.

S E C T. V.

Voyage from New Zealand to Terra del Fuego, and from thence farther on towards the South Pole.

1774.
December.

ON the 10th of November we sailed from New Zealand. Our ship was now found to have sprung a leak, but not of any consequence. In the space of six weeks, we had sailed over the whole ocean between *New Zealand* and the southernmost part of *America*; and on the 20th of December anchored to the south of *Terra del Fuego*, where we saw the most wretched race of men in the world. On the 29th we passed *Cape Horn*, and on the 31st, or New-year's eve, we anchored off a little island near *Staatenland*, in the straits of *Le Maire*; here we had an agreeable amusement in hunting an innumerable quantity of sealions, seals, and sea-fowls.

On the 23d of January, 1775, we sailed to the south-east, and on the 14th discovered the island of *South Georgia*, in lat. 54 deg. 38 min. Here we landed in all speed, and though it was now the summer season, we found the whole country covered with an eternal snow, excepting some of its coasts, on which there grew only one single species of grass, and a sort of *sanguisorba*. This horrid country, however, afforded

1775.
January.

afforded us some fresh provisions, viz. the flesh of the sea-lion and seal; a kind of food that we had some time before learnt to put up with. We afterwards found one after another, several small islands and rocks; on one of which, in consequence of a fog arising, we very narrowly escaped being shipwrecked; an accident which, in the circumstances we were in, would inevitably have put an end to our voyage and discoveries, together with our lives.

On the 28th of January, in lat. 60, the ship could make no way on account of the ice. On the 31st we found ourselves in a fog, and very near a high land, covered every where with an eternal snow; but the approach of winter and other circumstances, occasioned us to give over all farther investigation of this place. This furthest point of land that we could see, we called the southern *Thule*, as being the most distant land seen in this hemisphere.

S E C T. VI.

Return to the Cape of Good Hope.

1775.
March.

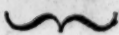
AT length we quite turned our backs upon these cold latitudes, when the daily increasing warmth, and our approach to the north, to the civilized world, to our friends and our home, contributed to enliven us with the hopes of a quick and fortunate conclusion to the whole voyage, and the many disagreeable circumstances attending it. But that we now had many more hardships to undergo, than BYRON, WALLIS, and COOK had suffered in their former voyages round the earth, many of our officers, as well as of the crew, who had been on one or more of those voyages, attested. The purposes intended to be answered by our voyage, particularly that of approaching as near as we could to the south pole, required other attempts to be made, other dangers to be undergone: the remainder of the voyage consequently, was almost a concatenation of dangers and hardships.

On the 17th of March we saw land, viz. the coast of *Africa*. The reader may easily imagine, how delightful a sight this was to us. In the mean while, entirely ignorant of the state of affairs in Europe, we could not, when once in sight
of

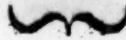
of the harbour itself, assure ourselves that we should not be picked up by some unknown enemy, who might carry us out as prisoners, perhaps to the most distant part of the East-Indies. The next day, however, we overtook a Dutch vessel, and received from her the joyful news of a general peace. Before night we saw several sails more, which seemed to be steering by the Cape, and making as fast as possible for Europe; and with no small pleasure, particularly on my part, we saw the Swedish flag flying upon two of them. The ocean had hitherto, during our voyage, been really too lonesome and desolate a theatre to us; and it would be necessary to be as weary of the uniformity of it, as we were, in order to enjoy a sight upon it, which at any other time would have been of no consequence. Neither is it any wonder, that in so long a space of time, we came to be in some measure weary of each others company; when, for instance, those who were used to entertain the company with tales and anecdotes, were obliged to have recourse two or three times to the same stories, in order to furnish their quota in conversation.

The following morning we overtook an English ship called the *True Briton*, commanded by Captain BROADLY, who sent us some old news-papers. Full of love for my native country, I first and foremost, with the greatest eagerness, ran over all the articles in them that concerned Sweden; but found only a couple of lines, which gave me to understand that a great revolution had taken place there, but did not say when or how. This gave rise to divers conjectures amongst us, and was to me in particular an affecting subject to ruminate upon; but from what the English told

1775.
March.



1775.
March.

 told me, as well as from what my own ideas suggested to me, I was convinced, that the commotions in the Swedish government were then almost at such a height, as scarcely to be capable of growing worse, and that thus this news in all probability argued something better. This consideration was not without its effect in comforting me, till time shewed how extremely right we had been in our conjectures.

At length on the Wednesday following, being the 22d of March, 1775, after a voyage of sixty thousand miles, and an absence of two years and a quarter from the Christian and civilized part of the world, we came again to anchor in *Table-bay*. Those who before us had sailed round the globe always went to the westward, and thus lost a day in their reckoning. But, as we made the same voyage towards the east, and thus continually anticipated the rising of the sun, we were consequently the first, and, indeed, only navigators, who had gained a day, or found a supernumerary day on their journals. Consequently, according to the Dutch almanacks at the Cape, it was on Tuesday, or the 21st of March, that we landed there; so that, directly contrary to every known and usual mode of expression, we actually had two Tuesdays in one week.

It was now a thing which we earnestly wished for, as well as of the greatest consequence to us, to enter the harbour, as several of our crew were attacked with the scurvy. Our unparalleled preservatives of four-croût and wort, had, it must be owned, pretty well kept us from the ravages of this otherwise destructive disorder, so that we lost only one of our crew by sickness (an old complaint of the lungs) since we left the Cape; but our blood and
humours

humours were, as well as our malt, and the greatest part of our provisions, in consequence of the length of the voyage, spoiled and corrupted. Our bread was, and had been for a long time, both musty and mouldy; and at the same time swarming with two different sorts of little brown grubs (the *curculio granarius*, or weevil, and the *dermestes paniceus*) which either in that state or in that of their *larvas*, or maggots, had nestled themselves into every bit of bread that we had, so that we could not possibly avoid eating them; and they frequently discovered themselves to us, the former by a bitter, the latter by a disagreeable cold taste in the mouth. Nay, their larvas, or maggots, were found in such quantities in the peas-soup, as if they had been strewed over our plates on purpose, so that we could not avoid swallowing some of them in every spoonful we took. The peas used for this purpose, had been ground a little in England, that they might boil the easier, but had by this very means afforded an easier passage to these disgusting insects.

What was of still more consequence, was, that we had only a quantity of bread, bad as it was, sufficient for a few days on board; and as for the brandy, an article of great importance to the crew, it was, if I remember right, quite gone the day before we arrived in the harbour. Pepper, vinegar, coffee and sugar, by the help of which, taking them in their turns, the salt provision would have been less hurtful to us, we had for a long time been entirely without. Our salt meat, now almost three years old, having been kept on board during the whole of this period, was the more dried and shrunk up, as the salt had had so much
the

1775.
March.

1775.
March.

the longer time to absorb to itself and dry up all the moisture and juices. These, with several other difficulties, occasioned the joy we felt at having got into the harbour, where we should be able in many respects to lead, as it were, a new life, to be as unbounded as it was universal. With pleasure, likewise, and longing desire, we received our letters from Europe, but not without a very natural anxiety and fear, lest we should find in them accounts of the loss of our dearest friends and acquaintance. After about five weeks stay at the Cape, the Resolution sailed for England, attended with my most hearty good wishes. The civilities I had received from almost every body on board this ship, the dangers I had undergone in it, and the friendships, which during that long space of time I had had an opportunity of making, gave me, it must be owned, sufficient cause. I, for my part, in pursuance of the resolution I had previously made, staid behind in Africa, in order to continue my researches in this country, of which I therefore now resume the relation.

C H A P. IV.

JOURNEY FROM CAPE TOWN TO THE COUNTRY OF THE
CAFFRES.

S E C T. I.

Residence at Cape Town previous to the Author's African Expedition.

MY desires and thoughts continually ran upon making a journey into the internal parts of this country, and visiting the different nations of it. For the present, however, I was obliged to stay in the town, and wait for the appearance of spring or the fine season.

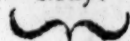
1775.
May.

I have observed before, that the *quaade mousson*, or winter, is reckoned to last from the 14th of May to the same day in August; and that during that time, ships seldom venture to run into *Table-bay*. A Dutch vessel, which nevertheless still staid here on some particular business, and on the night succeeding the 14th day had thrown out all

VOL. I.

P

her

1775.
May.

her anchors on account of the violence of the north-west wind, was very near being driven on the rocky ground that lies by the side of the fort. The day after this, or the 15th, the bay was so much agitated by the storm, that no boat or sloop could go to or from the above-mentioned ship. The next evening the wind increased as the night came on, and the poor seamen had reason to fear that every minute would be their last. The extreme darkness of the night, contributed not a little to make the danger, and even death itself more terrible. I lived in the upper story of a stone house towards the higher part of the town, where the hurricane shook the windows, roof, and, I had almost said, the whole house. This my situation, as well as the more dangerous one of the Dutch ship, awakened in me a lively remembrance of the Antarctic cold, and the various storms I had experienced; and made me more thoroughly sensible of the comforts of a good warm bed-chamber upon terra firma, but at the same time excited in me so much the greater compassion for the vessel in distress. Contrary to all expectation however, its anchor and tackling were proof that night against the storm; and the next day's calm, at the same time that it put the ship out of danger, diffused satisfaction over the countenances of every one. Another event of this kind, though it happened during my absence, while I was gone on my voyage to the South Sea, deserves however to be recorded in this place, more especially as it is a farther proof of the unsafeness of this road in winter. Here follows the account of it, as I had it confirmed to me by several eye-witnesses.

The

1775.
May.

The ship *Jong Thomas*, which happened to stay in Table-bay till the boisterous season had commenced, was driven on shore by a storm near the land on the side of *Zout Rivier*, not far to the northward of the fort. Early in the morning, as soon as this happened, orders were issued by government, that no one should, on pain of death, presume to approach, even from afar, this unlucky shore; where, to give weight and authority to this resolution of theirs, they had with equal readiness erected gibbets, and at the same time posted troops all over the neighbourhood; but neither these, nor any other measures taken by them, were in any way conducive to the saving of the crew, being merely calculated to prevent such goods and merchandize being stolen as might chance to be thrown up in the wreck. The ship, however, was wrecked very near the shore; so that the crew's distress and calls for assistance, were heard very distinctly; but the swell of the sea, which with the greatest violence washed over the ship and broke against the strand, made it impossible for them to save themselves in boats, and highly dangerous to attempt it by swimming. Some of those who ventured to swim to shore, were thrown against the rocks and dashed to pieces; others, as soon as they had arrived at the shore were carried back again by another wave and drowned. One of the keepers of the company's menagerie, who before break of day, ere the prohibition was made public, had rode out to carry his son (a corporal in the army) his breakfast, came by that means to be a spectator of these poor people's distress; at the sight of which he was touched with compassion of so noble a kind, and at the same time so opera-

1775.
May.

tive, that seating himself firm on his spirited horse, he swam him over to the ship; encouraged some of them severally to lay hold of the end of a rope, which he threw out to them for that purpose, and others to fasten themselves to the horse's tail; then turned about, and carried them safe on shore. This animal's natural aptness for swimming, the great size of his body, the firmness and strength of his limbs, prevented him from being easily overpowered by the swell of the sea.

But unfortunately this generous and active veteran himself became a victim to death. Fourteen young persons he had actually saved; and while endeavouring to preserve more than it was possible for him to do in so short a time, he and his horse were both drowned. The occasion of this was as follows; after the seventh turn, having staid a little longer than usual to rest himself, the poor wretches on board were afraid that he did not intend to return; for this reason being impatient, they redoubled their prayers and cries for assistance; upon which, his tenderest feeling being wrought upon, he again hastened to their relief ere his horse was sufficiently rested. The poor animal, almost spent, now sunk the sooner under his burden, inasmuch as too many sought to be saved at one time; and one of them, as it was thought, happened unluckily to catch hold of the horse's bridle, and by that means drew its head under water. This bold and enterprising philanthropist commands our esteem and admiration the more, as he had put himself into this danger for the relief of others, without himself being able to swim. I have therefore considered it as my peculiar duty, as well as a pleasure, to preserve

preserve his name, which was VOLTEMAD, together with this gallant exploit of his in these pages. Inspired with similar sentiments, the East-India directors in Holland, on receiving intelligence of this affair, raised a monument to his memory, in a manner worthy of themselves and him, by calling one of their new-built ships after his name, and ordering the whole story to be painted on the stern. These orders were accompanied with letters to the regency at the Cape, the contents of which were as follows: *That in case VOLTEMAD had left any issue in the military or civil department, they should take care to provide for them, and make their fortune as speedily and effectually as possible.* But unfortunately, in the southern hemisphere they had not all the same grateful sentiments. The young corporal VOLTEMAD, who had been an eye-witness to his father's having offered himself up in the service of the company and of mankind, was refused his father's place, though the appointment to it could scarcely be considered as any promotion. From mere chagrin, therefore, he had already quitted that ungrateful country, and was gone to *Batavia*, where he died before the news of so great and unexpected a recommendation could reach him. There were several inhabitants of the Cape, who, while they, with a laudable emotion, lamented the unhappy fate of VOLTEMAD and his son, affirmed, that a small line might, by some good swimmer, or by *Voltemad* himself, have been handed from the strand to the ship; by means of which one or more stout ropes might have been stretched out between these latter, for the purpose of saving the crew. It was likewise thought, that the issuing of that
fevere

1775.
May.

1775.
May.

severe prohibition, and the appointment of the guard of foldiers, were not of such use to the company as they were imagined to be; as, not to mention other things, even so heavy a commodity as iron was stolen away from the wreck; which, after the storm had abated, and the sea, that had risen considerably, had retired again, as good as lay upon dry land.

Under the pretence of preventing the people belonging to the ship from being plundered, they were directly put under a guard upon the spot from that time till the evening; and that without their having taken any refreshment, although they were wet and hungry, and wearied out with the labour of the preceding night. For several days after this they were seen wandering up and down the streets, begging clothes and victuals. One of these, indeed, is reported to have met with peculiarly rough treatment. This was a sailor, who, in order the better to swim for his life, went off from the wreck almost naked, and having got safe on shore with his chest, opened it, in order to take out a waistcoat to cover his nakedness; he was, however, not only hindered in so doing by a young chit of an officer, but was obliged to put up with a few strokes of a cane into the bargain; being told at the same time, that he was liable to be hanged without delay on one of the newly-erected gibbets; as, directly contrary to the express prohibition of government, he had presumed to meddle with goods saved from the wreck. The sailor excused himself with saying, that it was impossible for him not to be ignorant of the prohibition, and that he could clearly prove himself to be the right owner of the chest by the key of it (which, in
the

the sailor's fashion, was fastened to his belt,) as well as by a psalm-book, wherein his name was written, and which lay in that same chest. Notwithstanding all this, it was with great difficulty that he saved his neck from the gallows. He was forced, however, naked and wet as he was, to wait in the fields till the evening, with no other covering than the sky. Shivering with cold, he at length, through repeated entreaties, got permission to look after his chest, and take what he wanted out of it, but now found it broke open and plundered. To conclude, when they had taken him to the town, and there left him near the gates naked and bare, as above described, he had, however, the good fortune to meet with a tender-hearted citizen, who immediately, without the least hesitation, gave him the coat off his own back, and took him to his own house.

1773.
May.

This anecdote of the sailor I had from one single person only; but though that person's character for veracity was unimpeached, yet, for the honour of our species, I could heartily wish, that my informer might be found to have over-charged his colours in the black painting he has made of this transaction! On the contrary, rather may the same compassionate law in favour of those who have the misfortune to suffer shipwreck, take place in Europe and its colonies as it does in China! on the coast of which kingdom, all such as are unfortunate enough to be stranded, whether natives or strangers from the most distant country, find not only perfect security for their persons and effects, but are likewise maintained and found in every thing till they get to their own home, whither they

1775.
May.

they are sent at free cost. Some of the crew of the *Frederic Adolphus*, a Swedish vessel, shipwrecked on the *Plata* bank, September the 3d, 1761, who landed in their boats before the Chinese town *Katsie*, experienced in its fullest extent the efficacy of an establishment that does so much honour to mankind. Mr. MAULE, the supercargo, who likewise was one of the number, has assured me, that they were all received with the greatest humanity, maintained at the emperor's expence, and conveyed in one of the larger kind of Chinese vessels to the other Europeans at Canton.

As in the preceding pages I have made mention of the stormy winters at the Cape, it may not be improper to give here a summary abstract of my meteorological observations for the months of May, June, and July. With regard to the temperature of the air I must previously remind the reader, that I made use of a FAHRENHEIT's thermometer, which was given me by Dr. FORSTER at our parting; and that the observations taken with it were made in the shade, in the open air, between eight and nine o'clock in the morning, when the temperature of the air was most like that of the night. I must farther remark, that the winters at the Cape are in general by no means severe, and that this winter was reckoned one of the mildest.

During the first half of May the thermometer kept fluctuating between 53 and 63 degrees; and during the latter half, between 50 and 58, excepting on the 27th of this month, when it was at the lowest, or 49 $\frac{1}{2}$, although the day was clear and the sun shone. The rainy days in this month were the 11th, 12th, 15th, 16th, 30th; and
among

among these the three first named were the worst, and accompanied with tempestuous north-west winds; so that when I passed Zout Rivier on the 11th, the water was no higher than my horse's knees; but when I repassed it on the 15th, the water had risen so high, in consequence of the rain and tide, as to reach up to my saddle.

1775.
March.

In the month of June the thermometer was between 54 and 60. There was a fall either of rain or snow on the 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, 14th, 27th, and so on to the 31st inclusively. Besides these, there were a few other cloudy days, attended with a high wind; but the remainder resembled our fine summer days in Sweden. On the 3d, it rained very violently, when it happened that a quantity of water which, in the preceding days, had been collected on the mountain, burst its way down to the town, and filled the canals there, at the same time overflowing some of the streets; so that for several minutes, it rose to the height of two or three feet against the houses. It likewise washed away a small wall belonging to a stone house, and carried it under the building, at the same time rushing into divers cellars.

In July, by reason of some intervening affairs that hindered me, I observed the state of the weather only till the 19th; during that time, the thermometer kept between 54 and 59 degrees. The rainy days were the 6th, 7th, 8th, 11th, 12th; clouds without rain on the 3d, 9th, 10th, 13th, and 14th.

S E C T. II.

*Preparations for the African Expedition.*1775.
March.

DURING the major part of the winter months I lived in the town itself, and at times made preparations for my journey in several ways, among which might be reckoned my practising physic and surgery; as what I acquired by these means, was a great help towards equipping me out in the expensive manner my undertaking required. My travelling purse was farther fortified by a lucky speculation in commerce, and likewise with sixty ducats (for which sum I had a right to draw a bill for acceptance) for my English translation of our able Swedish physician VAN ROSENTEIN'S *Treatise on the Diseases of Children*. This work I undertook and finished in the last year of our cruising in the South Sea, mostly in the rougher climates, as I at that time was the least taken up with business of any other kind, except that of writing; though even in this case I was not unfrequently obliged, on account of the stormy weather, to cling with my legs round the foot of the table, and hold myself fast with one hand, in order to be able to write

write with the other. I take this opportunity of acknowledging my obligations to Messrs. FORSTER for various alterations they were so kind as to bestow on the translation here alluded to, which my slender knowledge of the English tongue made extremely necessary; as likewise for their taking care of the impression of it at London in the year 1776.

1775.
March.

With a view of rendering my intended journey more agreeable and convenient, I made every possible enquiry where I could hear any thing concerning it; but instead of gaining any useful intelligence, I was left more in the dark than I was before, as most of the information I could collect was confused and perplexed; the various accounts I heard, being often contradictory to each other, but still more frequently clashing with probability itself. I was chiefly dissuaded from the journey, as being a very absurd and dangerous undertaking, especially as, being a stranger, as yet unacquainted with Africa, and far from rich, I must necessarily subject myself to every kind of inconvenience; but since I saw nothing impossible in the affair, at least not in making the experiment, I pursued my design. With this view I formed an acquaintance and even friendship with Mr. DANIEL FERDINAND IMMELMAN, a young African, who before this had, merely for the sake of pleasure, made a little trip into the country, to which he was induced by the following spirited reflection: that it was very little either to his honour or to that of the other African colonists, that they had neglected investigating their own country, so that they would soon be obliged to apply to

1775.
March.

me and other strangers, for intelligence concerning themselves and the very place of their residence. For his own part, he was easily persuaded to enter into all my designs and favour me with his company; but we were obliged to lay our heads together and stand firm by each other, in order to get the permission of his relations. His mother, a sensible European lady, together with her lovely daughter, at length gave their consent, and principally on this account, that young *Immelman* had very weak lungs, and the best remedy for him would be to take a long journey on horseback, especially as he had the advantage of being accompanied by a physician: and on the other hand, he had reason to fear a more certain and horrid death in consequence of the complaint he laboured under, than any thing that might be apprehended from the attacks of the roving Hottentots or of the wild beasts up the country. His father, an old experienced soldier, who had served both in Europe and the East-Indies, and was then lieutenant in the garrison at the Cape, at length gave his consent on the principle, that a lad should never be shy or backward, where there was any danger. For this purpose Mr. *Immelman* provided himself with a good easy nag, for which he gave fifty rix-dollars; I had already bought an ordinary galloway for thirty-four, and a new baggage-waggon, about the size of the ammunition-waggons in Sweden, but covered over with a tilt made of sail-cloth, and finished in the same manner as those in which the peasants usually travel in this colony. The price of it was likewise what was usually given for these carriages, that is, about

two

1775.
March.

two hundred rixdollars, reckoning seventy-four for the wood-work, and eighty for the iron-work; the yoke, the hind chains, and those for the traces, the sail-cloth covering, and a box for the coom, made up the rest of the sum. To draw a waggon of this kind there are usually required five pair of oxen, which I therefore bargained for at eight rixdollars a head. I further took with me medicines of several sorts, as well for our own use, as for that of the peasants, to whom they might be of great service, and procure us a better reception. I likewise provided myself with a small stock of glass beads, brass tinder-boxes, steels for striking fire with, and knives, together with some tobacco; all these were commodities peculiarly acceptable to the Hottentots. We likewise took with us an oaken cask, made for the purpose of keeping serpents and other animals in brandy; also several reams of paper for drying plants, with leads and needles for insects, and at the same time some necessary changes of apparel. Neither did we forget to take with us plenty of tea, coffee, chocolate, and sugar, partly for our own use, and partly to insinuate ourselves into the good graces of the yeomen, who, by reason of the great distance they are at from the Cape, are often without these necessaries. I was told indeed, that liquors would infallibly answer this purpose much better; but the room they took up, their weight, and the expence of them, prevented me from taking any with me. We were well provided with needles of several sorts, as by means of these, and a few good words, we should be enabled to gain the good graces of the farmer's daughters, as well as their assistance in collecting insects.

I bought

1775.
March.



I bought too thirty odd pounds of gunpowder, with a small quantity of which we filled several horns, which we kept near at hand; the remainder we emptied into a leathern bag, and locked it up in my chest, by way of keeping it out of the way of the lighted pipes of the Hottentots. We took with us shot of different sizes, about seventy pound in weight, with a tolerable stock of balls, lead, and moulds for casting. It is certain, that the expence and quantity of this ammunition, was much more than we were advised to take with us, or than I myself thought necessary. On our return to the Cape, however, after an eight month's journey, it was almost all used. I would therefore advise every body, who may hereafter undertake an expedition of this kind, to stock themselves well with powder and shot. Every shot does not take place, and not a little is expended in the shooting of small birds; some too must be spent in shooting at marks. Besides, it may happen, as it did to me and my party, that for several weeks together, one may have little else to live upon than what falls before one's gun; not to mention, that prudence requires one to be prepared with ammunition against the hostile attacks of the Boshies-men and Caffres.

As the colonists here are enjoined by the laws to seize and bring to the Cape all such as travel about the country without being able to shew a permission in writing for that purpose, I therefore solicited and obtained the governor's pass, requiring that I should pass every where free and unmolested; and at the same time that the inhabitants should assist me as far as lay in their power, on receiving
a rea-

a reasonable compensation. In another letter, the people belonging to the warm baths in *Hottentots Holland* were enjoined to find me in lodging; for this remedy I was resolved to try against the rheumatic pains I experienced in consequence of the cold, to which I had been exposed in the Antarctic circle.

1775.
March.

SECT.

S E C T. III.

Journey from the Cape to the Warm Bath.

1775.
July.

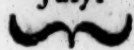
ON the morning of the 25th of July I rode from the Cape. My waggon was driven by the boor, who sold me the five pair of oxen before-mentioned. But this I was not to have till I got to this same man's farm near *Bott-Rivier*, which is in the way to the warm bath, whither I was going. There are no houses of entertainment established in the inland part of this country; so that every one is obliged to travel with their own horses and carriages, as well as their own provision. Our road lay through the low country over dry sand and heaths. In the middle, or the warm part of the day, like other travellers in this country, we let our oxen go to water and look out for pasturage. These animals are easily satisfied with the poor nourishment of the dry shrubs and grass, which are most common about the Cape, but the horses are under a greater difficulty to find provision sufficiently fine and nourishing. It is chiefly for this reason, that in Africa most of the beasts of burden they use are oxen; and it is, perhaps, from the same cause, that the horses here are seemingly less strong and hardy than they are in Europe.

As

As soon as the cool of the evening came on, we continued our journey over *Eerste Rivier* to the foot of a high mountain, called *Hottentot Holland's Kloof*. The environs here were higher and less parched up than in the former part of our journey, and were besides adorned with several pleasant farms. It was already night, and as dark as pitch, when we alighted; we made a little fire, by which, after we had finished a moderate supper, we went to sleep. All the conveniences I had for sleeping were at present, as well as during the major part of my journey, reduced to the bare ground for a bed, a saddle for my pillow, and a great coat to cover me from the cold of the night; for a place to lie in we looked out for the side of some bush, which seemed most likely to shelter us from the south-east, or any other wind that might chance to blow at that time. When it rained, we lay in the tilt-waggon itself. Here, on account of our baggage, we were still worse off. The best place I could find for myself was my chest, though even that had a round top; Mr. IMMELMAN, being slender and less than me, was able, though not without great difficulty, to squeeze himself in between my chest and the body of the waggon, where he lay on several bundles of paper: he had, however, no reason to boast of a much easier bed. Sometimes we made our bed under the waggon, where, being under cover, we were somewhat sheltered indeed from the rain and the dew; but on the other hand, had rather too near, and not quite so agreeable neighbours in our oxen, which were tied up to the wheels and poles, and also to the rails of the waggon, and were so obstreperous, that we could only venture to creep among the gentlest of

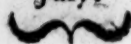
1775:
July.

1775.
July.



them. These companions of ours were moreover very restless, when any wild beasts were near the spot. Again, when we had an opportunity of taking a night's lodging at a peasant's house, we were for the most part rather worse lodged. In most places the house consisted of two rooms only, with the floor of earth or loam. The interior one of these was used for a bed-chamber for the boor himself, with his wife and children. The outer one composed the kitchen, in a corner of which they spread a mat for us on the floor; and in this generally consisted all the conveniencies the good folks could afford us. As for the rest we were obliged to make our beds of our saddles and great coats, together with a coverlet we brought with us. The Hottentots of either sex, young and old, who were in the boor's service, always chose to sleep in the chimney. This mostly took up a whole gabel of the house, and at the same time had no other hearth than the floor, on which consequently we all lay pigging together. An host of fleas and other inconveniencies, to which we were by this means subjected, made us frequently rather chuse to sleep in the open air; in case the coldness of the air, high winds and rainy weather, did not make it more disagreeable to us. I thought the best way of furnishing my readers with a general idea of the manner in which we were obliged to pass most of our nights during our expedition, would be to give them an account of my first night's lodging.

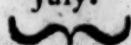
The next day being the 26th, we got up by day-break, in order to take our journey over *Hottentots Holland's Mountain*, in the cool of the morning. The way up it was very steep, stony, winding, and, in other respects, very

1775.
July.


inconvenient. Directly to the right of the road there was a perpendicular precipice, down which, it is said, that waggons and cattle together have sometimes the misfortune to fall headlong, and are dashed to pieces. It is said too, that in order to drive up this and other mountains of the kind, even with the strongest team of oxen, a man must not only have the knack, as it is called, and a perfect government of the beasts, but must also at the same time make use of a whip like that of the African waggoners. These whips are fifteen feet long, with a thong somewhat longer, and a lash three feet in length, made of stout white leather. This (in a certain sense) most powerful instrument in getting the waggon forward, the driver holds with both hands, and, sitting on the seat of the carriage, can reach the fifth pair with it, and at the same time smack his whip, when necessary, and distribute his cuts and lashes among the oxen without intermission, never failing to touch them on the very spot he wishes, so that the very hairs come away with the whip. By this means he possesses such an ascendancy over them, as to oblige them to join their strength all at once, and pull the waggon out of deep pits, or lift it over large stones and precipices that lie in the road. But it requires a great nicety of attention, not to drive them too far at once, nor to rest them too long at a time; as in the former case they grow faint, weary, and, in consequence of this, restive; and in the latter case, they lose the spirit to which they have been previously wrought up, and which is necessary for the getting them on; and for want of which it often happens, that the waggon cannot be got from the spot. On going up the steeper hills,

R. 2

there-

1775.
July.

therefore, the drivers are wont to let them breathe a little every half minute, minute, or two minutes, as occasion requires: on the other hand, in descending, even when the road is not very steep, particularly with a load, it is to be feared, lest the waggon should get down before the oxen, or tumble upon them, as only the hindmost pair is put into the shafts, and are not able to hold back as much as is necessary: the waggon must therefore be *locked*, as they term it; this consists in winding a chain that is fastened to the fore part of the waggon, one or more times round some of the fellies of the hind wheel, and then, with a hook that hangs to the other end of the chain, hooking it into one of the links. Down still steeper hills, as for instance, such as that we were now ascending, both the hind wheels are locked, and sometimes one of the fore wheels into the bargain, especially in rainy weather, when it is slippery. In default of a drag-chain, the wheel is lashed fast to the seat of the waggon, and in this manner the waggon is dragged down the hill; but in order that the lowest fellies of the wheel that is to be locked may not be worn, together with the iron-work round it, a kind of fledge carriage, hollowed out in the inside, and called a *lockshoe*, is fitted to it. This is a foot and a half in length, and made with hard wood; underneath it is generally shod with iron, and nearest resembles a trough, which is open behind for the wheel to run into. It is two or three inches deep in order to support the wheel with its edges, and hinder it from slipping out; in the fore part of it there is a stout strap, with which it is fastened or strung upon the back chain. I am not ignorant, that in the north we use
ice-

ice-hooks, or safety-hooks, to our sledge carriages; but, at least, as far I know of, we have no drag-chains to our wag-gons. This would be highly necessary in certain places, and particularly in the spring, and might be easily made. Besides obviating the danger of the cattle running away with the team, this machine likewise prevents their being bruised in any other ways, or hurt by holding back, when they are going down hill. Under the general denomination of *mountain*, particularly about this spot, I mean, not only high rocky hills, but likewise comprehend under this name all the more considerable eminences (more or less rock) as well as the ridges composed of them.

1775.
July.

But to return to the *Hottentots Holland's Mountain*, as it is called. It was as yet very bare of plants. However, I had the pleasure of finding a superb *protea* in full bloom. It was this that I have described and given a drawing of in the Swedish Philosophical Transactions for 1777, page 53, under the name of *Gustavus's Scepter*. *Flora*, by consecrating this beautiful species to so glorious and august a name, perpetuates the memory of her improvement and augmentation (so honourable for our northern climate) by means of the protection, which the science of botany has enjoyed under the great kings of the GUSTAVIAN race; and at the same time implies a wish, that under our most gracious king GUSTAVUS III. the Scepter may still continue to flourish.

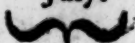
This *protea* is a shrub from two to four feet in height, which sometimes grows up undivided as straight as a rod, and at other times throws out two or three spiral branches, terminating in tufts of flowers of a silver colour. What is
most

1775.
July.

most remarkable in this plant is, its producing two sorts of leaves totally different from each other, viz. while the upper ones on the stalk are from one to two inches long only, wedge-shaped and undivided, the lower ones are several inches long, and divided into many parts in the form of branches.

The road on the north side of *Hottentots Holland's Mountain* was not near so steep, yet we were obliged at intervals to lock one of the wheels. All this part of the country, that lies on this or the north side of the above-mentioned mountain, is by the inhabitants commonly called *Agter de Berg*, or *Over de Berg*. By noon we came to *Palmite Rivier*, where it runs through a beautiful little plain. Here, according to our usual custom, we baited during the heat of the day. As not a single bridge is to be found over any stream or river in all Africa, and ferry-boats are established only at two places, we were obliged to cross over at this part in water four feet in depth, which reached quite up to my saddle. Though the rivers in those places, where they cross the public roads, are generally not deep, yet this method of passing them is sometimes dangerous as well as tedious; for after one or more days rain, especially in winter, it often happens, that one is obliged to stay a week or a fortnight, and sometimes longer, before the water is fallen enough for one to venture to pass it; and that in places where, at other times, (particularly in summer) one may almost go over dry-shod; and though the water should afterwards fall in some measure, one cannot nevertheless venture with any safety to go over as usual, for fear that the flood should have formed some inequa-

inequalities there, or else have made the bed deeper by washing away the earth. Some more desperate and fool-hardy peasants, who are impatient at waiting so long for the falling of the water, or who have so small a stock of provision as not to be able to make any long stay, are venturesome enough to swim their waggons over, so that the water will rise above the middle of the body of the carriage: and though their wives, children, and the baggage they have with them, should undergo a good soufing, it makes no great difference to them. The slave, or the Hottentot, whom, as they do not make use of reins, they are unavoidably obliged to employ for the purpose of leading the foremost pair of oxen through the most dangerous places, must in such cases swim with them in his hand; and a lucky thing it is for the master, if the whim does not take them to follow the stream, or turn about, or play any other tricks. These animals, however, when they are well broke in, will at any time all stand still together on their driver's gently calling to them *Ho, Ha*; and so in like manner each ox in particular will pay attention, and go to the right or to the left, merely upon hearing its own name pronounced with a *Hote* or a *Haar* added to it; and with this amusing ox-language, and the names of the beasts brought in occasionally, not to mention the noisy cracks of the whip, the traveller must lay his account in being continually entertained, particularly in such parts of the road, in which this practice is more peculiarly necessary in order to get them on. Add to this, the nice attention requisite in order to make use of the whip not only frequently, but at proper times and seasons; and it follows, that the business of waggon-driving

1775.
July.

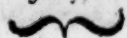
1775.
July.

driving in Africa, is as difficult and tiresome an occupation, as this mode of travelling is noisy, inconvenient, and dangerous.

Very late in the evening we arrived at our driver's farm, which was very pleasantly situated on the other side of *Bott Rivier*. This river was beset at small intervals with pretty high mountains, the peaks and ridges of which delightfully varied the scene. In the declivities of some of them caverns and grottos were seen, which certainly did not exist from the beginning, but were produced by the vicissitudes and changes to which all natural objects are subject. Even the hard and steep rocky precipices, which one would imagine to be doomed to everlasting nakedness, were, on their black walls, teeming with iron-ore, adorned with several climbing plants, the branches and tendrils of which they gratefully in return with their sharply-projecting angles, stretched out and supported. In the clefts of these declivities I observed the plants, which nature had produced on these elevated hot-beds, already in bloom, and which, in their pride, might bid defiance to all human approach. A few stones throw from this farm there was a mineral water of considerable strength, which nobody in this quarter had had the sense to make use of. The stones and rocks in several spots hereabouts contained a great deal of iron.

Along this river lay many peasants houses and farms, the produce of which consisted chiefly of sheep and corn. The wine that was made here was a four wash, which would not sell in the town without being first converted into vinegar and brandy. The peasants themselves, however,

ever, drank it greedily just as it was. The cause of the inferior quality of this wine, as well as of most of that made at *Agter de Berg*, proceeds from the greater coldness of the soil; which again depends on the distance of this country from the sea, and consequently from the fertilizing vapours of that element; but chiefly upon the elevation of this district above the sea's surface. After staying a day at this place, we made a trip to the warm baths. I left my waggon here till I should have occasion for it, and went on horseback, in company with another waggon that was going to the same place. In order to go by a nearer way, we did not take any beaten road, but made the best of our way forward over plains, hills, and dales. The whole of this extensive tract was, by reason of the defect of water, left uncultivated and uninhabited. A great number of deer and other game had taken refuge here. I now, for the first time, had the pleasure of seeing herds, consisting of the two largest sorts of *antilopes* or *gazells*, which are called by the Dutch *bartbeests* and *bunteboks*; the former name, which signifies *bart-beast*, was probably given to the former of these creatures on account of some resemblance they shewed in colour to the European harts; and the latter, which signifies *painted*, or rather *pied goats*, suits better with these latter animals, their orange-yellow or pale-brown posteriors being marked with a number of white spots and streaks. The *bartbeest* I have described in the Memoirs of the Swedish Academy of Sciences for 1779, page 151, by the name of *antilope dorcas*: it is likewise given here in Vol. II. plate I. fig. 1. being frequently mentioned in the course of the following pages. The *buntebock*, something less, but more corpulent in pro-

 1775.
July.


1775.
July.

portion than the *hartbeest*, is the *antilope scripta* of PALLAS, and the *guib* of BUFFON, page 305—327. plate XL. According to ADANSON, it is very common at Senegal. I will add, that the females of this species have no horns. The same day I likewise saw, for the first time, whole troops of wild *zebras*, called by the colonists *wilde paarden*, or wild horses. They were seen in large herds, and appeared very beautiful in their striped black and white livery. It is the skins of these that are generally sold at our furriers shops by the absurd name of *sea-horse* hides.

Ostriches, or the birds whose feathers our luxury brings from the remotest plains of Africa, I likewise saw to-day in their wild state, at the southernmost promontory of this quarter of the globe. I sometimes came within a couple of gunshots of some of them, inasmuch that I took it into my head to pursue them, but always without success. With their long legs and huge strides, they scoured away as fast again as the untutored horse and hunter could follow. They ran always with their wings extended, probably by way of preserving their balance; for they are not able in the least to raise their heavy bodies from the ground. I have since been told, that it is impossible for any man, even when mounted on the best hunter, to catch them at first setting off, but that in a few minutes they will bound out of sight. The hunter must, notwithstanding, keep on his course, but at times spare his horse, by keeping him from galloping too fast, till such time as he can see the ostrich again from the top of some hill; the bird in the mean time having run itself down, and afterwards growing somewhat cool, and consequently stiff in its joints, has much ado to escape; and
never

1775.
July.

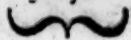
never fails, at least after the third course, either to be taken alive, or else to receive his death from the sportsman's gun. In the like manner I chased and shot at the antilopes before spoken of in vain; these animals having a peculiar custom of standing still at intervals during their flight, to stare at their pursuers a little, and wait for their coming up. This property, however, is not, as some imagine, either peculiar to the genus of antilopes, or common to all the species of it; for I have seen *buffaloes* and *wild asses* (*quaggas*) sometimes make a stand in the same manner: on the other hand, some of the smaller kinds of antilopes, as *steenboks*, *klip-springers*, *riet-reeboks*, and *boschboks*, run without stopping, till they are out of the hunter's sight. The Cape *elks* (*antilope oryx*) of which I have likewise given a description in the Swedish Transactions, are said, on account of the great demand there is for their flesh and hides, to be already extirpated from this part of the country; and as soon as any others come from the inner districts, they are shot directly, being in much greater request, as well as easier to hunt, than the *bartbeests*. Towards evening we came out upon a road, which carried us by two farms, and at last, about dusk, to the *warm bath*. Just before we got thither, we had left a road on the left hand, which, we were told, led to *Roodexand*, *Roggeveld*, *Bokveld*, and *Sneeberg*. The ground we had gone over that day, was reckoned four hours on horseback; and, as it appeared to me, was about four Swedish, or twenty-three English miles. We had now been above seven hours driving at an even pace over this piece of road. The way of measuring ground at the Cape, which is computed

1775.
July.

by time, cannot be otherwise than uncertain and variable; too much so, indeed, to be collated with our method of reckoning by miles. An hour upon a hilly road, must necessarily be shorter than an hour upon a level one. The reader, therefore, must not expect a perfect geometrical accuracy in my map, it being laid down only from my own observations with a compass, and the accounts I got from others. In the mean time, however, it is the only one that exists, and may probably be of no small assistance in the framing of others that may be made hereafter. In general, the *uur*, or an hour on the road, is reckoned as much as a man can ride on a round trot, or a common hand-gallop in that space of time, and is considered as being equal to the distance which a man is able to drive a waggon with oxen in two hours; though even these on a plain level road, and with a lighter load than they generally draw, will go almost as fast a trot, and in the same proportion for other paces, as one usually rides on horseback. Four such hours with a horse, or with eight oxen, are reckoned to make one *skoft*. This is as much as they usually drive with a load in a day, or in the space of twelve hours, as sometimes they bait once on the road. The peasants that live farther up in the country, and have a long way to travel, are provided with a spare set of oxen or two, which they make use of by turns, and in this manner are able to drive day and night, or two *skofts* (i. e. eight horse-hours) in the twenty-four natural hours. Now as those who live a good way up in the country take fourteen, and sometimes twenty and odd days, besides a day or two for resting, to carry their goods in this manner to the Cape, and somewhat less time to return

return in, it may easily be conceived, that they do not spare the poor creatures in the least: one may see them often enough driven puffing and blowing with their tongues hanging a good way out of their mouths; and one plainly perceives, that but little time is allowed them for resting, and still less for seeking their food: now and then, indeed, they are able to fill their bellies with grass, shrubs, and water, but have scarcely time to chew the cud. It is from this cause likewise, that from having been, as it were, almost choked with fat, they grow quite lean on such a journey as this; though, by the time that they take another journey next year to the Cape, they may possibly, especially such as during that period are not much worked, get into as good plight as before, on their usual pasture, which they have in great abundance.

As I have just been treating of the manner of travelling at the Cape, I must here farther add, that throughout all this colony oxen are never put into a team, so as to draw with their horns, but with their shoulders only, one yoke being used for each pair of oxen, which in the mortises with which it is fastened round their necks, has notches for putting on and taking off the head-harness. The yoke belonging to the hindmost pair is fastened by its middle part to the pole of the waggon; and those belonging to the rest have a rope, strap or chain, running through them, which by this means is stretched out equally between all the cattle. Perhaps this manner of harnessing their oxen, which seems to leave them so much at liberty to move about, without giving them an opportunity of making use of the strength they have in their horns, will
account

1775.
July.

1775.
July.

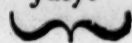
account for such long journies being made with oxen so expeditiously in Africa; and likewise on the other hand, for their being obliged to make use of ten or twelve beasts to one waggon or plough. Mr. ARTHUR YOUNG, in his "*Tour through Ireland*," in the years 1776, 77, 78, has made mention of an experiment to this purpose, which has given rise to this conjecture of mine, for which reason I thought it necessary to quote the passage here.

" Lord Shannon, upon going into tillage, found that the expence of horses was so great, that it eat up all the profit of the farm, which made him determine to use bullocks; he did it in the common method of yokes and bows, but they performed so indifferently, and with such manifest uneasiness, that he imported the French method of drawing by the horns; and in order to do this effectually, he wrote to a person at Bourdeaux to hire him a man who was practised in that method. Upon the correspondent being applied to, he represented difficulties attending it, the man who was spoken to having been in Germany for the same purpose. Upon which Lord Shannon gave directions, that every thing should be bought and sent over which the labourer wished to bring with him. Accordingly a bullock of the best sort, that had been worked three years, was purchased; also a hay-cart, a plough, and all the tackling for harneffing them by the horns.—In my presence, his Lordship ordered the French harvest-cart to be loaded half a mile from the ricks; it was done, one thousand and twenty sheafs were laid on it, and two oxen drew it without difficulty.

We

We then weighed forty sheafs, the weight two hundred and fifty-one pounds, at which rate the one thousand and twenty came to six thousand three hundred and seventy-five pounds, or above three tons, which is a vast weight for two oxen to draw. I am very much in doubt, whether in yokes they would have stirred the cart so loaded." (Page 409, Vol. I.—See likewise page 380.)

1775.
July.



SECT.

S E C T. IV.

Residence at the Warm Bath.

1775.
July.

THE warm bath, which we now arrived at, is called *Hottentots Holland's Bath*, from the name of the district in which it is situated; for the same reason it was likewise frequently called the *Bath over* or *behind* the *mountain*, and sometimes too *Yzer-Baad*, as this is supposed to contain more iron than any other bath in the colony. It is likewise looked upon to be better furnished with conveniencies than any of the others. A stone house has been built here by order of government for the accommodation of the company at the bath. This consists of a hall, two large chambers, a kitchen, and a little chamber, all with earthen floors. The small chamber is inhabited by the *post-master*, as he is called, or the overseer of the bath, so that there are, properly speaking, only the two large chambers for the guests, who sometimes arrive in a greater number than can be lodged in that narrow space. In this case they are obliged to dispose of themselves as well as they can in the hall, in the loft, or else in tents and tilt-waggons, which they bring with them for that purpose.

The

The stone building above-mentioned, is run up against the declivity of a hill, without any kind of sewer or dyke; hence it comes to pass, that the water making its way into one of the chambers, renders it very damp and unhealthy; and it is still more so, when they are obliged to put several beds and sick people together. By the list that the overseer of the bath has kept there for several years past, I found, that from one hundred and fifty to two hundred persons use the bath yearly. But at the cold and inconvenient season when I was there, there were only eight people bathing, and even these were but scurvily entertained. The few miserable benches, and the table that we found here, were the property of the old man at the bath, and accordingly we were obliged to hire them of him.

At the distance of about a hundred paces from the dwelling-house, is the bathing-house. This is a cottage, two sides of which are for the greater part under ground, and into which the light enters only by a few small peep-holes. The length of this cottage is from three and a half to four fathoms, and its breadth a fathom and a half. At one end of it there is a cistern or pit, a fathom and a half square, and two feet deep. The warm water is brought a little way under ground from its source, till it comes out from above into one of the gables of the house, where it afterwards runs through an open channel one fathom in length, from which it comes pouring down into the cistern in a stream an inch thick. By this contrivance, indeed, the expence of stone and brick-work is saved, but then probably an opportunity is given to the most subtle and efficacious particles to fly off.

1775.
July.

The method of bathing is, for the patient to sit or lay himself down in the cistern, till the water is up to his chin. The water then feels quite warm without scalding, and a kind of fugillation from the internal to the external parts of the body is observed. The velocity of the pulse is increased, as well as that of the pulsation of the heart. In so short a space of time as eight or ten minutes, and sometimes even before that period, a deliquium appears to be coming on. It is therefore by no means adviseable to be alone, for fear of swooning in the bath, and being drowned. Such unfortunate accidents are said sometimes to have really happened. At length, when the patient gets out of the water, he lays himself at the other end of the room to sweat in the clothes he has brought with him for this purpose. If he then drinks some of the warm water, he gets so much the easier into a sweat. As soon as this is over, or at least diminished, the patient washes himself as quickly as possible in the bath, in order to be dry so much the sooner, before he puts on his clothes. Some people bathe and sweat in the manner here mentioned at two different times, one immediately after the other, and find no bad effects from it. The cistern may be emptied, by turning a cock between each person's bathing, if required.

Hardly a mile and a half from hence there is a farm, where the company at the bath sometimes lodge; but find this rather inconvenient, on account of the distance. The patients bathe, as described above, mostly once or twice a day, very seldom three times; at least, such as intend to pursue this method of cure for any length of time.

A few

A few paces from this bath there are two others, which are nothing more than pits into which the warm water flows, covered in by hovels made of hurdles. Of these, the one is cooler and the other warmer than that which I first described; both of them are made use of only by slaves and Hottentots. In this part of the country there are two other wells without any shelter, but they are not used, though one of them has the strongest spring of any, and is nearest to the main building. At the distance of about fifty paces from and below the warm wells or bathing-places, there lies in the dale I have described a well of cold water, very pure to the taste. The contents and temperature of the warm bath I cannot very accurately determine, partly on account of my thermometer being not graduated high enough for this purpose, and partly by reason that I was in want of many necessary helps, as well with regard to drugs as vessels; for the master of the bath's, brandy-glass excepted, I had nothing here fit for the purpose, but the two drinking-glasses I brought with me, the people here usually drinking the water of the well out of ladles.

So that the only experiments that I had an opportunity of making are the following:

A *solution of sugar of lead* seemed to precipitate a foul slimy matter.

A *solution of silver* tinged the water of an opal colour, and at length precipitated a little white powder to the bottom.

Oil of tartar per deliquium, precipitated scarcely any thing.

T 2

Litharge,

1775.
July.

1775.
July.

Litharge, sal ammoniac, lacmus, and syrup of violets, each of them separately digested with the water, exhibited no change in their colour.

Powder of gall-apples digested with the water, while it preserved its natural warmth, produced a brown colour, as our mineral waters do in Sweden, and this colour was durable;

_____ digested with the water, after it had stood to cool in the glass, scarcely gave any tinge to it;

_____ digested with water boiled, scarcely tinged it in the least.

Ochre had settled in great quantities in the cistern and conduits.

The *water shaken* in bottles with narrow necks, generated a great number of air-bubbles.

Lime-water did not produce any hepatic air, but formed several small clouds in the warm water, which soon collected into one without falling to the bottom. It must be observed, however, that the lime-water I made use of for this purpose, was not sufficiently to be depended upon. I was obliged to prepare some myself from lime that was somewhat flaked, and a quantity of water, which, for want of a better apparatus, I distilled by means of several tea-kettles joined together.

Silver that had lain long in the water, discovered no tokens of the presence of sulphur.

It is generally reported of this water, that it tastes of brimstone; but in fact, no such mineral is to be discovered in it, either by the taste or smell; the taste predominant

nant in this water being very sensibly vitriolic, and not sulphureous. Notwithstanding this, the water is pretty easy of digestion, and does not sit heavy on a tolerably good stomach. As here is hardly ever any opportunity of consulting a physician, this bath is used without any other method or indication than what corresponds with the caprice, or suits the convenience of the patient; consequently, without any regular order, without the least attention to diet, or any distinction of disorders, of which I shall give the following instance. A slave had so far got the better of an epidemical distemper, with which he had been afflicted, that nature was perfecting the cure by throwing out biles on the surface of his body; notwithstanding which he was sent from *Zwellendam*, by the lord lieutenant of that district, to the bath here, as being a never-failing remedy. In vain did I order him to refrain entirely from bathing, when the greatest man in the place had commanded him to do it. A few hours from the time of the poor fellow's first bathing, delivered him from his biles and bondage at once.

The company at the wells were in general not at all nice with regard to the time of day for bathing, and did not hesitate to go into the bath directly after meals; and though this was sometimes really done without any remarkable bad consequences ensuing, yet it was much to be feared, that the food which the patient had just before taken, should be too suddenly thrown into the mass of blood. From all the accounts I could collect, it was not unusual for rheumatisms and contractions of the limbs to be entirely removed in three or four days, by the use of the
warm.

1775.
July.

1775.
July.


warm bath; but in the gout it is by no means a peculiarly powerful remedy. It is sometimes of use in eruptions and malignant ulcers, but at other times has not the least effect in these disorders. A girl who was now using the bath for the second year for her leg that was violently swelled and affected with profound ulcers, and in the mean time had poulticed it with the bruised leaves of mallows and other plants, had obtained no relief; I therefore dissuaded her from using either the bath or the leaves, as being of too irritating a nature, and ordered her to use a salve made of wax and honey, partly on account of its being easy to be procured, and partly because I knew by experience, that it could do no harm, and might do good. By this remedy the ulcer was healed very suddenly beyond all expectation, and the swelling went down by degrees. A man bathed here for an old inveterate ulcer in his leg, without any effect; but it should be observed by the bye, that he got drunk almost every day. A woman had a hard lump in one of her breasts, bigger than a man's fist. As bathing alone seemed to be of no service in this case, I made her rub the indurated tumour with a little mercurial ointment; by which means, in fact, one half of it disappeared in the space of two days; but the remainder was not in the least acted upon, either by the ointment or the bath. This good woman was at that very time, without knowing it, in that situation, that a few months after bathing she was brought to bed. The child, which was quite lively and hearty, had received no damage from the mother's bathing. A butcher was now using the bath for the third month, for an inveterate ulcer in his leg, but without

1775.
July.

without any peculiar advantage; though I was acquainted with a magistrate, who at this place in a short time got rid of a bad ulcer in his leg, for which he had long tried in vain every remedy that could be thought of.

A young Madagascar slave, who had an inveterate ulcer in his leg of three years standing and two inches broad, was sent to the warm bath under my care, on condition that I should make use of him as my servant. He had before this been attended, and given over as incurable by a surgeon at the Cape. Being curious to examine a negro's flesh, I had for some weeks before we set off undertaken to look after his sores myself. These in general discharged very little. The raw flesh appeared exactly of the same colour with that of an European. After the proud-flesh was got under, the ulcer began to heal, by throwing out fresh fibres in the same manner as ours do, with something whitish on the side of the skin, which otherwise was dark-coloured. The process, however, went on very slowly and tediously; but with the warm bath, the sore increased both in width and depth. I let him go on bathing nevertheless, in hopes that the wound would heal of itself, after his body had been well cleansed by a course of bathing; but in this, as I afterwards found, I was very much mistaken. The slave himself informed me, that once before, when he was in a state of freedom, and in his native country, he had had this same complaint come upon him; that the sore had then, as well as at present, broke out of itself, but at that time was healed in a few days, by means of a certain bark bruised between two stones, and laid upon the part. He said he knew the tree
very

1775.
July.

very well, and had seen the bark of it used by many of his countrymen with equal success; but that since his arrival in Africa, he had looked for it in vain.

The christians who arm the natives of Madagascar against each other, in order, by bartering afterwards with the conquerors, to recruit their colonies with droves of wretched slaves, must here give me leave to remind them, if not swayed by the consideration of the advantages which may accrue to mankind, yet at least for the sake of their own interests, a motive in other respects so powerful with them, in some measure to turn their thoughts, and allot a small part of their gains, to the purpose of making useful researches. The Peruvian *bark*, *senega*, *ophiorhiza*, *sarsaparilla*, *quassia*, with many other useful remedies, calculated for preserving millions of our species, have not we learned them all from those we call savages? and perhaps might learn still more, if our tyranny had not already, I had almost said, entirely extirpated them, and together with them the fruits of their useful experience. The operation of the bath, and the cures that are here performed by its means, depend, in my opinion, very little on the mineral that is contained in a state of solution in the water; for to do any good in this way, it is forced out too speedily, and by too near passages. The warmth itself, in the degree in which it exists here, hinders the iron from acting as a *tonic*; and likewise prevents any of the water, by which the body is surrounded, from being absorbed into the vessels, and diluting the humours, &c. as these latter evidently flow towards the surface of the body; so that the cures performed here, proceed from nothing else than

than repeated mutations of the humours by sweating, and therefore a more suitable diet and course of medicine than are here observed are of the utmost importance, to the end that the newly-generated fluids may be more healthy than those that have been previously carried off by the pores of the skin. But if it be true, that the cures made by this bath chiefly depend on the operation of sweating, in this case it has no peculiar advantage over domestic baths, besides that of saving fuel. In Africa and Europe, as well as among the savages in America, it is by no means unknown, that the methods of cure by exciting perspiration in different ways, have in certain cases been of the greatest service; but perhaps, in many instances, more benefit would be found by making use of the natural baths at the Cape with a more moderate degree of warmth, which would allow of the water being absorbed into the body; and likewise by using them with the addition of herbs: as, for example, of *bucku* (*diosma*) and wild *dacka* (*phlomis leonurus*) which are known both by the colonists and the Hottentots to be as efficacious as they are common, and of the powerful effects of which in pains and contractions of the limbs, when used in the form of baths, I myself have seen instances. But finally, supposing the solutions of minerals in the warm springs to be possessed of the greatest powers, either universally, or only in particular circumstances, even then in default of natural baths, one may prepare something similar to them one's self. Vide JOH. CAROLI SCHROTERI *Disputatio sub præsidio* FRID. HOFFMANI *de Balneorum artificialium, ex Scoriis Metallicis usu Medico*. Halæ Magdeburgi 1772.

VOL. I.

U

Like-

1775.
July.

1775.
July.

Likewise *Die kunst naturlichen Brunnen nachzumachen*, (the art of imitating natural mineral waters) by M. Charles le Roi. Likewise Professor Bergman's *Opuscula*, Vol. I.

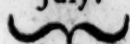
In the mean while, without denying the advantages that may accrue to any country from possessing these warm springs, it would not be amiss in this place to make some enquiries concerning their origin. It is well known, that heat, earthquakes, and even fire are produced, when water comes into contact with *strata* of sulphur mixed with iron. Subterraneous heat or fire produced by this or other causes, is the occasion of the water existing in the bowels of the earth being forced upwards in the form of vapours. A collection of these impregnated with the substances which they may have dissolved in their way, compose what we call mineral waters. So that it seems much to be feared, lest in such considerable distillations the water should chance to boil over. And, indeed, experience shows, that, in this case, warm springs and volcanos for the most part ensue. To conclude, from the number of baths there is at the Cape, and the considerable degrees of warmth they are possessed of, it is probable, that there lies concealed in the bowels of the earth not a little of this burning and all-destroying element. What gives farther cause for this suspicion, is a little rock or hill of stone, situated fifteen or twenty paces above the bathing-house. This consists of a solid lava, in which there appear evident marks of its having been once in a fluid state. It likewise perfectly resembles a lava which I had found before in great abundance on the island of Ascension. This lava too, is in like manner of a very dark colour and contains iron.

A lit-

1775.
July.

A little piece of road is carried over this spot, and is distinguishable by a blackish dust or powder, like charcoal dust, which probably proceeds from the lava or iron ore crushed to pieces by the wheels of the waggons that pass that way. But if any subterraneous heat or fire should be still concealed hereabouts to a considerable extent, may it not so far operate on the shell or external crust of the earth, that much of the humidity of the latter shall partly evaporate, and partly be dried up in the chinks and clefts which are formed here in its surface. What confirms me in this conjecture is, that though there falls a great deal of rain in this part of Africa, so that in the rainy season the rivers almost overflow their banks, the greatest part of them nevertheless are quite dried up in summer time. Here are no wells and very few springs, but abundance of arid plains covered with sand and heath, of bare mountains, &c. All these contribute to give this country the aspect of being the most thirsty and dry tract of land that I have yet seen upon the whole face of the globe. The warmth of the climate here is not sufficient to account for so great a degree of aridity; but the supposition of its being occasioned by a subterraneous heat appears to me by no means absurd, as on the isle of *Tanna*, though rendered so fertile in other respects by the ashes of a burning volcano, I observed two tracts of land sufficiently dry and arid, notwithstanding that a small spot only upon each of them was sensibly heated by the subterraneous fire. Near the *Hottentots Holland's Bath*, herbs and shrubs grow luxuriantly along the tepid streams, which take their rise in the warm springs, the roots and stems of some of these vegetables being even

1775.
July.



washed by the water, without suffering the least inconvenience. It is at the foot of the *Zwarteberg* (or black mountain, as it is called) that the bath is situated. Beneath this range of mountains is extended a considerable plain, covered with small hills and dales, which was shut in from the sea by a naked and hideous range of mountains of granite. These limited prospects which are so common in Africa, could not but be very unpleasant to me, who in Sweden was almost always used to see the horizon perpetually verdant with groves of firs and pine.

During my stay here, the spring, together with the month of August, made daily advances with her various beautiful bulbous plants, which afterwards, when the drought of summer came on, took their leave. Among these I now could number several different varieties of *irises*. The roots, or more properly the bulbs of these, it is common here to roast in the ashes and eat: they are called *oenkjies*, and have nearly the same taste with potatoes. The Hottentots, with more reflection than generally falls to the share of savages, use the word *oenkjies* in the same sense in which VIRGIL used that of *aristæ*, that is, for reckoning of time; always beginning the new year, whenever the *oenkjies* push out of the ground, and marking their age and other events by the number of times in which, in a certain period, this vegetable has made its appearance.

My course of bathing made me in general too languid to undertake any long excursions, or to go a hunting, particularly up the neighbouring mountains. On the 12th,
how-

1775.
July.

however, a lame slave having gone up into the cliffs to gather wood and stumps of trees, and having at the same time taken with him several hounds, which I heard very busy a hunting, I hastened up thither with a small gun, in hopes of meeting with a *steenbock*; but to my great astonishment found, that the hounds had driven the game up into a tree, and were laying close siege to it round about the bottom. The slave, who likewise came hither with his burden, said it was a tiger or a leopard; and added, that I must take care to be sure of my mark, or otherwise it might leap on to my shoulders from the branches of the tree, by which it was pretty well sheltered, and be revenged on me. As I recollected having heard that in *Bengal*, in order to provide in some measure against a case of this kind, they held a small spear over their heads, I now got ready a large knife, at the same time that I gave fire with some large swan-shot, upon which I let a ball run down in haste. As for the rest, I thought I might very well depend on the hounds relieving me by taking him off. The ball missed, and the shot alone took place; however, the beast at length came tumbling down, and proved to be nothing more than a large wild cat. It was of a grey colour, and, for aught I could see, was exactly of the same species as our tame house cats; though, indeed, it weighed three times as much. I measured it with an English rule; it must therefore be observed, that the English inch is larger than the Swedish, and that the size of the animal is consequently given here according to the former, namely,

From

1775.
July.

	Inches.
From the tip of the nose to the head behind the ears	5
From the ear to the shoulder - - -	$2\frac{3}{4}$
From the shoulder to the anus - -	14
<hr/>	
So that the whole length of the cat was -	$21\frac{3}{4}$
The tail - - - - -	13
The feet from the belly measured,	
The fore feet - - - - -	12
The hind feet - - - - -	13

So that the height of the cat was about a foot and a half.

The intestines were half as long again as the animal, tail and all, or about fifty inches. They were full of moles and rats.

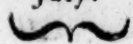
A Hottentot *bastard*, who had built a little cottage here near the bath, for himself, his wife, and his little daughter, looked upon the flesh of wild cats, lions, tigers, and such like beasts of prey, as a medicine, and much wholesomer than that of other animals. The greater part of the company at the wells were desirous of preserving the fat, which was thought to possess not only the virtue of healing sores, but likewise to be serviceable in the gout; and the same notion was harboured concerning the fat of other wild beasts. It is certain, that the fat of this wild cat had a very rank and penetrating smell, and on that account probably was preferable to other fat. Another kind of cat, as it is called, or the *roode-kat*, is in Africa universally supposed to possess a great medicinal power in its skin to cure lumbagos, pains in the joints, gout in the hands and feet, &c. if the hairy side be worn on

1775.
July.

on the part affected. I have likewise heard the same attested by those who thought they had received benefit by it; but as this supposed specific was sold at a very high price, I was contented for my part, with examining the skin, by which I was convinced, that it is the same animal as Mr. PENNANT, in his *Synopsis and History of Quadrupeds*, has described, and given a drawing of, by the name of the *Persian Cat*; and M. BUFFON, Vol. IX. T. 24. by the name of the *Caracal*. The hair of this skin, it must be owned, is very fine and soft; but probably there are many other skins that, applied with an equal degree of faith, would have the same effects. The colour of the upper part of it is of a very light red, sprinkled with grey; under the belly it is light-coloured; the upper part of the ears, which have tufts of hair on the tips of them, is dark brown, sprinkled with grey. This animal is rather long in the body, and about two feet in height, with a peaked nose. They have a third kind of cat in Africa, which, in its motions and attitudes, is like our common cat, and is called at the Cape the *tiger-kat*, and the *tiger bosch-kat*. From the two skins which I brought with me, and which I shall perhaps have occasion to describe more accurately, I cannot find but that the tiger-cat is the same animal as M. BUFFON calls the *serval-cat*. As to the animal to which M. VOSMAER gives the name of the *African civet-cat*, I much doubt if it be to be found at the Cape of Good Hope.

The *hystrix cristata* of LINNÆUS, called by the colonists here *yzter-varken* (or *iron-bog*), is the same animal as the Germans carry about for a show in our country by the name of *porcupine*, and does much damage to the cabbages and garden-

1775.
July.



garden-stuff in the inclosures here. In the day-time it keeps in its holes under-ground, and at night it seeks for its food, which consists of roots and leaves. The *calla Æthiopica* is the plant supposed to be most coveted by this animal, on which account likewise it is called the *yster-varkens wortel*. This vegetable is notwithstanding of so acrid a nature, that either the root or the leaf applied to the surface of the body occasions blisters. The hystrix is caught in the following manner. They steal by night softly towards the place where the creature uses to secrete itself, taking with them a dark lantern. The dogs now begin to give the alarm, and help to drive the animal from its subterraneous retreat, till at length the sportsmen are able to get at it and knock it on the head. It often happens indeed, that the more eager and inexperienced dogs get fore noses and mouths, &c. in consequence of being pricked by this creature's sharp quills; but there is no foundation for the report, that it has the power of shooting forth these weapons from its body at pleasure, and directing them against its enemies. It is perfectly well defended from dogs as well as other animals, while, like the *hedgehog*, it rolls its body into a heap, and sets up its prickles or quills, many of which are a foot and a half long. I did not hear talk at the Cape of any *bezoar* being produced by this animal. The flesh nearest resembles pork, a circumstance which has undoubtedly procured it the name it bears. It is chiefly used as bacon, being smoked and dried up the chimney for that purpose, and is by no means ill-tasted; though prejudice hinders a great many of the inhabitants from eating it.

I found

I found here two new species of the genus of *tetrao*, one of which is called *partridge* and the other *pheasant*; either sort being nearly of the size of our partridges. They live in flocks, and are not hard to come at, especially in the mornings and evenings; at which times chiefly they discover their abode by a shrill *kurring* noise by no means pleasant in itself, yet not disagreeable to hear; partly as it takes off a little from the wildness and desolateness, with which the sight of so many extensive and untilled fields cannot fail to strike the imagination; and partly, as particularly at break of day as well as at the ruddy opening of the morn, it prognosticates the approach of the sun to vivify all nature. Flocks of *keuvitts*, on the other hand, towards the dusk of the evening, screamed out a disagreeable sound resembling that of the name they bear. These are a sort of snipes, and are distinguished in the *Systema Naturæ* by the name of the *scolopax capensis*. *Knorrhane* is the name of a kind of *otis*, which has the art of concealing itself perfectly till one comes pretty near to it, when on a sudden it soars aloft, and almost perpendicularly into the air, with a sharp, hasty, and quavering scream, or the repetition of *korrb, korrb*, which is an alarm to the animals throughout the whole neighbourhood, discovering the approach of a sportsman, or enemy of some sort or other.

The *secretaries bird*, though it has been already brought alive to Europe, and a drawing of it, painted in its natural colours has been given by M. VOSMAER under the denomination of *sagittarius*, is too remarkable among the feathered kind to be left unnoticed here. It was in these

1775.
July.

parts I first saw it in its wild state. It is not a very shy bird, but when scared, begins at first to endeavour to save itself by hopping and scudding along very swiftly, and afterwards does it more effectually by flight. In external appearance it partly resembles the eagle, and partly the crane, two birds certainly very unlike each other, and in my opinion ought to be referred to neither of these genera. The Hottentots give it a name most suitable to its nature, viz. as translated into Dutch, *slangen-vraater* (or serpent-eater;) and, in fact, it is for the purpose of keeping within due bounds the very extensive race of serpents in Africa, that nature has principally destined this bird. It is much larger than our crane, with legs two feet and a half long, and the body in proportion less than the crane's. Its beak, claws, stout thighs covered with long feathers, and short neck, are like those of the eagle and hawk kind. The head, neck, beak, the lesser coverts of the wings, and the greater part of the tail, are of a grey leaden colour; the longer quills of which latter, a little way from the tips, are moreover marked with a black spot; but the two middle quills are longest of all, and are white at the tips; its breast is of a yellowish white (*sordide albidum*;) the vent-feathers, wing-quills, thighs, claws, pupil, and the retroverted feathers under the eyes are black; its thighs are of a flesh-colour, its eyes large and prominent, the iris of an orange-yellow, the *cere*, and the region of the eyes naked and yellow. A tuft or comb composed of about twelve feathers, with which, placed in two rows, this bird is adorned, lies down mostly on the hind part of the neck.

This bird has a peculiar method of seizing upon serpents. When it approaches them, it always takes care to hold the point of one of its wings before it, in order to parry off their venomous bites; sometimes it finds an opportunity of spurning and treading upon its antagonist, or else of taking it up on its pinions and throwing it into the air; when by this method of proceeding it has at length wearied out its adversary, and rendered it almost senseless, it then kills it and swallows it at leisure, without danger. Though I have very frequently seen the *secretaries bird* both in its wild and tame state, I have yet never had an opportunity of seeing this method it has of catching serpents; however, I can by no means harbour any doubt concerning it, after having had it confirmed to me by so many Hottentots as well as Christians; and since this bird has been observed at the *menagerie* at the *Hague*, to amuse and exercise itself in the same manner with a straw. If, finally, this serpent-eater is to be referred to the *accipitres*, or the hawk-kind, the name of *falco serpentarius* appears to be the most proper to distinguish it by in the *Systema Naturæ*. It has even been remarked, that these birds, when tame, will not disdain now and then to put up with a nice chicken.

I will not venture at present to try my reader's patience longer, with accounts of any more of the feathered inhabitants of Africa, at least not of the smaller sort; yet it may not be improper to mention by the bye, that they are of many different sorts, and most of them unlike those which are to be found in other parts of the world, and at the same time that many of them are yet unknown to natura-

1775.
July.

1775.
July.



lifts. In general, they excel our European birds in the brilliancy of their plumage; but, on the other hand, with regard to what adds greater life to nature, and which is capable of charming us more, and operating more powerfully on our senses, viz. the delightful warbling and song peculiar to the feathered race, there are very few of them that deserve our notice in this point.

The manner in which I employed the remainder of my time, while I staid at the warm bath, was in visiting a rich farmer who was sick, and lived about two miles and a half off. I had now better reason than ever to be pleased with the knowledge I had attained in the *Æsculapian* art, though my reward consisted in nothing more than a shoulder of mutton now and then, and a piece of venison, which sometimes was pretty plentiful there; and that at every visit they gave me a pitcher full of milk, which I took home with me on the pummel of my saddle. As this latter was never suffered to go out of the house for money, and the company at the wells were very irregularly served with provisions, and even these were scarce, it occasioned me frequently to repeat my visits to my patient, especially as the copious evacuations by sweat required plenty of nourishment to supply the place of what was thus dissipated; an apophthegm, of which many of those, who used the bath, were reminded by an excellent appetite. As from the same motive I was once obliged to go as far as Bott-rivier, in order to get in a stock of butcher's meat and garden-stuff, which I brought home with me on a led horse, I had the satisfaction, in the extensive tracts above-mentioned, which
are

are between the bath and this river, of seeing some of the dog kind in their wild state.

1775.
July.

These wild dogs are some of the most pernicious beasts of prey, particularly with respect to sheep and goats, that either the African colonists or the Hottentot hoards are exposed to. They are reported not to be content merely with satisfying their hunger, but even to destroy and wound every thing they meet with. They always herd together in companies, and wander about day and night after their prey. The noise they make in hunting is said much to resemble the yelping of our common hounds, only to be something softer. It is asserted, that they even have the courage to try their strength with larger dogs, as well tame as wild; and that they were once bold enough in their turns, to pursue a sportsman, who was out after them on horseback, but was unlucky enough to miss fire. It has been observed, that they hunt with much sagacity, acting perfectly in concert with each other; while at the same time each of them in particular does his best to overtake or meet the game, till at length it falls a prey to the pack. They are said to be always as lean as skeletons, and consequently ugly, and at the same time that they have several spots bare of hair. One sort is said to be larger, and at the same time of a reddish colour, and spotted black; the other less and browner. Those that I then saw at the distance of two hundred paces, were probably of the larger kind, for they were two feet high, short haired, and reddish. No one yet has tried to tame them; some of the country people, however, may have had opportunities of experiencing, how near these grim and fierce animals of prey

may

1775.
July.

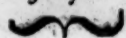
may be allied to the more civilized little dogs which so frequently engross the favour and attention of the fair sex. It is possible, that there is yet another species of wild dogs in Africa, as a peasant of the name of POTTGIETER informed me, that in *Mossel-bay* he had seen an animal of the size and shape of a common dog, but that it had larger ears, and was marked white under the belly, but was of a dark colour every where else. His companion had shot at it, but missed fire.

The *tiger-wolf* is a much more common beast of prey, and one that from the very beginning, as well as throughout the whole of my journey, occasioned me so much anxiety and fear for the safety of my cattle, and consequently for the happy conclusion of my expedition, that I cannot defer any longer the description of so formidable an animal. By the colonists they are called *tiger-wolf*. This is that hitherto unknown animal, which Mr. PENNANT, in his Synopsis of Quadrupeds, page 162, N^o 119, and History of Quadrupeds, page 250, N^o 149, has briefly described and given a drawing of, by the name of the spotted *byæna*, a different species from the *canis byæna* of LINNÆUS.

The night, or the dusk of the evening only, is the time in which these animals seek their prey, after which they are used to roam about both separately and in flocks. But one of the most unfortunate properties of this creature is, that it cannot keep its own counsel. The language of it cannot easily be taken down upon paper; however, with a view to make this species of wolf better known than it has been hitherto, I shall observe, that it is by means of a sound something like the following, *aauae*, and sometimes

ooao,

ooao, yelled out with a tone of despair, (at the interval of some minutes between each howl,) that nature obliges this, the most voracious animal in all Africa, to discover itself, just as it does the most venomous of all the American serpents, by the rattle in its tail, itself to warn every one to avoid its mortal bite. This same *rattle-snake* would seem, in consequence of thus betraying its own designs, and of its great inactivity, (to be as it were nature's step-child,) if, according to many credible accounts, it had not the wonderful property of charming its prey by fixing its eye upon it. The like is affirmed also of the *tiger-wolf*. This creature, it is true, is obliged to give information against itself; but on the other hand, is actually possessed of the peculiar gift of being enabled, in some measure, to imitate the cries of other animals; by which means this arch-deceiver is sometimes lucky enough to beguile and attract calves, foals, lambs and other animals. As to the howlings of this creature, they are, in fact, as much the natural consequences of hunger, as gaping is of a disposition to sleep; and as the flowing of the saliva, or the water coming into the mouth, is of the sight of some delicacy, which excites the appetite. There must, indeed, be some physical cause for this. The very hollowness of the sound, or some other quality of it which I cannot well describe, induces me to conjecture, that it proceeds from the emptiness of the stomach. In the mean while, that a disposition to this yelling is absolutely implanted in the animal by nature, I am apt to conclude from the instance of a young *tiger-wolf* that I saw at the Cape, which, though it had been brought up tame from a whelp by a Chinese resident

1775.
July.

1775.
July.

resident there, and was then chained up, was said nevertheless to be silent in the day time, but very frequently in the night (being then probably hungry) was heard to emit the yelling noise peculiar to its kind. Near some of the larger farms, where there is a great deal of cattle, this ravenous beast is to be found almost every night; and at the same time frequently from one hour to another betraying itself by its howlings, gives the dogs the alarm. The peasants assured me, that the cunning of the wolves was so great, (adding, that the trick had now and then even succeeded with some of them) that a party of them, half flying and half defending themselves, would decoy the whole pack of dogs to follow them to the distance of a gun-shot or two from the farm, with a view to give an opportunity to the rest of the wolves to come out from their ambuscade, and, without meeting with the least resistance, carry off booty sufficient for themselves and their fugitive brethren. As the tiger-wolf, though a much larger and stronger animal, does not venture without being driven to the utmost necessity, to measure its strength with the common dog, this is certainly an evident proof of its cowardice. Neither does this same voracious beast dare openly to attack oxen, cows, horses, or any of the larger animals, while they make the least appearance as if they would defend themselves, or even as long as they do not betray any signs of fear. On the other hand, it has art enough to rush in upon them suddenly and unexpectedly, at the same time setting up a horrid and strange cry, so as to set them a running in consequence of the fright, that it may afterwards keep close to their heels with safety, till it has an oppor-

opportunity with one bite or stroke to rip up the belly of its prey, (even though it should be so large an animal as a draught-ox) or else give it some dangerous bite, and so at one single bout make itself master of its antagonist. On this account the peasants are obliged to drive their cattle home every evening before it is dark, excepting the more considerable droves of draught-oxen, which they let roam about day and night to seek their food unattended, by reason that they are used both to the country and the artifices of the wolves, and can therefore the easier depend upon and defend each other.

Travellers, on the other hand, who are obliged to keep on in their journey, frequently suffer great losses by turning their cattle out at night; especially of the young ones, which are easiest scared. I, who had only one team of oxen, and those, to my sorrow, of that degenerate sort as to be apt to stray and wander afar off, seldom ventured to let them graze in the night, however necessary it might otherwise be; for my botanizing seldom allowed me to travel on nights, as the peasants do, and bait my cattle in the day-time: so that, as I could only travel in the mornings and evenings, the heat of the day was neither a proper nor a sufficient time for baiting them. I had besides not unfrequently the disagreeable accident happen to me, that the leader of my team, whose duty it was to go to pasture with the cattle, often neglected his duty. By this means we wasted not only many hours, but even sometimes a couple of days together, in anxious endeavours to recover our lost cattle; and at the same time were obliged to go over hills and dales, on horseback as well as on foot,

1775.
July.

1775.
July.

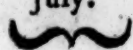
to look after them. While I staid at the warm bath, my saddle-horse together with some others, was frightened one night by the wolves, so as to pull up by the roots the small bushes to which they were tied, and took to their heels; but by good luck, they were found again unhurt the following evening. They had perhaps disengaged themselves entirely from their fastenings, or else taken heart, on having been obliged to stop at the steep declivity of a mountain, that enclosed a narrow dale, where they were found. It may be likewise, that the hyæna has courage only upon the open plains, in the same manner as our ordinary wolves; which, for fear of being taken by surprise, are said not to venture to follow any one that takes refuge in the skirts of a wood. The imminent danger I had been in of losing my saddle-horse, induced me afterwards to be as cautious as possible against so disagreeable and vigilant an enemy as the wolf. I had also the good fortune, throughout the whole of my journey, to escape paying any tax to this animal's voracity and cunning, excepting a trace belonging to the waggon, two yards long and two fingers thick, made of strong thongs of undressed ox's hide plaited together; for one night a wolf came within-side of the door of my lodgings (at *Tiger-boek*) where it hung up, and gnawing it in pieces, ate it up. The Hottentots themselves have confessed to me, that it was still within the memory of man, that the tiger-wolf was bold enough to steal upon them and molest them in their huts, particularly by carrying off their children. This, however, is now no longer the case; a circumstance, perhaps, proceeding from the introduction of fire-arms into the country,

try, a circumstance which, in these latter times, has caused this, as well as other wild beasts, to stand in greater awe of man than it did formerly. I have heard the following story of the tiger-wolf mentioned, as being related in a certain treatise on the Cape, of which I now cannot exactly remember the title. The tale is laughable enough, though perhaps not quite so probable.

1775.
July.

“ At a feast near the Cape one night, a trumpeter who had got his fill was carried out of doors, in order that he might cool himself, and get sober again. The scent of him soon drew thither a tiger-wolf, which threw him on his back, and dragged him along with him as a corpse, and consequently a fair prize, up towards *Table-mountain*. During this, however, our drunken musician waked, enough in his senses to know the danger of his situation, and to sound the alarm with his trumpet, which he carried fastened to his side. The wild beast, as may easily be supposed, was not less frightened in his turn.” Any other besides a trumpeter would, in such circumstances, have undoubtedly been no better than wolf’s meat.

In the mean while it is a certain truth, and well known to every body, that these wolves are to be found almost every dark night about the shambles at the Cape, where they devour the offals of bones, skin, &c. which are thrown out there in great quantities, and drag away with them what they cannot eat. The inhabitants repay these good offices of the hyæna with a free and unlimited privilege of access and egress. The dogs too hereabouts, perfectly accustomed to their company, are said never to throw any impediment in their way; so that the beast,

1775.
July.

entertained and fed in the very heart of the town, has been seldom known to do any mischief there. It is likewise a well-known fact, that these wolves, in different parts of Africa, exhibit different degrees of courage; this, however, may perhaps proceed from their being of different species in different parts.

Yet in this very greediness of the *hyæna*, and its disposition to consume every thing it can get at, the provident œconomy of nature is abundantly evinced. The flowery fields at the Cape, would certainly soon become hideous and disfigured with carcases and skeletons, the relicks of the great quantity of game of all sorts which graze and die there in succession, were not the *tiger-wolf* manifestly subservient to nature in the regulation of her police, by clearing her theatre from them; nay, I had almost said, the wolf alone: for lions and tigers, for example, never eat bones, and are not very fond of carcases. These are serviceable in another way. They make the other animals vigilant and attentive to the functions for which nature has designed them; and besides answering several other intentions of providence, they serve, in conjunction with mankind, to keep in a just equilibrium the increase of the animal kingdom; so that it may not exceed the supplies afforded it by the vegetable part of the creation, and by this means prevent the necessary renewal of the latter by seeds, &c. and thus, by desolating it and laying it waste, in the end impoverish and destroy themselves, and die most wretched victims to want and hunger; so that, notwithstanding the immense quantities of game existing in this country, there are very seldom found any bones in
the

the haunts they have left, and never after the tiger, lion, jackal, wild cat, and wild dog. These latter animals, that they may not encumber and litter the ground which nature has ordained them to clear, never go out of their dens and caverns when they find themselves sick and disabled; but there, oppressed with hunger and disease, await the transitory moment, when they must pay obedience to nature's last law.

1775.
July.



On this subject it is worth while to observe, that the *tiger-wolf* is said, besides being a very great gormandizer, likewise to be capable of bearing hunger a considerable time; and if we also recollect its cowardly manner of attacking living animals, it will be evident, that this creature's voracity must necessarily serve to consume such as are worn out with age, or are sickly or maimed, as well as the other remains and refuse of the animal kingdom, and in like manner what may be redundant in it; but does not threaten any great destruction of the supplies necessary for the recruiting of this part of the creation.

Two other voracious animals of this kind are found in Africa, which are distinguished by the names of *mountain-wolf* and *strand-wolf*; but the people of the country were not able to give me any other marks to distinguish them by, than that the *mountain-wolf* is of a greyish cast, but the *strand-wolf* blackish with a grey head. In the meanwhile, what I have said above concerning the tiger-wolf, as being the most common of the kind, may perhaps be in a great measure applicable to the two other species.

The one of these probably is the *canis hyæna*, *Syst. Nat. LINN.* as I brought with me from the Cape a skin, which

1775.
July.

which seems to correspond tolerably well with the descriptions we have of that animal. The teeth and feet were either lost from off the skin, or else mutilated; however, to describe it as accurately as I can, it was five feet in length and two in breadth, and the legs, to conclude from what was left, were above a foot long. The tail was fifteen inches long, and tolerably erect; from the tip of the nose to the eyes it measured six inches, and from the eyes to the ears five; the ears were six inches long, a little rounded at the tip, but the exterior parts of them were mostly bare. The nose was peaked; the head covered with short hair, and of an ash-colour all over; while, on the other hand, the hair on the rest of the body was thick, harsh, and rough; on the upper part of the back the hairs were above a foot long, especially near the tail; on the tail itself they were six inches in length, while on the sides and belly they were not above four or five.

The whiskers were very stiff and harsh, some of them being thrice the thickness of those on the breast, and five inches in length. A number of stiff and strait hairs, three or four inches long, composed the eye-brows. The eyes were at the distance of two inches asunder; the colour of the space between them, as well as on the upper part of the back and tail, was dark brown, as likewise on the legs and thighs; but on the sides and under the belly it was mouse-black. It was with difficulty that some dark stripes could be traced, running from the back-bone down to the sides.

So that Mr. PENNANT's description of the *hyæna canina*, or the *canis hyæna* of LINNÆUS, corresponds tolerably well,

well, as to the size of the animal and the nature of the hair, with the skin I brought with me, and have just now described, the small differences there may be in the colour being of no great importance: besides, I have another very good reason for believing, that one species of the animal called *wolves* at the Cape, is the *hyæna canina*, so well described by Mr. PENNANT; and this is, that a farmer living near *Bott Rivier*, offered to lay me a considerable wager, that he could shew me *wolves* that were *hermaphrodites*. For this purpose he intended to lay a poisoned bait for them, composed of an extract of an herb, which he bought of somebody that lived a great way up the country; however, I did not accept the wager, partly as I had not time to wait for the determination of it, and partly because I was afraid of getting into some disagreeable dispute about the decision of it; as perhaps this animal, in like manner as I had seen before in the case of the *viverra genetta* and other creatures, might have a musk-bag, or follicle, in that part, which might be mistaken for the female organs of generation. I did not then recollect, that Mr. Pennant had remarked an aperture above the anus in the female of the *canis hyæna*; but that the tiger-wolf had nothing of the kind, I could observe in the female one that was kept alive at the Cape. It is this aperture, as I imagine, that in former times gave room for the assertion, that the hyæna was used to change its sex. Perhaps, in like manner, it will be found, that our forefathers were not entirely without foundation in the accounts they gave (though they were certainly carried too far)

of

 1775.
July.

1775.
July.

of the hyæna's power to imitate the human voice, and to charm the shepherds, so that they were not able to stir from the spot they were in.

I have already given an account of this creature's power to imitate other animals; all the country people, wherever I passed in the course of my journey, were agreed on this point. I myself, as well as my fellow-traveller, and my Hottentots, together with a boor and his whole family at *Gaurits Rivier*, heard a wolf imitate sheep and lambs. That the noise came from the wolf we had reason to conclude, partly from our having heard it from the place where he discovered himself, both before and afterwards, by his usual and peculiar howl; partly because all the sheep were near at hand, and had been all reckoned before they were folded; and indeed, partly because the bleating was emitted in rather too sharp a tone, and so little like the natural sound, that even the dogs belonging to the farm were sensible of the trick, and ran out that way barking violently; but what kind of wolf this was, nobody could inform me with any certainty.

A little farther on I shall have occasion more particularly to relate, how we were disturbed in a desert place by a great body of wolves, which, in consequence of the infernal noise they made, might, in former times, easily have induced the superstitious shepherds to believe any conceit whatever, that the first emotions of their terror could inspire.

In *Lange Kloof*, near *Gantzze Craal Rivier*, I was shewed a little piece of skin, which was said to be that of a wolf.

In

In its colour it came nearest to that of our Swedish wolves, but the hair was coarser and harsher, and was, in my opinion, different from that of both the other sorts of hyæna above-mentioned. The skin I have described as corresponding with the *canis hyæna*, I bought just before my departure from the Cape of the late lord lieutenant, or *land-rost* of *Zwellendam*; who told me, it had been presented to him by a peasant living in the northern part of his district. This same peasant, he said, pretended it was the skin of a very rare and uncommon animal. It might be, perhaps, that by this means he wished to enhance the value of his present, though very possibly in a certain respect it was rare for him; for wolves are heard, I had almost said, every night; are hardly ever shot, and very seldom caught, though for this purpose the country people build little houses, in which they put stinking carcases by way of bait. The wolf creeping in here and treading on a spring, a hatch falls down immediately, and shuts him in.

I cannot help once more repeating it, as being something peculiar, that the skin above described was covered with hairs, a great part of which were above a foot long. As in the warmest countries the animals are often found most deficient with respect to hair; and again as it is in the cold climates alone, especially against the winter sets in, that one sees these creatures protected from the severity of the season by furs and long shaggy hair; and as nature does nothing without design, nothing without the wisest intentions, the question has suggested itself to me, what

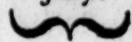
1775.
July.
~

occasion can the *hyæna canis* have, in so warm a climate as that he inhabits, for so hairy and warm a covering? This however may, perhaps, be extremely necessary in the cold caverns of rocks, and the subterraneous holes which are allotted to this beast of prey for his habitation. It seems to me likewise to be very serviceable in the cold, dark, and rainy nights, which are the principal times for this animal to hunt in. Times that moreover, are probably very critical for such *gazells* and *antilopes* as are sick and superannuated. But may not this fur likewise serve to take off from the sharpness of this animal's hunger? A good cover for a horse in winter is, according to the usual expression, equal to half its food: now nature, whose riches and bounty we acknowledge in other particulars, does not show a less careful provision in regard to the animal I am speaking of. It is necessary that the animal kingdom should be kept in due order and a just equilibrium; and she makes use of certain animals for this purpose, and therefore has endued the *hyæna* with a wonderful degree of vigilance, with other means to answer these her intentions to their full extent; but being unwilling, and indeed too generous, perpetually to lavish the more inoffensive part of the animal creation to the utmost stretch of this creature's voracious appetite, she hits upon other methods between whiles to assuage and damp it. In the same manner as to the other beasts of prey, she has given to the wolf likewise the faculty of sleeping out the greatest part of its life, by which means it eats the less; and this creature's warm fur, does not a little promote nature's intentions in this respect.

The

The lion, indeed, is now almost extirpated from this part of the country; though it sometimes happens, that one or two of them come hither farther from the northwards. One of these animals was said to have done much mischief at about eleven miles distance from the bath, at the time that I was there.

1775.
July.



C H A P. V.

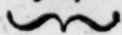
Journey from the Warm Bath to Zwellendam.

1775.
July.

THE time was now come for me to quit the bath, in order to set out upon the long journey I had in view. Mr. IMMELMAN likewise now came to me from the Cape, to bear me company according to his promise. But, contrary to my expectation, there was something still wanting of the greatest importance.

The peasant, who had undertaken to equip me with what was necessary for my journey, had taken me in, not only by selling me a team of wretched oxen, but likewise in the driver he procured me. Though he had hired him for me at seven rixdollars per month, exclusive of his victuals and tobacco, the fellow knew still less of the road than we did ourselves. This same driver had likewise neglected his duty, in omitting to procure us a Hottentot to lead our oxen. I had every reason to think, that this omission was made on purpose, in order that we might not penetrate far into the country; in which case he himself would have the fewer dangers and difficulties to undergo, and the wear and tear of my waggon would be the less; for I plainly perceived, that his principal, or the farmer whom I had commissioned to

to agree with him for me, had buoyed himself up with the hopes, that he should get my waggon dog cheap at my return. I therefore agreed with another, who was reckoned a steady and experienced man; but he, as soon as we imparted to him in confidence our intentions of visiting the more distant parts of the country, not only begged to be off the bargain, but likewise sincerely and from the bottom of his heart, advised us to stay at home. By this means we were quite put to our shifts, not knowing how to get an inch farther. Though we now would have gladly put up with the Lego-Hottentots only, we met with a refusal likewise from them, on our sending to a couple of *craals*, or communities, at the distance of eleven miles from us, in order to make a bargain with them. They excused themselves on the account that a great many of their young men were just dead, and some of them were still sick. It seemed they were afflicted with a bilious fever, a disorder which in general is rather uncommon at the Cape, and is always most fatal to slaves. But as it was now very rife, and ran very high among the colonists themselves, they were universally alarmed, and my fellow traveller as much as any of them. I, for my part, being an European physician, and used to much more dangerous epidemics, was in no concern whatever, except on account of the mortification and shame I experienced at finding myself in danger of putting an end to my journey for want of a driver. Indeed, I now wished within myself, and not without reason, to have it in my power to exchange one or two of the seven sciences for the art of driving oxen. At length, however, the bastard Hottentot, who lived near the bath in a hut made of hurdles,

1775.
July.

1775.
August.

dles, and who by the bye was but a fad fellow, finding his wife and child begin to recover from their putrid fever, undertook, in consideration of some medicines he had had of me, but chiefly in consideration of the hard money I paid him down upon the nail, to drive my waggon; but no farther than to *Zwellendam*, where Mr. IMMELMAN was in hopes of getting Hottentots easier. In the mean while, in default of ox-leaders, we were obliged, though on horse-back, to condescend, by means of a long rope, ourselves to perform this office, which in Africa is looked upon in the lowest light imaginable. To give this disagreeable affair a better colour, we gave ourselves credit wherever we went for undertaking this piece of drudgery, as being the best method to get rid of the greatest impediment in our journey, and as freeing us from the necessity of making low submissions to our inferiors, and of being too troublesome to others for their assistance. By this means, indeed, we made the good people cry us up for what bare necessity forced us to; but, for all that, we were neither better nor worse than ox-leaders.

On the 26th of August we left the bath, and arrived in good time at *Steenbock-rivier*, where my patient lived who had paid me for my visits with milk and meat, during my residence at the bath. He had for many years past used the bath himself for a violent swelling and erysipelas in one of his legs, but was now already relieved by the use of issues, the leaves of elder, &c. on which account he sold me the spirits I wanted to preserve my animals in, at a very reasonable rate, and at the same time persuaded me to stay there that night; but to the great terror and disquietude

quietude of my fellow-traveller, he lodged us in the same room in which his son had lately lain ill of a putrid fever. He afterwards gave us a few provisions for our journey, and would oblige us to borrow a porridge-pot of him, which I then considered as a troublesome superfluity, but afterwards found that by pressing it upon us he had done us a peculiarly kind office.

1775.
 August.

On the 27th we set out again on our journey, and as the road was good and even all the way, and my Hottentot assured me that he could do very well without any leader, we let him go forward while we rode up to the farm near the road, where we were treated by the owner of it with a rare and delicate dish; a sort of sparrow or finch (*loxia capensis*) broiled: a bird that does much mischief in the corn-fields, but with its black and yellow plumage makes a beautiful appearance. I have observed, that this little animal, at the approach of summer, always changed its yellow for a blood-red hue.

Our driver, indeed, had not much the start of us; but though we pushed very fast after him, we were not able to overtake him before the evening came on; we began to fear we had gone out of our road, when at length we met with a drunken European, who was not ashamed to offer himself to be my servant, after having acknowledged that, in company with my Hottentot, he had been getting drunk with the contents of my brandy-cask. At length we overtook our Hottentot, who, not so drunk as his companion, denied the fact, though the mail of the lock belonging to the cask above-mentioned, was actually broke off. Having taken off the oxen, and unsaddled our horses at the farm
 called

1775.
August.

called *Gantze Craal*, I found that he had likewise filled several bottles, in order to treat himself and a couple of rascals of his own kidney, a bastard and a slave, who had come thither with a waggon.

As the mischievous disposition of the savages is carried even to madness, and becomes extremely dangerous when they are overloaded with liquor, I took the brandy from them; but they had already drank themselves to such a pitch of frenzy and boldness, as to give me to understand, that, in case they parted with their beloved brandy, they thought of nothing but revenge and murder. As we had seen a Christian equally guilty with them, we thought we might and ought to bear with them till the next morning, with all the coolness and prudence, which the prosecution of our journey and the present posture of our affairs required.

In the mean time I was obliged to sleep all night long in my waggon to take care of my brandy, by which means I got fresh cold; for this same farm of *Gantze Craal*, lay on the other side of the river *Zonder End*. The next morning we forced our valiant pot-companions, who were now sober, to ask pardon; and at noon, having found a serpent, we put it alive into the cask, in the presence of every one. My comrade now told them, they might drink as much as they pleased without lett or hinderance, and added, with a careless air, that in that case he should hope soon to have the pleasure of seeing them burst with poison, with other things to that purpose. These conditions they did not venture to accept; but gave us plainly to perceive, that they envied the venomous creature the pleasure of being drowned in

in so delicious an element. I now, however, secured my lock in the best manner I was able, that I might not lose any more of my spirits, in which I wanted to preserve animals of all sorts. Since this, I have heard it reported of the Hottentots living a good way up in the country, that they are not afraid of the least ill effects ensuing from swallowing the poison of serpents, even in an undiluted state: but on the contrary, look upon it as a medicine, and a preservative against the dangerous consequences ensuing from the bite of these animals. How the uncultivated Hottentots should arrive to the knowledge, that the poison of serpents may be swallowed without danger, it is not easy to conjecture, at least not with a sufficient degree of probability; but it appears to me most likely, that the Europeans and Asiatics were first apprized of this fact, by such as had in vain attempted to take away their own or others lives by means of the poison of serpents *. So that I had still reason to fear, that the Hottentots would not be able to keep themselves from this delicious liquor, though they knew that there was a venomous animal preserved in it. I had long before this experienced something of the kind at *Bott-rivier*, where a slave had intoxicated himself by drinking some spirits out of a little vessel in which I kept a toad and the

1775.
August.

* Noxia serpentum est admixto sanguine pestis;

Morsu virus habent, & fatum dente mirantur:

Pocula morte carent.

LUCAN. L. IX. v. 614—616.

So long ago at least, as the times in which this poet wrote, has it been observed, that the poison of serpents has no effect, except it be mixed with the blood; and indeed, the *Pylli* are irrefragable proofs, that this property of serpents has been known in Africa from time immemorial. They sucked the poison out of the wounds of persons bitten by these animals, and handled and caressed them, as the modern Egyptians do at this present time, without being hurt by them in the least:

—— Superincumbens pallentia vulnera lambit,

Ore venena trahens.

Ibid. 933.

1775.
August.

foetus of a *bystrix*. Neither could I preserve my brandy from the depredations of my troublesome visitors, till having put several animals into it, and these being shaken to pieces by the jolting of the waggon, the most inebriating vapours of the brandy, by the assistance of the sun shining upon them, were changed into effluvia that were highly disgusting, in consequence of the animal particles they contained.

Our patience seemed destined to be tried still farther, in the beginning of our journey, by several trifling misfortunes; I was obliged to stay here two days to seek every where, though in vain, after one of the best cattle in my team. It was a bull, though in Africa these are very seldom broke in for drawing burdens. It is true they are very hardy, and not so apt to be scared by wild beasts, but then they are likewise more unruly. Notwithstanding this, they had sold me two oxen so restive, that my Hottentots, any more than myself, could not take them out or put them into the waggon without the greatest fear and caution. They were all too old and lean for a journey of the extent of that which we had undertaken, and every one of them had some peculiar fault besides: in fine, I had got the refuse of the peasant's worst oxen. Besides, I was so far cheated in the bull, that having excited the jealousy of some other bulls, he was butted out of the field by them; and as he had been hunted away over a river, was supposed to have taken his flight home; so that we could not help suspecting, that the farmer had this in view when he sold him to me. So liable are we to think ill of those who have already deceived us. As I had no opportunity of purchasing a tolerable beast in the room of that which I had lost, I was obliged to drive from this place with only eight oxen; a circumstance that fell heavy

heavy enough upon them; besides this, the odd one ran loose by the side of the others, and gave us a great deal of trouble.

1775-
August.

On the 30th we arrived at *Tiger-bock*, where we put up. This is a farm which government holds in its own hands. On account of its great distance from the Cape, no advantage can accrue to the company from the vending of corn; but their most considerable income is timber, which is fetched from a wood on the other side of *rivier Zonder-end*, where the company keeps a party of wood-cutters, which is under the inspection of a corporal, who is at the same time bailiff of this farm, and has better pay than any corporal in the garrison. He is likewise to superintend the grafs-land and dairy for the advantage of government, and to give an account of the profits.

The river *Zonder-end* was now swelled up to its banks, and difficult to pass, for which reason I omitted paying a visit to the wood that lies here; chiefly as the proper time for felling the trees was not yet come, and as I had besides resolved upon going to much larger forests, viz. *Groot Vaders Bosch*, and *Houtniquas*. On the banks of the river a *craal*, or community of Hottentots, to the amount of about thirty persons, is said to reside, together with their herds. The christians, in fact, would, it is supposed, have elbowed these likewise out of this situation, had not government found an interest in permitting them to be near its territories here.

The men belonging to this *craal*, for instance, were at this time ordered to the Cape with several of the company's waggons; for which service, however, they received payment: so that I could not hope to have any of them for my own use. A Hottentot or two worked at the

A a 2

farm,

1775.
August.

farm, and their yearly wages, besides their victuals and tobacco, were said to consist of a ewe or two with lamb, or a heifer with calf, or else the value of them in money. They are accustomed, however, chiefly to take cattle for their wages; but when they have got a little before-hand in the world, they go to house-keeping, and are too much at their ease to undertake any kind of service whatsoever.

This, perhaps, is the best opportunity I can take to give a somewhat more accurate description of this race of men; namely, the original inhabitants of the southernmost part of Africa, who are known by the name of Hottentots.

With regard to their persons, they are as tall as most Europeans; and as for their being in general more slender, this proceeds from their being more stinted and curtailed in their food, and likewise from their not using themselves to hard labour. But that they have small hands and feet compared with the other parts of their bodies, has been remarked by no one before, and may, perhaps, be looked upon as a characteristic mark of this nation.

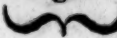
The root of the nose is mostly very low, by which means the distance of the eyes from each other is greater than in Europeans. In like manner, the tip of the nose is pretty flat. The iris is scarcely ever of a light colour, but has generally a dark brown cast, sometimes approaching to black.

Their skin is of a yellowish brown hue, which something resembles that of an European who has the jaundice in a high degree; at the same time, however, this colour is not in the least observable in the whites of the eyes. One does not find such thick lips among the *Hottentots* as among their neighbours the *Negroes*, the

Caffres,

Caffres, and the *Mozambiques*. In fine, their mouths are of a middling size, and almost always furnished with a set of the finest teeth that can be seen; and taken together with the rest of their features, as well as their shape, carriage, and every motion; in short, their *tout ensemble* indicates health and delight, or at least an air of *sans souci*. This careless mien, however, discovers marks at the same time both of alacrity and resolution; qualities which the Hottentots, in fact, can show upon occasion.

1775.
August.



The head would appear to be covered with a black, though not very close, frizzled kind of wool, if the natural harshness of it did not show, that it was hair, if possible, more woolly than that of the negroes. If in other respects there should, by great chance, be observed any traces of a beard, or of hair in any other parts of the body, such as are seen on the Europeans, they are, however, very trifling, and generally of the same kind as that on the head.

Notwithstanding the respect I bear to the more delicate part of my readers, the notoriety of the fact prevents me from passing over in this place those parts of the body, which our more scrupulous, but less natural manners forbid me to describe any other ways than by the means of circumlocution, Latin terms, or other uncouth, and to most readers, unintelligible denominations and expedients. But those who affect this kind of reserve must pardon me, if I cannot wrap up matters with the nicety their modesty requires; as my duty obliges me to show how much the world has been misled, and the Hottentot nation been misrepresented; inasmuch as the Hottentot women have been described, and believed to be, in respect to their sexual parts, monsters by nature; and that the men were made such by
a bar-

1775.
August.

a barbarous custom. It has been thought, for example, that these latter were, at the age of ten years, by a kind of castration, deprived of one of those organs, which nature gives to every male, as being absolutely necessary for the propagation of his species; and that the former, or the women, have before their privy parts a natural veil or covering, a circumstance unheard of in the females of any other part of the globe.

Deferring to a farther opportunity the arguments which are deducible from the absurdity of the thing itself, and the little dependence to be had on the testimony of the relater, I shall only in this place present the reader with what I am in a condition to relate with absolute certainty, being the result of the enquiries, which out of a due regard to truth, and in respect to the importance of the subject, I thought myself obliged to make.


The men are at present by no means monorchides, though, perhaps, the time has been when they were so; some other time, however, I shall make a stricter enquiry into the matter, and thus give my readers an opportunity of judging for themselves.

The women have no parts uncommon to the rest of their sex; but the *clitoris* and *nymphae*, particularly of those who are past their youth, are in general pretty much elongated; a peculiarity which undoubtedly has got footing in this nation, in consequence of the relaxation necessarily produced by the method they have of besmearing their bodies, their slothfulness, and the warmth of the climate.

In order to finish the picture I have here given of the Hottentots, the next thing I have to describe is their dress, and

and method of painting themselves. This latter (if painting it may be called) consists in besmearing their bodies all over most copiously with fat, in which there is mixed up a little foot. This is never wiped off; on the contrary, I never saw them use any thing to clean their skins, excepting that when, in greasing the wheels of their waggon, their hands were besmeared with tar and pitch, they used to get it off very easily with cow-dung, at the same time rubbing their arms into the bargain up to the shoulders with this cosmetic: so that as the dust and other filth, together with their sooty ointment and the sweat of their bodies, must necessarily, notwithstanding it is continually wearing off, in some measure adhere to the skin, it contributes not a little to conceal the natural hue of the latter, and at the same time to change it from a bright umber-brown to a brownish-yellow colour obscured with filth and nastiness.

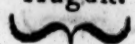
1775.
August.



What has enabled me to determine the natural complexion of the Hottentots to be of an umber-yellow colour, was merely the scrupulous nicety of some few farmers' wives, who made one or two of their Hottentot girls scower their skins, that they might not be too filthy to look after their children, or to do any other business that required cleanliness.

It is asserted by many of the colonists, that by this scowering and washing the Hottentots looks are not at all improved. They seem to think, that their natural yellow-brown hue was to the full as disagreeable as that which is produced by their besmearing themselves; and that a besmeared Hottentot looks less naked, as it were, and more complete,

1775.
August.



complete, than one in his natural state; and that the skin of a Hottentot ungrealed seems to exhibit some defect in dress, like shoes that want blacking, &c. Whether this fancy is most founded in custom or in the nature of things, I shall leave to others to determine.

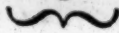
Besides the pleasure the Hottentots enjoy in besmearing their bodies from head to foot, they likewise perfume them with a powder of herbs, with which they powder both their heads and bodies, rubbing it in all over them when they besmear themselves. The odour of it is at the same time rank and aromatic (*narcotico seu papaverino spirans*) and seems to come nearest to that of the poppy mixed with spices. The plants used for this purpose are various species of the *diosma*, called by the Hottentots *bucku*, and considered by them as possessing great virtues in curing disorders. Some of these species are very common round about the Cape; but one particular sort, which I am told grows about *Goud's-rivier*, is said to be so valuable, that no more than a thimble full of it is given in exchange for a lamb.

The Hottentots, with their skins dressed up with grease and foot, and *bucku*-powder, are by this means in a great measure defended from the influence of the air, and may in a manner reckon themselves full dressed. In other respects, both men and women are wont to appear quite undressed; indeed, I may say naked, except a trifling covering, with which they always conceal certain parts of their bodies.

With the men this covering consists of a bag or flap made of skin, hanging quite open, the hollow part of which

which seems designed to receive that which with us modesty requires to be concealed; but as this piece of furniture is only fastened by a small part of its upper end to a narrow belt (See Plate VII. fig. 6.) in other respects hanging quite loose, it is but a very imperfect concealment; and when the wearer is walking or otherwise in motion, it is none at all. They call this purse by the Dutch name of *jackall*, the name of an animal of the fox kind common in that country, as it is almost always prepared of the skin of this creature, with the hairy side turned outwards.

1775.
August.



As another covering, which decency requires of the men, we ought perhaps to consider the two leather straps, which generally hang from the bottom of the chine of the back down upon the thighs; each of them being of the form of an *isosceles* triangle, with their points or upper ends fastened on the belt just mentioned, and with their bases, at farthest three fingers broad, hanging carelessly down. These straps have very little dressing bestowed upon them, so that they make somewhat of a rattling as the Hottentot runs along; and probably by fanning him, serve to produce an agreeable coolness. The only and real intention, however, of this part of their dress, is said to be to close a certain orifice when they sit down. They are at that time, in like manner, brought forwards, each on its particular side, so as to cover and close over the little flap above described; for, said they to me, these parts should by no means be uncovered when one sits, especially at meals. Nevertheless, I observed them sometimes neglect this decent custom.

1775.
August.



Among the Hottentots, as well as in all probability among the rest of mankind dispersed over the whole globe, we must acknowledge the fair sex to be the most modest; for the females of this nation, cover themselves much more scrupulously than the men. They seldom content themselves with one covering, but almost always have two, and very often three. These are made of a prepared and well-greased skin, and are fastened about their bodies with a thong, almost like the aprons of our ladies. The outermost is always the largest, measuring from about six inches to a foot over. This is likewise generally the finest and most showy, and frequently adorned with glass beads strung in different figures, in a manner that shows, even among the unpolished Hottentots, the superior talents and taste of the fair sex relative to dress and ornament, as well as their powers of invention and disposition to set off their persons to the best advantage.


The outermost apron, which is chiefly intended for show and parade, reaches about half way down the thighs. The middle one is about a third, or one half less, and is said by them to be necessary by way of reserve, and as an additional entrenchment of modesty, when their gala-garment is laid aside. The third, or innermost, which is scarcely larger than one's hand, is said to be useful at certain periods, which are much less troublesome to the fair sex here than in Europe. All these aprons, however, even to that which is decorated with beads, are not less besmeared and greasy than their bodies.

So that it was probably some of these aprons, particularly the innermost, which misled the reverend jesuit

TACKARD,

TACKARD, who, on his return to Europe, first propagated those stories concerning the natural veils or excrescences of the Hottentot women. These females, moreover, are careful, as a matter of decency, to pull their aprons tight about them, so as to reach under their seat when they sit down.

1775.
August.



In other respects, the garment worn by the Hottentots for covering their bodies is a sheep-skin, with the woolly side turned inwards; this pellisse, or a cloak made of some smaller fur, is tied forwards over the breast. When the weather is not cold, they let it hang loose over their shoulders in a careless manner, when it reaches down to the calves of the legs, leaving the lower part of the breast, stomach, and fore part of the legs and thighs bare; but in rainy and cold weather they wrap it round them; so that the fore part of the body likewise, is in some measure covered with it as far as below the knees.

As one sheep-skin alone is not sufficient for this purpose, there is a piece sewed on at the top on each side, (or to speak more properly) fastened on with a thong, sinew or catgut. In warmer weather they wear this cloak sometimes with the hairy side outwards, but in that case they oftener take it off entirely and carry it on their arms. In general, the Hottentots do not burden themselves with a great many changes of these cloaks or *krosses*, (as they call them in broken Dutch) but are content with one, which serves them at the same time for clothing and bedding; and in this they lie on the bare ground, drawing themselves up in a heap so close, especially when the wea-

1775.
August.


ther is cold, that this *krofs* (as they call it) or *karofs*, is quite sufficient to cover them.

The cloak, or *karofs*, which is used by the women for the same purpose, does not differ from those used by the men in any other respect, than that the women have a long peak on their *karoffes*, which they turn up, forming with it a hood or little pouch, with the hairy side inwards. In this they carry their little children, to which their mothers breasts are now and then thrown over the shoulders, a practice that likewise prevails with some other nations.

The men in general wear no peculiar covering on their heads. I scarce remember to have seen above two, that had a cap made of a greased skin, the fur of which had been taken off in the preparation. Those who live nearest to the colonists, fancy the European hats, wearing them flouched all round, or else with one side turned up.

The women in like manner frequently go bare-headed. When they cover their heads, it is with a cap in the form of a short truncated cone. It is made without any seam, of the segment of some animal's stomach, and is as black as foot mixed up with fat can make it. These are frequently so prepared, as to look as if they were shaggy, and others again like velvet, and upon the whole make a tolerably handsome appearance. (See Plate IX.)

Over this cap they sometimes wear another ornament, consisting of an oval wreath, or, if the reader pleases, a crown made of a buffaloe's hide, with the brown hair outwards. (See Plate VII. fig. 5.) This is about the breadth
of

1775.
August.


of four fingers in height, and furrounds the head so as to go a little way down upon the forehead, and the same depth into the neck behind, without covering the upper part of the cap above described. Both edges of this wreath, as well the lower one on which it rests, as the upper one, are always smooth and even, and each of them set with a row of small shells, of the *cyprea* kind, to the number of more than thirty, in a manner, that being placed quite close to each other, their beautiful white enamel, together with their mouths, is turned outwards. Between these two rows of shells run one or two more in a parallel line, or else are waved or indented in various tastes. It may easily be imagined, what a pretty effect these shells have, sticking out of the brown fur of the buffaloe's skin, and at the same time, with what additional charms a greasy Hottentot dame appears in a cap and wreath to the full as greasy as herself.

The ears of the Hottentots are never adorned with any pendant or other ornament hanging from them, any more than the nose, as they both are among other savages; this latter, however, is sometimes by way of greater state, marked with a black streak of foot; or, more rarely indeed, with a large spot of red-lead; of which latter, on high days and holidays, they likewise put a little on their cheeks.

The necks of the men are bare, but those of the women are decorated with what is, in their opinion, a great ornament. It consists of a thong of undressed leather, upon which are strung eight or ten shells. These, which are about the size of beans, have a white ground, with large black spots of different sizes; but as they are always made

use

1775.
August.



use of in a burnished state, I cannot say with any degree of certainty, whether they are of that sort which is received in the *System of Nature* under the denomination of *nerita albicilla*, or *exuvia*. Appearing collectively in the form of a necklace, they certainly adorn the greasy part they are hung upon, though perhaps not in proportion to the price at which they are obtained; for these shells are commonly sold for not less than a sheep a piece, as it is said they are to be had no where else than on the most distant coast of Caffria. (See Plate VII. fig. 2.)

The lower part of the body is the principal place on which both sexes, by more showy ornaments, seemingly wish to fix each others attention. For though they very much fancy, and consequently purchase the glass beads of Europe, especially the blue and white ones of the size of a pea, yet the women rarely, and the men never, wear them about their neck; though both sexes tie one or more rows of these beads round their middle, next the girdle to which the coverings or aprons above-mentioned are fastened.

To conclude, another ornament in use with both sexes, is rings on their arms and legs. Most of these rings are made of thick leather straps, generally cut in a circular shape, which by being beat and held over the fire, are rendered tough enough to retain the curvature that is given them. It is these rings that have given rise to the almost universally received notion, that the Hottentots wrap guts about their legs, in order to eat them occasionally. The men wear from one to five or six of these rings on their arms, just above the wrist, but seldom any on their legs.

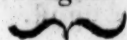
The matrons of a higher rank frequently have a considerable number of them both on their arms and legs, especially on the latter, so that they are covered with them from the feet up to their knees. (See Plate IX.) These rings are of various thickneses, viz. sometimes of that of a goose-quill, and sometimes two or three times that size. Now and then they are made of pieces of leather, forming one entire ring, so that the arms and feet must be put through them when the wearer wishes to put them on. Upon the legs they are strung on, small and great, one with another, without any peculiar nicety; and are so much larger than the legs, as to shake off and get twisted, when the wearer walks or is in motion.

1775.
August.



It may easily be imagined, that these rings give the good Hottentot matrons a world of trouble, as well in the wear as in the preparation; and at the same time are not a little clumsy and ponderous, not to mention several other inconveniencies. But such is the peculiar turn of mankind, that from the Hottentot, as unconstrained as rude in his manners, to those nations which carry the arts and sciences to the highest degree of perfection, they are universally apt to fall into such modes of dress, as are not only useless, but likewise in a great measure imprison their bodies and limbs.

Rings of iron or copper, but especially of brass, of the size of a goose-quill, are considered as genteeler and more valuable than those made of leather. They are, however, sometimes worn along with these latter, to the number of six or eight at a time, particularly on the arms. The girls are not allowed to use any rings, till they are marriageable. A traveller, that was passing through the district of *Zwelen-
lendam,*

1775.
August.

lendam, endeavoured to assail the chastity of a Hottentot girl, about sixteen or seventeen years of age, but in every other respect quite a woman: it is said, however, that she refused his presents and offers, principally for this reason, that the old people in her *craal* had not yet invested her with the privilege of wearing rings. Whether this same law prevails in every *craal*, I cannot pretend to say; but it does not seem extremely probable to me, that the girls in every *craal* are so obedient to the laws.

The *Hottentots* seldom wear any shoes. Those that are in use with the Hottentots hereabouts, as well as a great many more of their countrymen, are of the form represented in Plate VII. fig. 4. The same are worn likewise by most of the *African* peasants, and, as I have since heard, by the *Esthonians* and *Livonians*, and also by some Finlanders; so that I cannot say for certain, whether they are the invention of the Hottentots, or brought to them by the Dutch. The leather of which these shoes are made is undressed, with the hairy side outwards; and undergoes no other preparation, than that of being beat and moistened. If it be of a thick or stout sort, as for example, of buffaloe's hide, it is besides kept some hours in cow-dung, by which means it is rendered very soft and pliable. Afterwards some kind of grease is made use of for the same purpose. The shoes are then made of this leather in the following manner: they take a piece of leather of a rectangular form, something longer and broader than the foot of the person for whom the shoes are intended. The two foremost corners are doubled up together, and sewed down, so as to cover the forepart of the foot. This seam may be avoided, and the

the shoes may be made much neater at the toes, by fitting immediately over them a cap taken from the membrane in the knee joint of the hind leg of some animal. Now in order to make this piece of skin or leather rise up to the height of an inch on both sides of the foot, and close it in neatly, it is pierced with holes at small distances all round the edge, as far as the hind quarters, and through these holes is passed a thong, by which the rim is drawn up into gathers; farther, in order to make strong hind-quarters, the back part of the piece of leather is doubled inwards, and then raised up and pressed along the heel. The ends of the thong, or gathering-string, are then threaded on both sides through the upper edge of the hind-quarters to the height of about two inches; they are then carried forwards, in order to be drawn through two of the above-mentioned holes on the inside of each rim. They are then tied over the instep, or, if it be thought necessary to tie the shoe still faster, they are carried crossways over the instep, and so downwards under the thong, which comes out from the hind-quarters, then upwards again over the ankle, and even round the leg itself, if the wearer chuses.

1775.
August.

Shoes of this kind are certainly not without their advantages. They fit as neat upon the foot as a stocking, and at the same time preserve their form. They are easily kept soft and pliable, by constantly wearing them. Should they at any time grow rather hard above the edge, this is easily remedied by beating them and greasing them a little. They are extremely light and cool, by reason that they do not cover so much of the foot as a common shoe does. They wear very well, as they are without any seam, and

1775.
August.

the soles, or rather bottoms of the shoes, are both tough and yielding. As shoes of the common tanned leather are burnt up, as it were, and are apt to slip and slide about in the scorching African sands, and at the same time are easily torn in a stony and rocky soil, these field shoes, as they are called, made of almost raw leather, are much more durable. These may be likewise had at a much inferior price, as the leather used in the making of them is almost entirely undressed; and a man can make himself a pair of them in the space of an hour or two. Some advantage, especially with regard to œconomy, would, in my opinion, accrue, if the use of these shoes was, in some measure, introduced amongst us, particularly in summer time. To sailors they would seem, as being very light, to be particularly useful. I have brought home with me a pair of them, that I wore in my expedition into the country, that they may serve for a model, in case any body should be inclined to have a pair made by way of making a trial of them. Whatever is useful, whether it come from *Paris* or the country of the *Hottentots*, alike deserves our attention and imitation.

The Hottentots who live in these parts, or within the boundaries of the Dutch colonies, seldom make use of any weapons. Here and there, indeed, a man will furnish himself with a javelin, by way of defence against the wolves: this is called a *bassagai*, and is delineated in Plate VIII. fig. 1 and 2, and will be described farther on, when we come to speak of the more distant nations of the Hottentots.

Their habitations are as simple as their dress, and equally adapted to the wandering pastoral life they lead in those parts. In fact, they scarcely merit any other name than

that of huts; though, perhaps, as spacious and eligible as the tents and dwelling-places of the patriarchs, at least they are sufficient for the Hottentot's wants and desires; who may therefore be considered as a happy man, in being able in this point likewise so easily to satisfy them. The great simplicity of them is, perhaps, the reason, why in a Hottentot's craal, or village, the huts are all built exactly alike; and that one meets there with a species of architecture, that does not a little contribute to keep envy from insinuating itself under their roofs. The equality of fortune and happiness in some measure enjoyed by these people, cannot but have a singular effect in preventing their breasts from being disturbed by this baneful passion.

 1775.
August.

Every hut is disposed in the following manner. Some of them are of a circular, and others of an oblong shape, resembling a round bee-hive or a vault. The ground-plot is from eighteen to twenty-four feet in diameter. The highest of them are so low, that even in the center of the arch, it is scarcely ever possible for a middle-sized man to stand upright. But neither the lowness thereof, nor that of the door, which is but just three feet high, can perhaps be considered as any inconvenience to a Hottentot, who finds no difficulty in stooping and crawling on all fours, and who is at any time more inclined to lie down than stand.

The fire-place is in the middle of each hut, by which means the walls are not so much exposed to danger from fire. From this situation of their fire-place, the Hottentots likewise have this additional advantage, that when they sit

1775.
August.

or lie in a circle round the fire, the whole company equally enjoys the benefit of its warmth.

The door, low as it is, is the only place that lets in the day-light; and at the same time, the only outlet that is left for the smoke. The Hottentot, inured to it from his infancy, sees it hover round him, without feeling the least inconvenience arising from it to his eyes; while lying at the bottom of his hut in the midst of the cloud rolled up like a hedgehog, and wrapped up snug in his sheep-skin, he is now and then obliged to peep out from beneath it in order to stir the fire, or perhaps light his pipe, or else sometimes to turn the steak he is broiling over the coals.

The materials for these huts are by no means difficult to be procured; and the manner of putting them together being both neat and inartificial, merits commendation in a Hottentot, and is very suitable to his character. The frame of this arched roof, as I have described it above, is composed of slender rods or sprays of trees. These rods, being previously bent into a proper form, are laid, either whole or pieced, some parallel with each other, others crosswise; they are then strengthened, by binding others round them in a circular form with withies. These withies, as well as the rods themselves, are taken, as well as I can recollect, chiefly from the *cliffortia conoides*, which grows plentifully in this country near the rivers. Large mats are then placed very neatly over this lattice-work, so as perfectly to cover the whole. The aperture which is left for the door is closed, whenever there is occasion for it, with a skin fitted to it, or a piece of matting. These mats are made of a kind of cane or reed. These reeds, being

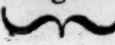
being laid parallel to each other, are fastened together with sinews or catgut, or else some kind of packthread, such as they have had an opportunity of getting from the Europeans. They have it, therefore, in their power, to make their mats as long as they chuse, and at the same time as broad as the length of the rush will admit of, viz. from six to ten feet. This same kind of matting is now made use of likewise by the colonists, next to the tilts of their waggons, by way of preventing the sail-cloth from being rubbed and worn by them, as well as of helping to keep out the rain.

1775.
August.

When a Hottentot has a mind to take his house down and remove his dwelling, he lays all his mats, skins, and sprays on the backs of his cattle, which to a stranger makes a monstrous, unwieldy, and, indeed, ridiculous appearance.

The order or distribution of these huts in a craal or clan, is most frequently in the form of a circle with the doors inwards; by this means a kind of yard or court is formed, where the cattle is kept on nights. The milk, as soon as taken from the cow, is put to other milk which is curdled, and is kept in a leather sack; of this the hairy side, being considered as the cleanlier, is turned inwards: so that the milk is never drank while it is sweet. In certain northern districts, such as *Roggeveld*, or *Bokveld*, where the land is, as it is called, *carrow*, or dry and parched, the Hottentots, as well as the colonists, are shepherds.

There is another species of Hottentots, who have got the name of *boskies-men*, from dwelling in woody or mountainous places. These, particularly such as live
round

1775.
August.


round about *Camdebo* and *Sneeberg*, are sworn enemies to the pastoral life. Some of their maxims are, to live on hunting and plunder, and never to keep any animal alive for the space of one night. By this means they render themselves odious to the rest of mankind, and are pursued and exterminated like the wild beasts, whose manners they have assumed. Others of them again are kept alive, and made slaves of. Their weapons are poisoned arrows, which, shot out of a small bow, will fly to the distance of two hundred paces; and will hit a mark with a tolerable degree of certainty, at the distance of fifty, or even a hundred paces. From this distance they can by stealth, as it were, convey death to the game they hunt for food, as well as to their foes, and even to so large and tremendous a beast as the lion: this noble animal thus falling by a weapon which, perhaps, it despised, or even did not take notice of. The Hottentot, in the mean time, concealed and safe in his ambush, is absolutely certain of the operation of his poison, which he always culls of the most virulent kind; and it is said, he has only to wait a few minutes, in order to see the wild beast languish and die.

I mentioned that their bows were small; they are, in fact, hardly a yard long, being at the same time scarcely of the thickness of an inch in the middle, and very much pointed at both ends. What kind of wood they are made of I cannot say, but it does not seem to be of a remarkably elastic nature. The strings of the bows that I saw were made some of them of sinews, others of a kind of hemp, or the inner bark of some vegetable, and most of them are made in a very slovenly manner; which shows, that these archers depend more
on

on the poison of their weapons, than on any exactness in the formation of them, or any other perfection in them. One of these bows is delineated in Plate VIII. fig. 3.

1775.
August.



Their arrows are a foot and a half long, and of the same thickness, as they appear in the drawings in Plate VIII. fig. 6, 7. They are made of a reed one foot in length, which, at the base, or the end that receives the bow-string, has a notch of a proper size to fit it. Just above this notch there is a joint in the reed, about which strings made of sinews are wound, in order to strengthen it. The other end of the reed is armed with a highly polished bone, five or six inches long. At the distance of an inch or two from the tip of this bone, a piece of a quill is bound on very fast with sinews, in the same manner as may be seen in fig. 4 and 7. This is done, in order that the arrow shall not be easily drawn out of the flesh; and thus there may be so much the longer time for the poison, which is spread on of a thick consistence like that of an extract, to be dissolved, and infect the wound.

It is not common, however, for an arrow to be headed in the manner above-mentioned, with a pointed bone only; this latter being usually cut square at the top, and a thin triangular bit of iron fixed into it, as may be seen in Plate VIII. fig. 4. where the upper part of the arrow is represented without any poison on it; for with this the binding is covered and besmeared, the same being afterwards rubbed down level and smooth all round the shaft, that the arrow may pierce so much the deeper into the flesh. As the bone before spoken of has no cavity whatever, I do not profess to know what animal it is taken from.

1775.
August.



from. In the state in which it is seen, as it makes part of the arrow, it is of a dark brown colour, full of small grooves and ribs, and does not appear ever to have been as white as ivory; though, for one of the arrows which I brought with me, it would seem as if ivory had been really made use of. Hence we may conclude, that on such arrows as are headed with iron, the bone is employed chiefly for giving this weapon a kind of weight and poise; and likewise, that these arrows cost the Hottentots a great deal of labour.

Their quivers (vide Plate VIII. fig. 5.) are two feet long and four inches in diameter. If one may draw any conclusion from those I have seen, and from two that I have brought home with me, they are made of a branch of a tree hollowed out; or, still more probably, of the bark of one these branches taken off whole and entire, the bottom and cover to which are composed of leather. On the outside it is bedaubed with an unctuous matter, that grows hard when dry. Both the quivers I brought with me, are lined about the aperture with a serpent's skin; and, as I was told, with the skin of the yellow serpent, which is considered as the most venomous of any in that country. Besides a dozen of arrows, every quiver contains a slender hone of sand-stone for whetting the iron head, and a brush for putting on the poison, together with a few wooden sticks, differing in thickness, but all of the same length with the arrows. For what use these are designed, I am entirely ignorant. The poison is taken from several different kinds of serpents, the more venomous the better; whether their arrows are to be employed against their foes,
or

or are only designed for shooting game; for, as I have observed before, the Hottentots know very well, that taken internally it is quite harmless.

1775.
August.

The dwellings of these foes to a pastoral life are generally not more agreeable, than their maxims and manners. Like the wild beasts, bushes and cliffs in rocks by turns serve them instead of houses; and some of them are said to be so far worse than beasts, that their soil has been found close by their habitations. A great many of them are entirely naked, but such as have been able to procure the skin of any sort of animal, great or small, cover their bodies with it from the shoulders downwards as far as it will reach, wearing it till it falls off their backs in rags. As ignorant of agriculture as apes and monkeys, like them they are obliged to wander about over hills and dales after certain wild roots, berries, and plants (which they eat raw) in order to sustain a life that this miserable food would soon extinguish and destroy, were they used to better fare.

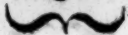
Their table, however, is sometimes composed of several other dishes, among which may be reckoned the larvæ of insects, or those kind of caterpillars from which butterflies are generated; and in like manner a sort of white ants, (the *termes*) grasshoppers, snakes, and some sorts of spiders. With all these changes of diet, the *Bosbies-man* is nevertheless frequently in want, and famished to such a degree, as to waste almost to a shadow. It was with no small astonishment, that I for the first time saw in *Lange Kloof* a lad belonging to this race of men, with his face, arms, legs and body so monstrously small and withered, that I could not have been induced to suppose but that he had

1775.
August.

been brought to that state by the fever that was epidemic in those parts, had I not seen him at the same time run like a lapwing. It required but a few weeks to bring one of these starvelings to a thriving state, and even to make him fat; their stomachs being strong enough to digest the great quantity of food with which they are crammed, as they may rather be said to bolt than eat; it sometimes happens, indeed, that they cannot long retain what they have taken in; but this circumstance, it is said, does not hinder them from beginning again upon a new score.

The capture of slaves from among this race of men is by no means difficult, and is effected in the following manner. Several farmers, that are in want of servants, join together, and take a journey to that part of the country where the *Boshies-men* live. They themselves, as well as their *Lego-Hottentots*, or else such Boshies-men as have been caught some time before, and have been trained up to fidelity in their service, endeavour to spy out where the wild Boshies-men have their haunts. This is best discovered by the smoke of their fires. They are found in societies from ten to fifty and a hundred, reckoning great and small together. Notwithstanding this, the farmers will venture on a dark night to set upon them with six or eight people, which they contrive to do, by previously stationing themselves at some distance round about the *craal*. They then give the alarm by firing a gun or two. By this means there is such a consternation spread over the whole body of these savages, that it is only the most bold and intelligent among them, that have the courage to break through the circle and steal off. These the captors are glad

glad enough to get rid of at so easy a rate, being better pleased with those that are stupid, timorous, and struck with amazement, and who consequently allow themselves to be taken and carried into bondage. They are, however, at first, treated by gentle methods; that is, the victors intermix the fairest promises with their threats, and endeavour, if possible, to shoot some of the larger kinds of game for their prisoners, such as buffaloes, sea-cows, and the like. Such agreeable baits, together with a little tobacco, soon induce them, continually cockered and feasted as they are, to go with a tolerable degree of chearfulness to the colonist's place of abode. There this luxurious junketting upon meat and fat is exchanged for more moderate portions, consisting for the most part of butter-milk, frumenty, and haasty-pudding. This diet, nevertheless, makes the *Boshiesman*, as I said before, fat in a few weeks. However, he soon finds his good living embittered by the maundering and grumbling of his master and mistress. The words *t'guzeri* and *t'gaunatsi*, which, perhaps, are best translated by those of *young sorcerer* and *imp*, are expressions which he must frequently put up with, and sometimes a few curses and blows into the bargain; and this for neglect, remissness or idleness: which last failure, if it cannot be said to be born with him, is however in a manner naturalised in him. So that, both by nature and custom, detesting all manner of labour, and now, from his greater corpulency, becoming still more slothful, and having besides been used to a wandering life, subject to no control, he most sensibly feels the want of his liberty. No wonder then, that he generally endeavours to regain it by making

 1775.
August.


1775.
August.

his escape: but what is really a subject for wonder is, that, when one of these poor devils runs away from his service, or more properly bondage, he never takes with him any thing that does not belong to him.

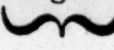
This is an instance of moderation in the savages towards their tyrants, which is universally attested, and at the same time praised and admired by the colonists themselves; which, however, I cannot easily reconcile with what I have learned of the human heart. Is it in consequence of their fearing to meet with harder usage in case they should be retaken? Thus far, however, is certain, that none of this species of Hottentots are much given to violence or revenge. Free from many wants and desires, that torment the rest of mankind, they are little, if at all, addicted to thieving, if we except brandy, victuals, and tobacco. It is not improbable likewise, that the advantages accruing from a theft may be overlooked by them, when their thoughts are taken up with regaining their liberty, the greatest of all treasures. It is necessary to observe here, that some of the *Hottentots* or *Bosbies-men*, who are thus forced into the service of the colonists, live in small societies peaceably and quietly, in desert tracts, where the colonists cannot easily come at them, and are sometimes in the possession of a few cows. These people probably originate from *Bosbies-men* who have run away from the colonists service.

I must confess, that the Hottentots, who are in some husbandmen's service, are treated in the gentlest manner, and, perhaps, even without ever having a harsh word given them, live very well with regard to provisions, are well clad relatively to their condition in life, and are very comfortably

fortably lodged, in comparison of what others are, in their own straw cottages. The chief of their business, perhaps, consists in tending a herd of cattle or flock of sheep during the heat of the day, when they have an opportunity of getting into a gentle state of intoxication by smoking tobacco; a state which excites in them sensations of as agreeable a nature, as the frenzy produced by spirituous liquors and opium seems to afford to many others, who are never at ease but when they can procure themselves this delicious pleasure. And yet, though they may thus agreeably pass away the otherwise tedious hours of their lives in smoking and sleep, they nevertheless generally run away. The colonists wonder at this, as a procedure entirely devoid of reason; without perceiving that in so doing, they suppose the Hottentots not endued with a desire, which has its immediate foundation in nature, and which is common to the human race, and even to most brute animals, viz. an earnest longing after their birth-place, and families, and especially after their liberty.

The slave business, that violent outrage to the natural rights of mankind, always in itself a crime, and which leads to all manner of misdemeanours and wickedness, is exercised by the colonists with a cruelty towards the nation of *Bosbies-men*, which merits the abhorrence of every one; though I have been told, that they pique themselves upon it: and not only is the capture of the Hottentots considered by them merely as a party of pleasure, but in cold blood they destroy the bands which nature has knit between husbands and their wives and children. Not content, for instance, with having torn an unhappy woman from the embraces of her

1775.
August.



1775.
August.

her husband's, her only protection and comfort, they endeavour all they can, and that chiefly at night, to deprive her likewise of her infants; for it has been observed, that the mothers can seldom persuade themselves to flee from their tender offspring.

The amiable tenderness of the mother, which, perhaps, glows with a more lively flame in the breast of this poor heathen, than in those of her Christian tyrants, is the very circumstance laid hold on by their persecutors, in order to rivet the chains of this wretched female so much the faster. There are some mothers, however, that set themselves free, when they have lost all hopes of saving their children. After having made their escape, they sometimes keep secretly about the neighbourhood, in hopes of finding some opportunity of recovering their infants again: for oh! what grief to a mother, bred and born to taste the sweets of liberty, and now lately oppressed by the heavy chains of bondage, to reflect, that her offspring's life is only preserved, in order that it may be rendered miserable by an intolerable slavery. But, unhappy mothers! whilst involved in these painful reflections, they wander up and down, less in fear of the wild beasts than of the colonists, they, perhaps, in the end, fall a prey to some of these fierce animals, or not unfrequently perish with hunger: for as soon as they have eloped, men are set to lie in ambush for them at such places by the rivers sides, as it is supposed they must take in their way, and by this means they are often retaken. And, though they should reach their own homes in safety, they may even then very possibly happen to be whipped up by some peasant and carried into slavery.

Without doubt, the Boshies-men have been a long while in a savage state, and many of them are now brought into a still more miserable situation, since the Christians have invaded their country, and pursue them with chains and fetters into their deserts. In so savage a state, they probably neither have, nor ever had, many manners or customs different from those few I have already mentioned, or may describe in the course of this work.

1775.
August.

With respect to religion and language, the *Boshies-men* agree in a great measure with the more civilized part of their nation, or the *Hottentots* properly so called. These are not sensible of the existence of any being, who is the origin and ruler of all things; for, on being questioned, they say they know nothing of the matter.

Some Hottentots, who spoke the Dutch language readily, and with whom, both in company and separately, I conversed on this subject, always answered me to this effect; *We are poor stupid creatures, and have never heard, neither are we able to understand, any thing of the matter.* And, in fact, they soon let me perceive, that they are weary with puzzling their brains with topics of this kind. Several Dutch families, that had spoken the Hottentot language from their infancy, as well as their own, have given me to understand, that they had found the same degree of ignorance in the Boshies-men; yet that, as both Boshies-men and Hottentots have the firmest belief in the powers of magic, they seem consequently by this to acknowledge some evil being of great might and power: but that they by no means on this account worship him, or indeed any other, although they seem to attribute to him all the evil that

1775.
August.

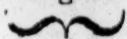
that happens; among which they reckon, without exception, all rain, cold and thunder. Many of the colonists have likewise assured me, that their *Bosbies-men* of either sex, used in stormy weather to abuse the thunder with the words, *t'guxeri* and *t'gaunazi*, and other reproachful expressions; and at the same time, in a furious manner, with their shoes or any thing else that was at hand, threaten and bid defiance to the flashes of lightning and peals of thunder that flashed and rolled over their heads. It would be in vain to try to make them sensible, that the vegetable creation, whence they, as well as the brute animals, were nourished, would without rain wither and be entirely dried up: even the Hottentot I afterwards took into my service at Zwellendam, persisted, in spite of all my objections, obstinately in the opinion, that notwithstanding this consideration, rain was always an evil, and that it would be a happy circumstance were it never to rain. A maxim of this kind from a race of men, in other respects really endued with some degree of sense, and frequently with no small share of penetration and cunning, ought, methinks, to be considered as an indelible religious or superstitious notion entertained by them from their infancy, rather than as an idea taken up on due deliberation and consequent conviction. At the same time, though they did not appear to be of a very chilly nature, they never shewed the least signs of being displeased with the hottest days of summer.

The more simple of every race of Hottentots, or the common run of them, from which number very few deserve to be excepted, have so firm a confidence in such
cheats

cheats of either sex, as set up for magicians and conjurers, that they even sometimes solicit these people to put a stop to the thunder and rain. With a view of obtaining consideration, besides being well paid, these pretended wizards are ready to undertake every thing: but if, for instance, it should happen to continue to thunder or rain longer than they expected, and consequently have promised, they plead in their excuse, that another conjurer, who either has more skill, or is better paid than themselves, throws obstacles in their way by a kind of counter-magic. Many of these simple creatures believe, that almost all disorders are brought on by means of magic, and are only to be cured by the same means. The wizards, on their parts, are not backward in cherishing this idea; but take care, notwithstanding, in such cases to apply both external and internal remedies. Among the external may be reckoned, their sometimes ordering their patient to lay on his face, when they set themselves on his back, and pinch and cuff him about, and beat him all over, till at length they shew him a bone, larger or smaller just as it happens, which they assert had been conjured into him; but which they, by their great skill and dexterity, have extracted, either from his nose, ears, or some other part of his body. It frequently happens, that the patient is relieved by an operation of this kind; and if he is not, he undergoes several of them. And then if he dies, his friends only lament, that he was bewitched beyond the power of any one to assist him. In all likelihood, the conjurer on these occasions, by a dexterous sleight of hand, deceives both the credulous patient and those about him. A boor informed me, that when he was

1775.
August.

1775.
August.



a child, and among other play-things had the leg-bone of an ox, which he used as a cart, it appeared to him to his great astonishment, that it was sucked out of a sick person's back by one of these wizards ; and, as far as he could trust to his memory, he recollected that the patient got quite well after this operation. A wizard that was taken by a party of Hottentots to a lion-hunt, in order to exercise his magic power upon the lion, was soon torn in pieces by the animal. Several boors took occasion from this incident to reproach the Hottentots with their credulous partiality towards these fellows ; but they still persisted in their sentiments, being rather inclined to think, that some more powerful magician, a foe to the deceased, had brought this misfortune upon him. So that a conjurer among these people lays the more simple of them under a kind of contribution by his superior cunning, just as ours do our country folk ; but, on the other hand, more frequently runs the risque of being suspected of occasioning the mischief that happens.

A Caffre prince chanced in his old age to have sore eyes, and could get no cure for them. He therefore ordered all those that were skilled in magic to be put to death, wherever they were found ; no doubt, on the same principle as Herod did the children in Bethlehem, thinking that in the number he might happen to hit on the man who had bewitched him. This prince is said to have been living but a few years ago ; his name was PALOO, which by most of the colonists was converted into *Pbaraob*. Of the princes who reigned over the different nations of Caffres, while I was in Africa, the most powerful was said to be *Amabote* or *Tamus*.

Tamus. A chief among the Hottentots, called Captain RUYTER, of whom I shall have occasion to speak by and by, is also reported to have persecuted and put to death some forcerers, whom he suspected of having brought a disease on him by witchcraft.

1775.
August.

Though the Hottentots are so superstitious, yet they are not, as far as I know, in the least afraid of being in the dark. They seem, however, to have some idea of spirits, and a belief in a future state, as they accost their friends as soon as they are dead with reproaches for leaving them so soon; at the same time, admonishing them henceforth to demean themselves properly; by which they mean, that their deceased friends should not come back again and haunt them, nor allow themselves to be made use of by wizards, to bring any mischief on those that survive them.

There is a genus of insects (the *mantis*;) called by the colonists the *Hottentot's god*; but so far are they from worshipping these insects, that they have more than once caught some of them, and given them to me to stick needles through them, by way of preserving them, as I did with other insects. There is, however, a diminutive species of this genus of insects, which some think it would be a crime, as well as very dangerous, to do any harm to; but this we have no more reason to look upon as a kind of religious worship, than we have to consider in the same light, a certain superstitious notion prevalent among many of the more simple people in our own country, who imagine, that three sins will be forgiven them, if they set a cock-chafer on its feet that has happened to have fallen upon its back.

1775.
August.

The moon, according to KOLBE, receives a kind of adoration from the Hottentots. But the fact is, that they merely take the opportunity of her beams, and at the same time of the coolness of the night, to amuse themselves with dancing; and consequently, have no more thoughts of worshipping her than the christian colonists, who are seen at the same time strolling in great numbers about the streets, and parading on the stone steps with which their houses are usually encircled.

That the artful conjurers themselves are most of them without either superstition or religion of any kind, is highly probable. There are seemingly here likewise many other free-thinkers, among whom I cannot help reckoning a Hottentot from *Buffeljagts-rivier*, whom I some time after this period took into my service as my ox-leader. He informed me, that a wizard came to his craal several different evenings, and setting himself down in one of their huts, told them, by way of divination, that the wolf was doing them a great deal of mischief in their sheep-folds (at the same time mentioning the particulars,) and would do them still more, if they did not hasten to the relief of their flocks. The people of the craal accordingly sallied forth, and found it was as the soothfayer had told them; in consequence of which, they conceived the highest degree of respect for him, and rewarded him handsomely into the bargain. Some time after, however, they discovered, that their loss was not occasioned by the wolves, but by some neighbouring Hottentots, whom they, not without reason, supposed to have been in the plot with the soothfayer. What other general remarks I have to make on

on the subject of the Hottentots and *Bosbies-men*, I shall defer at present, and return to the regular course of my journal.

1775.
August.

On the 30th of August at *Tiger-boek*, where I before observed we were just arrived, I was informed, that the doctrines of christianity had been formerly preached there to the Hottentots, and received by them with great avidity and zeal. It was still, as I was told, within the memory of several of the inhabitants, that one of the converts, an old female Hottentot, was living, and used to perform her devotions every morning on her bare knees, by the side of a spring situated near this spot. It was said, she had a German Bible, which she often read and treated with the greatest veneration; and that her behaviour throughout life was decent and quiet. My informers added, that the missionary who had converted her, had been banished out of the country, for having illegally made himself a chief among the Hottentots in these parts, in order to enrich himself by their labour, and the presents they made him of cattle. It was supposed, that he was so far guilty of what was alledged against him, inasmuch as it both was then and is now prohibited, under divers penalties, for any one to buy, or otherwise acquire the possession of any cattle belonging to the Hottentots. That this missionary's name was GEORGE SMID, and that he was a *Moravian* or *Herrnbuter*, I found on my return home in the *Budingische Sammlung einiger in die Kirchen-Historie*, &c. (printed at Leipzig, 1742) wherein, art. 7. from page 78 to 126, there is some account of this affair, under the title

1775.
August.

title of *Jungstes Diarium des Bruders Georg Smid, zur probe des Wandels dieses knechts des Herrn unter den Hottentotten* *.

This extract of the journal or letter above-mentioned, is carried from November 15th, 1739, to November 18th, 1740; and at that time dated from *Serjeant-rivier*, a small branch of the *rivier Zonder-end*, or the river near which lived the converted Hottentot woman. In this letter we are informed, that the number of converts was thirty-two, and that the new christians did not unfrequently neglect both their work and their hours of devotion in order to amuse themselves in a garden, which, in all probability was common.

At page 683 of this collection, there is inserted another letter from this same SMID, dated the 15th of May, 1742; from which we learn, that he had by baptism augmented the congregation with five more sisters in Christ; as likewise, that he had lived there as missionary five years, and intended to stay there four years longer: so that there is no doubt, but that the Hottentots might be easily converted to the christian faith: but it is much to be doubted, whether any body will ever trouble themselves with the conversion of these plain honest people, unless it should appear to have more connexion than it seems to have at present with political advantages.

Soon after we arrived at this farm, two Hottentot girls, from fourteen to seventeen years of age, made their appearance, well besmeared, and, in their fashion, very smart-

* The last Diary of brother GEORGE SMID, being a testimony of the carriage and conduct of this servant of the Lord among the Hottentots.

1775.
August.

ly dressed. Without any great degree of vanity we could plainly perceive, that the visit was made on our account; out of gratitude, therefore, as well as from a natural regard for the fair sex, we addressed these (I am in doubt whether to call them beautiful or frightful) young ladies with all the handsome speeches we thought would be most acceptable in such circumstances. At their request we likewise presented them with a fine piece of roll-tobacco, of which they cut off a little, filled their pipes with it, and smoked in a very elegant style. Our host took that opportunity to let us know, that we should please them much better with a little brandy than with all our compliments; we therefore brought a couple of glasses of it for each of them, and they stuck pretty close to it, applying to it with great assiduity while they were smoking their pipes. We likewise had the pleasure soon of seeing them grow a little lively, without venturing to drink a drop more, or allowing the least freedom. At length they took their leave of us in a very discreet manner, and I was very much pleased to see so much modesty and decency in girls belonging to so uncivilized a nation. But when they got out of doors, these mad-caps had the boldness to defy us to run after them and catch them. We soon gave over the chase, but as often as we turned back they came after us, and defied us again. At length the elder of them while she was running, not only fell down, but even seemed to wait for us in that position. So unexpected a circumstance gave us no small concern, as it made us begin to suspect the girl's virtue, till she drew a large knife, and threatened to plunge it into our hearts, if we dared

1775.
August.

dared to approach any nearer. As the difference of circumstances and opportunities has a great influence on the nature of things, and particularly with respect to the fair sex, I thought it would be proper in this place to relate the whole affair just as it happened, without drawing any general conclusion from it. I am nevertheless convinced, that the Hottentots are more cold and moderate in their desires of a certain nature than many other nations; qualities which are the natural consequence of the dull, inactive, and I had almost said, entirely listless disposition, which is the leading characteristic of their minds; qualities which likewise are necessarily produced by the debilitating diet they use, and their extreme inactivity and sloth; which carried to a certain point, increase, but in extremes deaden and benumb both the physical and moral sensations.

On the 31st, we here met with a middle-aged man, a colonist, who offered to drive my waggon for six rixdollars per month; but altered his mind as soon as we had told him, that he must be content to undergo the same inconveniencies and hazards as Mr. *Immelman* and I were, at all events, prepared to subject ourselves to. The next day, therefore, we took our leave of this place, as much to seek as when we first arrived there. In our road we found a little *Hottentot's craal*, which, if I remember right, consisted of five huts, run up in the manner I have described above; but covered with such miserable old mats, that the owners seemed to be much more afraid of the trouble, trifling as that would have been, of making new, than of the inconveniencies attending the droppings of the

1775.
August.

eaves in wet weather. The inhabitants of this craal consisted of about twenty people. They had run up a very wretched inclosure for their sheep and cattle, which were then at grass, and seemed to be very numerous. As I wished to try if I could not hire a Hottentot or two into our service, the oldest man in the craal presented his son to me, a youth of nineteen or twenty years of age, saying, that he could be very well spared in the craal, in case I could persuade him to follow me. Upon this I crept into the young man's hut, and found him lying under his cloak, in the way I have described above when speaking of his countrymen in general, with his knees drawn up to his nose, almost like a *fœtus in utero*. I spent a great deal of time to no purpose, in representing to him the great advantages he would gain by going with us; such as a cow with calf, knives, brass tinder-boxes, glass beads, and other tempting articles; in short, presents to an uncommon value, all which I offered him as a premium for half a year's service; but as I considered it equally base to deceive a poor Hottentot as any other person, I did not dissimble to him, that our expedition would be of some duration: though, on the other hand, as the Hottentot nation is not absolutely insensible to the pleasures of the chase any more than to the calls of ambition, I at the same time represented to him, that an expedition of this sort would of itself afford him no small degree of pleasure, and on his return would give him some consequence in the eyes of his companions; but all was in vain. With as little success did I endeavour to set before him the pleasure he would have in smoking a better sort of tobacco, a

1775.
August.

quantity of which I had taken with me, and intended to bestow it very plentifully on any one that should accompany me in my journey. I likewise put him in mind, that he would not find so costly an article as tobacco, nor even victuals abound greatly, if he staid at home.

Notwithstanding all this, I found him absolutely immoveable in soul as well as in body; excepting, indeed, that with regard to the latter, he now and then threw out a whiff of tobacco from the left side of his chops; and that two or three times, on my repeatedly requesting him to let me know his mind on the subject, he at length, though not without some difficulty, prevailed on himself to open his mouth, and answer me with a short but decisive, *No!* The extreme indolence of the lad, his very cavalier reception of me, the clouds of smoke that filled his cabin and made my eyes smart most horribly, together with the swarms of fleas I observed in it, excited in me just at that time the greatest indignation, as well as the utmost contempt for the Hottentot nation: though, when I afterwards came to consider the matter more impartially, as the lad, from his habits as well as nature, could very easily make shift with a moderate quantity of food, and with this could and actually did enjoy what to him was a real substantial pleasure, viz. his ease and tobacco, I could not well suppose that my offer would have any weight with him.

At last, however, I made him another proposal of a different nature, which was, that he, for a very moderate premium, should, for a few days only, help us to lead our oxen to *Zwellendam*, where I was in hopes of getting somebody in his room. To this he answered as quick as thought,

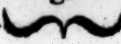
thought, *Ja, Baas, (Yes, Master,)* got up in an instant, and had nothing more to do than to hang his tobacco-pouch on his arm, in order to be quite ready for his journey. After this, he went straight to my waggon, and with all the ease and alacrity imaginable, did every thing that was requisite to it; so that he no longer appeared to be the same lazy fellow, with whom I had just before been bargaining.

1775.
August.

The principal reason of this disposition that prevails with most Hottentots is, perhaps, that their wants are extremely few; and consequently, being without care or employment of any kind, they are inactive and idle. From this cause again, a famine or general want of the necessities of life arising, will naturally stimulate their usually half-starved bodies into activity and vigorous motion, at least, till their more pressing wants are relieved. On the other hand, such children of Hottentots, or Boshies-men, as from their tender years have been in the service of the colonists, and have been used to work, do not yield the palm of briskness and agility to any other nation whatever. It appears to me, therefore, that one cannot accuse any natural disposition of theirs, as being a hindrance to their rising from their present very barbarous and unpolished state to a much higher degree of civilization.

Though the father of the Hottentot I had just hired did not take the least part in his son's resolve, yet at their parting he showed, that he possessed the affections of a father. In fact, they seemed to take a tender farewell of each other; on which occasion, the old man repeatedly importuned us in the most friendly manner to use his son kindly.

1775.
August.



There blew from the sea, which was at that time but a small distance from us, a cold south-east wind, and my companion was seized with his old troublesome cough and spitting of blood, which continued till we arrived at night at a farm called *Groote Vlake* (the Great Plain.) But, as we had no provisions with us, and the farm was inhabited merely by slaves, who had nothing but cold water and a little coarse and doughy bread to entertain us with; and as besides the spitting of blood was somewhat relieved by some saltpetre which I had taken with me, as well as by the fact my companion had been obliged to keep, though fore against his will, he did not chuse to stay here longer than the following noon, but plucked up courage sufficient to continue his route on horseback as before. In the mean time we entered into chat with the principal slave, who informed us, that he had been several times bought and sold: and that this last time, notwithstanding his age, which was not less than fifty years, yet in consideration of his well-known fidelity, and of the dependence that might be placed in him, he had been bought in at an auction for a bailiff by a niggardly farmer, who, on that account, had thought it worth his while to purchase him at so high a price as a hundred and ten rixdollars. Upon which, the poor fellow observed, that he had not fared better with his singular fidelity, than other slaves who were remarkable for their great strength of body; since he had found his burthen of care and responsibility increased upon him in the same degree, as these latter experienced the augmentation of their loads. Indeed, the lot and reward of both were like those of old worn-out horses, viz. to be neglected and starved

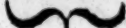
starved in their old age, in case they did not before that period sink into the grave under the pressure of their bondage. I then informed him, that slavery was not tolerated in my country; and it seemed to give him great pleasure in the midst of his misfortunes to think, that in some part of the world, however, the natural rights of mankind were held more sacred than they were in those colonies.

The state of the weather for the month of August was as follows. The 1st and 2d days cloudy, on the 7th and 8th violent rains and north-easterly winds. On the 9th mizzling rain. On the 21st, 23d, and 29th it rained with the wind at south-east. All the other days of this month were fair with sunshine.

I had, as I mentioned before, lost in my way to the bath the small thermometer, according to the scale of which the degrees have been hitherto given. So that subsequent to this period it was from another thermometer of Fahrenheit's, procured for me by Mr. IMMELMAN from the Cape, that my observations were made, which I shall continue to give in the same manner as I began at page 112. On the 22d and 23d the thermometer was at 56—24th therm. 53—29th therm. 56—30th therm. 52—31st therm. 48. This month seemed to correspond nearest with the month of May in our northern climates.

On the 1st of September we passed by two farms in *Hessaquas Kloof*, or vale, through which our road lay. As Kolbe makes mention of a nation of Hottentots by the name of *Hessaquas*, they probably dwelt formerly in this vale. From hence the road took us to the *Breede-rivier*, (as it is called) where there was a ferry-boat, in which we were
put

1775:
September.



1775.
September.

put over with our saddle-horses and waggon, but the oxen were made to swim across.

Notwithstanding that the river was at this time very wide and deep, yet during part of the summer its waters are said to fall so prodigiously, that one may both ride and drive over it with ease. Directly on the other side of this river there was a farm, where we took up our night's lodging.

On the 2d we continued our journey till we came to *Zwellendam*. This place, which I have marked in the map with the letters O V C interwoven with each other, or the Dutch company's mark, is the residence of a *landroft*, as he is called, who is the governor of the whole eastern tract of the African colonies. Here was a large handsome edifice built for him, and two other lesser ones for two of his assistants or chief officers.

The *droft* gave us a good reception, and a bed at night. He likewise procured us two Hottentots from a neighbouring *craal*, to assist us in our journey. So that my two first were dismissed our service according to our previous agreement; though the youth, who had made such a great difficulty of accompanying me, was now very loth to part with me. The *landroft* perceiving that I had got but indifferent oxen in my waggon, offered me a whole team of much better: but, though I was told that I might have them on credit, I would not venture to deal any more in oxen, especially as my former bargain had turned out so bad. Besides, being but a stranger, I was more afraid of a usurer than of any of the wild beasts in Africa; neither did I think that it would now answer to the expence, as
this

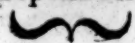
this year had already set in as if it would be the driest in the memory of man. Otherwise, had I been able to afford another team of oxen, I should doubtless have made a much longer journey, as well as more advantageous for natural history.

1775.
September.

The people at this place pretended to have observed, that the wind, when it blew from the south-east at the Cape, was always northerly with them; and that, when it had ceased raining at the Cape, they had still slight showers at Zwellendam. They likewise informed me, that a very fatal distemper prevailed there every winter among the horses, but that it never made its appearance at *Slangenrivier* and *Potteberg*, although both these places lie not far from Zwellendam, as may be seen in my map. It was supposed, that the salt-water which the horses were obliged to drink at both these places, was what preserved them. It is probable, however, that the sea-winds purify the air in those parts; and, on the contrary, that the northerly wind which comes to Zwellendam from the interior part of the country, brings with it vapours very noxious to the health of the horses; especially as it was observed, that such horses as were kept up in the stable, were hardly ever seized with the distemper. The nature of the disorder was such, that a horse would die almost instantaneously; sometimes without any visible symptom preceding it, and sometimes after a tumor had appeared on the chest or groin.

It was here that I saw for the first time in my life one of those animals called *quaggas* by the Hottentots and colonists. It is a species of wild horse, very like the *zebra*; the difference consisting in this, that the quagga has shorter ears,

1775-
September.



ears, and that it has no stripes on its fore legs, loins, or any of its hind parts.

This partial resemblance has been the occasion of Mr. EDWARDS's delineating the *quagga* with the title of the *female zebra*. But in that very work both the quaggas and zebras are species totally different the one from the other, keeping in very different tracts of country, and those frequently very distant from each other. The females of each species are marked like their respective males, excepting that the colour is somewhat more lively and definite in these latter.

That the zebras discover some trifling variations from each other with respect to their streaks, particularly down the legs, may be perceived by comparing the different skins of this animal; which, as I have remarked above, are sold by the furriers under the denomination of *seaborse* skins. I have never had an opportunity of comparing together the skins of quaggas, but have very little doubt that there is likewise some trifling difference between them.

A full grown foetus of a quagga, which I brought with me from the Cape, and keep stuffed with straw in the cabinet of natural history belonging to the Royal Academy of Sciences, seems to have livelier colours than I have observed in the adult animal. The length of this foetus, from the ears to the tail is thirty-one inches, and its height about the loins twenty-two inches. The quagga I saw here, having been caught when it was very young, was become so tame, that it came to us to be caressed. It was said never to be frightened by the hyæna, but, on the contrary,

contrary, that it would pursue this fierce animal, whenever this latter made its appearance in those parts; so that it was a most certain guard for the horses, with which it was turned out to graze at night.

1775.
September.

That these quaggas might be broken in for the saddle or harness, I have not the least doubt; as just before my departure for Europe, I saw one driven through the streets in a team with five horses: but with the zebra nobody has yet made any fair trial in this particular. I was told, indeed, that a wealthy burgher near the Cape, brought up and tamed some of them with this view; and likewise, that once he was absurd enough to take it into his head to harness them all to his chaise, though they were not in the least accustomed either to the harness or yoke. The consequence was, that they directly ran back into the stable with the carriage and their master in it with such prodigious fury, as to deprive him and every one else of all desire to make any farther trials of this kind. There can be no doubt, however, but that quaggas or zebras, properly tamed and broke in, would, in many respects, be of greater service to the colonists than horses: as, in the first place, they are more easily procured here; and next, being used to the harsh dry pasture, which chiefly abounds in Africa, they seem to be intended by nature for this country; while, on the other hand, horses are universally very nice in their food. I believe I have already remarked, that both horses and oxen in this country are in general weaker than ours; of which the dry pastures abounding in it, were in all probability the principal cause. The quagga that I saw here at this time, was in such good condition, and

1775.
September.

so plump about the back and loins, as, I believe, in that point, not to be equalled by any horse; and though both quaggas and zebras have small feet, yet at the same time their hoofs are hard, and, perhaps, like asses, they are more sure-footed than horses. I cannot deny, that with good horses the people here are used to hunt down the zebras with ease: but who knows, whether both zebras and quaggas would not become quicker in their paces by frequent riding and exercise. Had the colonists tamed them and used them instead of horses, in all probability they would have been in no danger of losing them, either by the wolves or the epidemic disorder, to which the horses here are subject.

Here was a vineyard planted for the use of the family, and it was the first I had seen since I left the bath. The wine produced by it did not come up to that at the Cape; which chiefly proceeded from the situation of the vineyard, and perhaps, likewise, in some measure, from its not being properly looked after.

On the 3d we continued our journey till we came to *Riet Valley*. This was the last farm to the eastward belonging to government, and was situated at a short distance only from *Zwellendam*. A corporal, as he is styled, had the inspection of this farm, and likewise superintended divers wood-cutters who worked in the neighbouring wood (called *Groot Vaders Bosch*) on the company's account. The people that had the care of the farm at *Riet Valley* were opulent and well-bred, and in a most hospitable manner absolutely obliged us to pass a couple of days with them; at the same time endeavouring to render themselves both

both agreeable and useful to us by the information they gave us, as well as by the assistance they afforded us in our researches; so much, indeed, that they even taught us, and made us practise speaking the Hottentot language.

1775.
September.

This is certainly, with respect to the pronunciation, the most difficult and singular language in the universe. Almost every word is pronounced with a smack or clacking of the tongue against the roof of the mouth. Words of many syllables are accompanied with two clacks; but what cannot but render this language still more difficult for strangers, is, that these clacks are said to be performed, according to different circumstances, in three different ways, viz. more or less forward or backward on the palate. This distinction, however, I had not from the Hottentots themselves, who were, perhaps, too ignorant to go so deep into the matter. For my part, I own that my ears were not nice enough to attend to such minute differences. I must likewise confess, that I did not take pains sufficient to get this point cleared up to me. Nevertheless I discovered, as soon as I got to *Houtniquas*, that another dialect was spoken there, and that it differed from the former in the more or less clacking used in the words. But it was sufficient for me to learn, in the course of my journey, partly for pleasure, and partly for use, some common words and phrases in the Hottentot language. Some of these I have given at the end of this journal. The smacks, or clacking with the tongue, I imagined it would be most convenient to denote by a t' with an apostrophe over it.

The *Chinese*, or *Snese Hottentots*, so called from their complexion, which is yellower than that of the other Hot-

1775.
September.

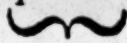
tentot nations, and therefore more like the *Chinese*, are likewise in their dialect very distinct from them. There is, however, so great a resemblance between them all, that they can in some measure understand each other. With a view to their mutual comparison, I have likewise added a sample of some of the words of this language, and likewise of that of the Caffres, which is not clogged with that clacking of the palate, as the Hottentot language is.

Notwithstanding this noise against the roof of the mouth, this last mentioned language does not sound ill, when the ear is somewhat accustomed to it; as the Hottentots pronounce it with as much ease and facility, as other nations do their respective languages. Farther up the country, where they have no other servants than Hottentots, the children of the Christians frequently learn the Hottentot language more easily, and before they do the Dutch. The same thing happens with regard to the *Malay* tongue in those places, where they make use of slaves, and especially of nurses, of that nation. So that, probably, all languages are almost equally easy for children: and, if we may form a conclusion from what we have just advanced, the tenderest age of childhood might be advantageously employed in learning several languages. At the Cape I have heard very young children speak two or three different languages with equal readiness and facility.

At this place, besides learning the Hottentot's language, I had an opportunity of informing myself, for the first time, concerning the progress of this people in music. One of their instruments is a bow, like a springe-bow, a foot in length, with a fine string of thread, to the end of which there

there is fixed in the same line a cloven quill half an inch long. The instrument is played on in the following manner: the musician, applying his mouth to the quill, draws in his breath very hard, so as to put it into a quivering motion, which produces a grating sound. This instrument is called a *t'Goerra*, a name which seems to be applicable enough to it, as tolerably well corresponding with the sound of the instrument.

1775.
September.




T'Gutbe is the name of another instrument, which, probably, was first made in imitation of our violin. It consists merely of a piece of board with three or four strings screwed on to it, on which they scrape with a bow.

T'Koi t'koi is a sort of drum, composed of a skin stretched over a calabash, or hollow block. The music is just what might be expected from such an instrument. As I was fortunate enough not to be often in the way of hearing their strains, and am besides no cognoscente, I have not been able to note them down, if, indeed, they can be expressed in notes. Their vocal music consists in singing a few notes, without annexing any words to them, or, at least, words that have any meaning. These remarks chiefly affect the Hottentots in this part of the country; for I much doubt, whether the Boshies-men have either *t'gutbes* or *t'goerras* among them.

It is so usual to find in poems and romances the shepherds and shepherdesses playing on their pipes, that my readers, no doubt, will expect to find the Hottentots who lead a pastoral life, employed in the same delightful occupation; and, indeed, so far it is true, that both the men and women have their pipes, but then they only use them
for

1775.
September.



for smoking. This instrument, which has far greater charms for them than all the music in the world, certainly merits a description, which we shall therefore attempt in this place.

The tobacco-pipes which are made use of in these parts, and, indeed, every where among the Hottentots (properly so called) are shaped pretty nearly like ours, being composed of a miserable wooden bowl, and a stem of equally coarse workmanship. Of the Boshies-men's pipes, as being sufficiently remarkable, I have given a drawing in Plate VII. where in fig. 3. is represented an elk's horn from a foot and a half to two feet in length, in the aperture of which, about two inches in diameter, (see fig. 3. a.) the Boshies-man contrives to squeeze the whole of his mouth in such a manner, that none of the smoke can escape or be lost, but passes entire, in a column proportioned to the size of the horn, into his throat, some part of it coming out again through his nostrils. To make amends for this, however, five or six gulps content him; a fit of coughing, hawking, and rattling in his throat ensues, which he, probably, considers as a very desirable consequence. He then hands this delicious horn to his next neighbour, that he may, in like manner, have the pleasure of fumigating his lungs; and in this way the horn circulates among them, women as well as men, just as the pipe does in Sweden, among a company of old women sitting under the chimney in alms-houses. One of the Boshies-men, whom I afterwards took into my service, when I passed through the desert in my way to *Bruntjes Hoogte*, once swallowed the smoke of his tobacco-horn with such avidity,

avidity, that I saw him fall down in a swoon in consequence of it. At fig. 3. the reader may see the stem of the pipe fixed at right angles on the side of the horn; and the bowl, which is sometimes made of wood, and sometimes of some loose pebble dug out of the ground, fastened on to the top of the stem.

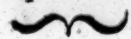
1775.
September.

I have likewise seen goat's horns employed for this purpose; but the preference is given to the elk's horns on account of their sharp points; they being so handy for the Hottentot to stick into the ground close by his side, so that not a particle of the tobacco can be lost. One of these tobacco-horns I have brought home with me, and keep it in the collection of the Academy of Sciences; though, having been for the use of a little Hottentot woman, it is smaller and neater than usual, being but thirteen inches in length; and the aperture at its base, to which the mouth is applied, an inch and a half across.

Their tobacco-pouches are made of the skin of a lamb, or of one of the smaller sort of antilopes entire, with the hairy side turned outwards; so that in this pouch the Hottentot has at the same time room enough for his pipe, tinder-box, and the rest of his implements for kindling a fire.

Beside the accurate information I received at this place on the subject of the Hottentot's music, language, and method of smoking, I had, the evening after my arrival there, an opportunity of seeing their card-playing. By this absurd name, the colonists have distinguished the following peculiar game among these people, which was played in this manner. Both my Hottentots, together with two others,

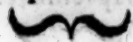
1775.
September.



others, made a *partie quarrée*, sitting on their hams, as is usual with other unpolished nations. The chimney, the part of the room constantly preferred by a Hottentot to any other, was likewise in this case the place they chose to occupy for playing this game; and the ash-hole might not unaptly be considered as their card-table, as it did not unfrequently happen, that in the midst of their ardour for the sport, they struck their hands into the middle of it, and raised the ashes into clouds of dust that floated all over the room, and almost blinded one. Now, as this sport seemed to consist in an incessant motion of the arms upwards, downwards, and across each other's arms, without ever seeming (at least on purpose) to touch one another, it appears to me, that the intention of this sport is to open the chest, as it were, whilst sitting, by way of succedaneum for dancing. It is probable, however, that with all this they observe certain rules, and in certain circumstances, mutually get the advantage over each other; as each of them at times would hold a little peg between his fore-finger and thumb, at which they would burst out into laughter, and, on being asked the reason, said, that they lost and won by turns, yet without playing for any thing. One of the party, however, grew weary in two hours time, and laid himself down to sleep; while the others kept on with the sport from evening till break of day, during the whole time continually and incessantly pronouncing, or rather singing, the following words, *bei pruah prbanka, bei ptruah t'bei, bei pruah ba*. Of these words they did not themselves know the meaning; and all the information they could give me on the subject was, that they had learned

learned them, together with the game, of some of their companions, who had been to pay a visit to the Indians a great way to the northward. Probably their *bei ptrua prhanka*, has no more meaning in it than the *fal lal deral* of the Europeans. I had before seen this game played a little at the Cape Town, by some Boshies-man boys that a butcher had brought home with him from *Schneeuwberg*, and I at this time gave orders for it to be played, on purpose to satisfy my curiosity.

1775.
September.

1775.
September.

C H A P. VI.

Journey from Zwellendam to Muscle Bay.

ON the morning of the 5th we took leave of our hospitable friends, and arrived at a farm on the other branch of Buffeljagts rivier. A little way from the farm there was a grove, from whence we heard the cries of a herd of monkies. Our host told us, that they set up this alarm, in order to give notice to each other of the approach of tigers, which are wont to pursue them up into the trees; when the only means these nimble little animals have of escaping, is to jump on to the slender twigs and branches of the tree that are most distant from the trunk, where the tigers dare not follow them. Mr. IMMELMAN, therefore, and myself, repaired to the place with our guns, with a view to partake, in some measure, of the sport. We were, however, out of luck, having only got a transient glimpse of the monkies; we could very plainly discern, however, that they were of a coal-black colour, and about the size of an ordinary cat; so that, in all likelihood, they form a peculiar species not yet known. It is said, that there are some of these animals in *Groot Vaders-bosch* and *Houtniquas*; though I did not see any there. What with
our

our sport, and what with botanizing, we staid so long here, that we could go no farther that day.

1775.
September.

On the 6th in the morning we ordered matters so *à-propos*, that we arrived at dinner-time at the house of a wealthy farmer, who was a captain in the militia, composed of his fellow peasants, or (as they are called) burghers. All such peasants as live in Roodezand, and the whole of that tract of country that lies to the eastward, are under the jurisdiction of Zwellendam, and are obliged, at a certain time of the year, to appear before the landroft, and perform their exercise. This falls very heavy on such as live at a great distance, some of them dwelling, perhaps, five hundred miles off; on which account likewise, they frequently pretend impediments, or else submit to pay the fine at once. A still larger corps, composed of the inhabitants of *Camdebo*, *Schneeuwberg*, *Bockeveld*, *Roggeveld*, *Anamaqua*, and the other places in that part of the country, are drawn up every year at *Stellenbosch*, where the landroft, or lord lieutenant of these districts has his residence. The burgessey at the Cape, and the peasants from Tigerberg are drawn up in the town itself. In the vicinity of this farm the *Tradaus-mountains* stretch away to the east, and upon one part of them is situated *Groot Vaders-bosch*. In the evening we lay at the farm called *Krofs-rivier* just by the side of the wood, in order to be near at hand for the purpose of botanizing.

This wood contained a great number of beautiful tall trees, the major part of which, however, being out of bloom, it could not be ascertained what species they were of. Most of those which I examined were entirely un-

1775.
September.

known to the botanists, and, probably, great part of the remainder are under the same predicament. It is, therefore, to be wished, that a botanist had an opportunity of remaining in this place the whole year throughout.

Beams, planks for flooring, and timber for the construction of waggon are fetched from hence both by the farmers and by government. Many sorts of shrubs and bushes in some places, particularly by the side of the wood, fill up the interstices between the larger trees, and render the forest impervious. Among these, several sorts of prickly *asparaguses* deserve to be remarked, as well as a new species of *callophyllum*; which, from its catching, like the thorn-bush, fast hold of the traveller with its hooked prickles, and keeping him from pursuing his journey, is commonly called here *wakt een betje*, or *wait a bit*.

On the 10th, in our way from hence, we had the misfortune to wander astray on horseback till a good while after midnight. Being but lightly clad, we were almost frozen to death, when we arrived at a farm near *Slangenrivier*; where, however, we had like to have waited in the open air till the morning, as the mistress of the house, who was left at home with her female slave only, did not much care (without taking a long time to consider of the matter) to give house-room to travellers so totally unknown to her as we were. Indeed, it was only by the barking of the dogs, that we had been enabled to discover this farm in the dark. The next morning we had the pleasure to see, that our Hottentots were arrived with the wagon at the distance of a couple of gun-shots from the farm, and were taking the oxen out of the team on a plain

plain near a cross road. They gave us to understand, that they had got thither some time after us, by a different by-road. The country round about was extremely dry and arid, and scarcely a vernal blossom was to be seen. The reason of this was, the universal want of rain, which was every where complained of that spring. At this place there had been no rain for several days before; and yet the trees in *Groot Vaders-bosch* had, as forests usually do, attracted vapour from the clouds, and rain sufficient to water them.

1775.
September.

This day I had no small pleasure in seeing, for the first time, some Hottentots riding their oxen. They rode pretty hard over hills and dales; and my hostess told me, that if I was there when they came back, I should see them galloping neck or nothing; as they were then going to drink out several wagers at a neighbour's of her's, a farmer, who, she said, had so little conscience, as for the sake of a very trifling gain, to lead the poor pagans, by means of his brandy, into riot, intemperance, and excesses of all kinds. She moreover gave the Hottentots the character of using the brute creation, and particularly the oxen they rode, very cruelly. Beside this instance, I have seen several others, which confirmed this remark of her's; but am apt to believe it applies best to such of them as have, in a great measure, departed from their original simplicity, in consequence of their intercourse with the Christians.

These saddle-oxen must be tamed and broke in while they are calves. For this purpose, a hole is bored through the gristle of the nose, large enough to hold a wooden pin, to both ends of which the rope is fastened, that serves

by

1775.
September.

known to the botanists, and, probably, great part of the remainder are under the same predicament. It is, therefore, to be wished, that a botanist had an opportunity of remaining in this place the whole year throughout.

Beams, planks for flooring, and timber for the construction of waggon are fetched from hence both by the farmers and by government. Many sorts of shrubs and bushes in some places, particularly by the side of the wood, fill up the interstices between the larger trees, and render the forest impervious. Among these, several sorts of prickly *asparaguses* deserve to be remarked, as well as a new species of *callophyllum*; which, from its catching, like the thorn-bush, fast hold of the traveller with its hooked prickles, and keeping him from pursuing his journey, is commonly called here *wakt een betje*, or *wait a bit*.

On the 10th, in our way from hence, we had the misfortune to wander astray on horseback till a good while after midnight. Being but lightly clad, we were almost frozen to death, when we arrived at a farm near *Slangenrivier*; where, however, we had like to have waited in the open air till the morning, as the mistress of the house, who was left at home with her female slave only, did not much care (without taking a long time to consider of the matter) to give house-room to travellers so totally unknown to her as we were. Indeed, it was only by the barking of the dogs, that we had been enabled to discover this farm in the dark. The next morning we had the pleasure to see, that our Hottentots were arrived with the wagon at the distance of a couple of gun-shots from the farm, and were taking the oxen out of the team on a plain

plain near a cross road. They gave us to understand, that they had got thither some time after us, by a different by-road. The country round about was extremely dry and arid, and scarcely a vernal blossom was to be seen. The reason of this was, the universal want of rain, which was every where complained of that spring. At this place there had been no rain for several days before; and yet the trees in *Groot Vaders-bosch* had, as forests usually do, attracted vapour from the clouds, and rain sufficient to water them.

1775.
September.



This day I had no small pleasure in seeing, for the first time, some Hottentots riding their oxen. They rode pretty hard over hills and dales; and my hostess told me, that if I was there when they came back, I should see them galloping neck or nothing; as they were then going to drink out several wagers at a neighbour's of her's, a farmer, who, she said, had so little conscience, as for the sake of a very trifling gain, to lead the poor pagans, by means of his brandy, into riot, intemperance, and excesses of all kinds. She moreover gave the Hottentots the character of using the brute creation, and particularly the oxen they rode, very cruelly. Beside this instance, I have seen several others, which confirmed this remark of her's; but am apt to believe it applies best to such of them as have, in a great measure, departed from their original simplicity, in consequence of their intercourse with the Christians.

These saddle-oxen must be tamed and broke in while they are calves. For this purpose, a hole is bored through the gristle of the nose, large enough to hold a wooden pin, to both ends of which the rope is fastened, that serves
by

1775.
September.

by way of bit and bridle to guide the animal with. The saddle consists of a sheep-skin folded up together, and fastened by a rope round the fore part of the ox's body. These oxen are by the colonists called *pack-oxen*, they being also used for carrying packs and burthens: the name is likewise very suitable to them on another account, which is, that the Hottentots very frequently ride, several of them together, upon one ox. There is an order of government, which ordains that no Hottentot shall be in possession of a horse; in consequence of which, it is said, that a Hottentot, who was very fond of hunting, trained one of his pack-oxen to run with such speed, as to be able to hunt elks with it, and absolutely run them down. In general, the way that the Hottentots have of eluding this prohibition, is to pass their horses off for borrowed, which in fact they have bought at a high price, or got in the way of barter, or else to pretend to have them for sale on some Christian's account. Another law of government prohibits all Christians, under pain of being whipped and branded, to buy, or otherwise to acquire the possession of, any animal belonging to a Hottentot. The reason of this is, that government having use for these animals itself, chuses to have the benefit of this kind of traffic: the Hottentots, for a bottle of brandy and a roll of tobacco a foot or two long, with about a quarter of a rixdollar's worth of small copper beads, generally selling a spare ox, worth at least five or six rixdollars. What makes them content with so low a price is, that the factor for government (who is generally the corporal in *Riet Valley*) is their only chapman; and besides gives them to understand,

stand, that this traffic is a kind of tax, which is laid every third year on the Hottentot nation. The irresistible attractions of brandy, likewise, do not a little contribute on this occasion, to induce the obstinate and headstrong Hottentot to part with his property.

1775.
September.

About noon we went to pay a visit to a community of Hottentots assembled on this spot, who received us very friendly, and invited us to drink some of their *sack-milk*; which, I believe, nobody could have tasted, that had not been as thirsty, and at the same time as curious, as we. We saw then our greasy, though, perhaps, not for that the less happy, hostess, open a leathern bag, that would hold about six gallons, and which was made of an undressed calf's-skin taken off entire, with the hairy side turned inwards, in the manner I mentioned above on another occasion, and at the same time lade some milk out of it with a wooden ladle, the only one they had, and which, though it was what we drank out of, the dirtiest kitchen-wench in Sweden would have been perfectly ashamed of. But we were told, that sweet milk was unwholesome, and that therefore they always mixed it with the clouted milk in the leathern bag. They likewise assured us, that all this milk, thus mixed every day with fresh, to supply the place of what had been used, might be kept for many weeks as good as ever, without their having the least occasion to give themselves the trouble of looking after it, or cleaning the bag in which it was kept. The taste of it resembled that of a syllabub. By way of acknowledgment, we gave our hosts a roll of tobacco about six inches long,

1775.
September.

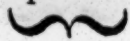
long, which they seemed to consider as a very magnificent present.

A few gun shots from hence was seen an uncommonly large hut of a conic form. We were told, that in it there lived the Hottentot-Captain RUNDGANGER. I then asked my host, whether he belonged to the Captain's company, or was under his command? To which he answered, with a sly sarcastic smile, that the command of a Hottentot Captain extended no farther than to his wife and children; and that, in fact, he might with equal propriety be called Major, or what else you please. Captain, says he, is merely an empty title, formerly bestowed by the regency at the Cape on some princes and patriarchs of the Hottentots, and particularly on such, as had distinguished themselves by their fidelity to their allies, by betraying their countrymen, or by some remarkable service. They have likewise had a Dutch surname, together with a commander's staff, bestowed upon them; and both these, like letters patent of nobility, have afterwards descended in the way of inheritance to their sons. On the other hand, it is required of the Captain, that he shall be a spy on the other Hottentots; and when search is made after a deserter, he is invested by the regency at the Cape with the chief authority, and consequently trouble, throughout the whole of the business.


On the receipt of this information, which since has been confirmed to me by several others, we hastened hence, in order to pay our respects to a man of so ancient and princely a family as RUNDGANGER. The patriarch was at that time
fitting

fitting and basking himself before the door of his tent, and in this posture waited till we came up to him, in order to receive us. He was somewhat above forty years of age, and of such an *embonpoint*, as I never saw before nor since in one of his nation. This was in all probability occasioned by his great superiority of wealth in the article of cattle, by which means he could live better than another, and at the same time lead a more indolent life, void of care and anxiety. By means of a little tobacco, and other trifling civilities, shewn *à-propos* to this illustrious family, we in a manner gained his confidence. He could not forbear (though with some degree of caution and in gentle terms) making complaints of the Dutch, as unjust invaders of the Hottentots territories. For want of strength and power, (he said) these latter were now no longer in a condition to withstand their encroachments; almost every day some Hottentot or other being obliged to remove with his cattle, whenever the pasture he was in possession of, happened to suit a colonist. The Hottentot Captains had, indeed, formerly, been left undisturbed in their possessions; but now they had likewise elbowed him, though a Captain, out of a more eligible situation; and even began to grudge him the meagre and parched fields he was in possession of nearer the sea-shore; notwithstanding that they were extremely dangerous for sheep and cattle, both on account of the unhealthiness of the situation, and its being exposed to the incursions of wild beasts. He likewise complained of his own countrymen, that now they could seldom agree among themselves, and were all particularly envious of him; so that he could not venture to sell a supernumerary

1775.
September.



1775.
September.



ox to a farmer, for fear lest his own people and kindred should tell tales of him to the landroft of Zwellendam. I had before this heard it said, that, among the Hottentots, the youngest son was the principal, and, I had almost said, the sole heir. Captain RUNDGANGER actually confirmed to me the reality of this very peculiar law, informing me, that all his cattle, together with his title of Captain and his staff, would, after his death, fall to the share of his youngest son. As I was curious to see the ensign of his authority, or rather of his vassalage, I mean his Captain's staff, he shewed me the cane he had in his hand, which was a short and very plain Indian (or, as it is generally called, Spanish) bamboo, with a very indifferent copper head three inches long, which cane he was bound always to carry about him. I have mentioned before, that RUNDGANGER's hut seemed of an unusual size; in fact, it was three or four times larger than common, and so roomy as to allow of a bedchamber and wardrobe being parted off from it by means of mats. With respect to the building, it was composed of poles, placed so as to meet in a point at top, and afterwards covered with straw, so that altogether it had the shape of a cone. It is probable, that the title of Captain, hereditary in the RUNDGANGER family, had in some measure given them the idea of thus building their huts in a more polished and civilized style than the rest of their countrymen; and I think it cannot be denied, but that a certain degree of ambition is absolutely requisite in the Hottentot people, in order to convert their *craals* into more polished and laborious communities; in like manner as this same passion, on the other hand, may be carried

ried to such a height in civilized nations, as to make them degenerate again into their pristine inactivity and sloth, and produce all the evils naturally consequent on such an alteration of manners.

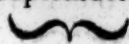
1775.
September.

Henceforward it would be too tedious and prolix, and indeed unnecessary, to give an account of every day separately, just as I wrote it down in my journal: as by that means, remarks not dissimilar to the preceding might chance to occur very frequently. From what has been already described, it will perhaps easily be imagined, that our expedition consisted for the greater part of daily vexations, anxiety, and difficulties, very moderate pleasures, and trifling discoveries, the relation of which would by no means interest the generality of readers. I shall therefore make separate mention of certain days only, throwing all together in a promiscuous manner, such occurrences as happened on the rest.

We continued our route, passing over *Duyvenhoeks-rivier*, and taking the upper road through *Kafferkuyls-rivier*, and so on through *Gaurit-rivier*. From thence through a green vale, called *Honing-klip* (Honey-rock;) from this place to and from *Mossel-bay*, then over *Klein* and *Groot Brak-riviers* into *Houtniquas* land, as far as is indicated by the dots on the map.

Perhaps it may not be absolutely without use to remark in this place, that at *Duyvenhoeks-rivier* we first saw the *dorn boom*, or tree called *mimosa nilotica*, which produces the *gum arabic*. The river just mentioned is deep, and has rather a strong current. Professor Thunberg (it is said)

1775.
September.



in riding over it, missed the shallowest part, and was in danger of being drowned.

Drooge and *Natte* (dry and wet) *riviers* were now both dried up. *Kafferkuyls-* or *Palmit-rivier*, was still tolerably broad at the upper ford, and overgrown with palmites. The water, indeed, was dried up in most places; but, on the other hand, our oxen were obliged to drag the waggon through a mass of mud, that reached up to their bellies; and we should certainly, with our ordinary equipment, have stuck fast in it, if a farmer had not lent us his *bastard* slave to drive the waggon over. This fellow had such an incomparable knack of whipping the oxen up without intermission, that they had not the least opportunity to flinch from the business.

Falfe-rivier is an insignificant stream; but the great quantity of butter-milk, which the farmer dwelling on its banks threw out here by pail-fulls, made a stream of some importance, notwithstanding that five or six large dogs had previously drank their swill of it, not to mention what had been consumed in the family. The farmer at this place was one of the greater farmers called graziers, whose whole income depended on grazing cattle. The milk was collected together from the milkings of two, three, or more days, and kept in a tub till they had an opportunity of churning it; which they usually did every other or every third day, at least part of it, in a vessel that would contain between one and two hogheads. The churn-staff was raised and wrought by no less than two, and sometimes four people, in the same way as the handle of a common pump.

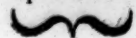
In this colony the people are neither notable enough, nor indeed is it much worth their while, to press out all the butter, which might be separated from their milk, as they do with us; on which account, likewise, I always found their butter-milk greasy and rank in comparison with ours.

1775.
September.

Hardly any body here troubles himself with fattening hogs, and this is the reason that they are so lavish of their butter-milk. Those farmers who have a tolerable share of pasture ground and cattle, make from one thousand eight hundred to three thousand five hundred pounds of butter in a year. This quantity is carried to the Cape in one or two journies, and is sold at the rate of from three to six stivers a pound.

The towns-people, that buy up this butter, sell the greater part of it again to the ships, at a profit of from twenty to one hundred per cent. The more wealthy farmers derive this farther advantage from their grazing farms, that every other, or every third year, they can dispose of eight or ten oxen, some to the butchers, others to the people that carry wood between the town and shore, and others again to other farmers that live nearer to the Cape; and having less room for grazing cattle, and a readier vent for their wine and meal, get their livelihoods entirely by cultivating the earth. These graziers, likewise, derive an income more or less considerable from the sale of weathers. A number of these, from twenty to one hundred, they dispose of yearly, at the rate of from six schellings to a dollar the head, Dutch money. With all this, the vender needs not to stir out of his own house; as the butcher's men go about, buying them up, and afterwards drive them in flocks consisting

1775.
September.




sisting of several hundreds, and sometimes even thousands, to the slaughter-houses at the Cape, about the times when the fleets are chiefly expected. A great number of the peasants in this country are termed grazing farmers or graziers, the chief, and sometimes the whole of their income, depending on their breeding of sheep. One of these graziers will, perhaps, be master of one, two, or even three thousand sheep at a time. This is no unusual circumstance, particularly in the very dry parched plains in this country; such as *Camdebo*, *Rogge-* and *Bokke-velden*, (fields or plains) the great *Carrows*, &c. all which, taken together, and including several smaller tracts of land, are, from their qualities, distinguished by the colonists by the name of *Carrow-veld*.

It may be proper here to give a more accurate description of these tracts of land, as well as of those called by the colonists *Zuur* and *Zoet*. The *Carrow-veld*, taken in its most extensive signification, is horridly parched up and arid. In these parts, during the whole summer, or the warmer part of the year, there hardly falls a drop of rain. The ground is as dry and bare of grass as a high road; and the shrubs on it are, to all appearance at least, dried up, and in a languishing state. The earth, which at most times bears an arid meagre appearance, and at this time particularly, is, in the manner just mentioned, divested of all its lively verdure, looks naked, and being withal full of clefts and chinks in different places, seems quite languishing with drought and thirst. High and cold mountains of granite, frequently to all appearance rich in iron ore, surround these lands on all sides. Here the sun scorches

scorches the traveller up with its reflected rays, and the ground almost burns him through the soles of his shoes. In a short time totally relaxed, enervated and weak, he finds himself bathed in sweat, and at the same time as thirsty as the objects by which he is surrounded; whilst he is fatiated even to disgust with viewing the desolateness of the vegetable kingdom, and the reflections which such a sight tends to inspire. In winter, or the colder season, on the other hand, there falls on the *Carrow-veld* a great quantity of rain, while the thunder daily and even hourly rolls with loud tremendous peals in the surrounding mountains. The clouds, which during this are collected almost instantaneously, fall down again in heavy showers, that deluge both the hills and the plains. The earth, by this means refreshed, quickly receives the seeds and roots committed to its care, and particularly the succulent plants, which in a peculiar manner delight in this kind of soil. Upon this they soon become verdant, and throw out their tender blossoms, clothing the ground in the very depth of winter with a summer garb, in all the splendor of magnificence and beauty.

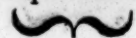
1775.
September.



The succulent plants with which Flora at this time thus decks herself, while she seems to deviate from the regular order of the seasons, are chiefly the following: several sorts of *mesembryantheums*, which grow in clusters, with white, red, blue, but mostly yellow flowers; *crassulas* with red flowers; besides various species of *cotyledons*, *stapelias*, and *euphorbias*.

All these, nay, the very tops of the euphorbias are eaten by the sheep, which even grow extremely fat upon them;
but,

1775.
September.



but, as in summer they have nothing else to sustain themselves with, they content themselves with browsing on the shrubs and bushes; and notwithstanding this, do not by any means fare ill. The larger kinds of cattle cannot make so good a shift with mere shrubs, but are obliged to seek for reeds and other green vegetables in the rivers; for which reason, where the inhabitants of the *Carrow* live in such low situations, they remove in the summer up to the ridges of mountains and hills, where they find the usual summer climate, with rain at intervals, plenty of grass, and cool refreshing breezes. In the winter, it is said both to hail and snow on divers of the mountains; on which account the colonists leave them at that time, in order to enjoy in the *Carrow*, or lower situations, the benefit of a mild winter, accompanied with rain and a delightful verdure, as I have described it above. Allured by the same advantages, the wild harts or *gazells* likewise come down into the plains, and are followed by the beasts of prey. To the different sorts of corn the *Carrow* climate is so far unfavourable, that in case they are sowed in the winter or the rainy season, they are (as I have been informed by the inhabitants, who have made many attempts of the kind) apt to be rotted by the too great abundance of water; and if put into the ground in summer, they cannot spring up on account of the great drought. Notwithstanding all these natural disadvantages, however, to the honour of the forecast and diligence of man in a state of civilization be it spoken, one very frequently sees, even in the parched and dry *Carrow* plains, fields of corn, kitchen-gardens, and vineyards, verdant and flourishing in the highest degree;

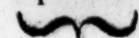
gree; while the wild plants around them die, or languish with drought. This remarkable appearance proceeds from the water being brought down at pleasure from the nearest mountains, and carried all over their fields and plantations.

1775.
September.

What are termed by the colonists the *Zuur-velden*, or *Sour-fields*, are such as lie somewhat higher and cooler than the shore, and thus are better supplied with rain than the other plains; which, however, abound more in grass. The different sorts of grass here are likewise perennial, and coarser than those of the former; at the same time that their blades have a hairy roughness in them, and are broader. The cattle in these tracts of country are somewhat given to chew unwholesome substances, such as thongs of leather, chalk, and bones; and are even accustomed, in failure of every thing else of the kind, to gnaw each others horns. This circumstance, which seems to denote an acid in the stomach of the cattle, may, probably, have given occasion to the appellation bestowed on these plains. Some of the Caffre plains are said likewise to possess this acid quality in so high a degree, as to occasion the cattle at night, when shut up in their stalls, to gnaw each other's horns, by which means their horns have the appearance of carved work; a circumstance which ought, therefore, by no means to be ascribed, as it has been, to the manual operations of the Caffre herdsmen, or to the effects of imagination only.

To conclude, with respect to the *Zuur-velden*, it is remarked by the colonists, that there is less milk in proportion, but more as well as better butter than in the *Zaet-*

1775.
September.



velden, though in these latter places the cattle get fatter. By the *Sweet-fields* (*Zoet-velden*) are meant such places as do not correspond to the descriptions given above of the *Zuur* and *Carrow-veld*. Such spots as are low, rather sandy, and lie near the shore, are given as instances of the *Zoet* plains; as the *Zuur* again are Honing-klip, Houtni-quas-land, and the greater part of Lange-kloof and Caffre-land.

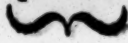
For the purpose of feeding sheep, the *Carrow* is considered as the best land, and the *Zuur-velden* the least, if at all, fit. For cattle it has been found to answer better, when they could be removed off and on from one of these kinds of land to the other. The constant and unequivocal experience of the colonists, with regard to this point, agrees with the result of the practice of the Hottentots; though this, in fact, has its origin almost entirely in prejudice; for as soon as any of them, or of their cattle, fall sick and die, or any other misfortune happens to, or even only threatens them, they immediately remove their station. This, perhaps, is one of the principal causes that the cattle of the Hottentots, in some measure, keep up to their original standard; whilst, on the contrary, those of the christians degenerate to a smaller race; and that chiefly in those parts which lie nearer to the Cape, and therefore have been longer inhabited and cultivated.

It has likewise been remarked, beyond a shadow of doubt, that such places as before abounded in grafs, and were very fertile in corn and the produce of the kitchen-garden, are now fallen off considerably; so that it is feared, that they must in a short time be given up. The *rhino-*
ceros-

ceros-bush (a species of *Boebe*) a dry shrub, which is otherwise used to thrive on barren tracts of land, now begins to encroach more and more on such places as have been thoroughly cleared and cultivated. When I asked the country people the reason of this, they would lay the blame on their sins. Their consciences, probably, informed them, that there was great reason for so doing. One of their sins which most merited this punishment, as having contributed most to the evil, might, in this case, be reckoned their want of knowing how to dress properly the soil they occupied, and to manage it to the best advantage. As the grounds that are newly broken up are, in every country, and in all parts of the world, more fertile than they can be expected to be after some time, it is no wonder, that the lands in Africa at present require more dressing and manuring than the colonists think proper to bestow on them; but which is absolutely necessary, in order to keep them up in that degree of heart and strength which they have before, during a period of many ages, had time to acquire.

In direct contradiction to the custom and example of the original inhabitants the Hottentots, the colonists turn their cattle out constantly into the same fields, and that too in a much greater quantity than used to graze there in the time of the Hottentots; as they keep not only a number sufficient for their own use, but likewise enough to supply the more plentiful tables of the numerous inhabitants of Cape Town, as well as for the victualling of the ships in their passage to and from the East-Indies with fresh, and even with salted provisions. In consequence of the fields be-

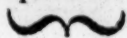
1775.
September.



1775.
September.

ing thus continually grazed off, and the great increase of the cattle feeding on them, the grasses and herbs which these animals most covet are prevented continually more and more from thriving and taking root; while, on the contrary, the *rhinoceros*-bush, which the cattle always pass by and leave untouched, is suffered to take root free and unmolested, and encroach on the place of others: so that this ought to appear the less strange to the colonists, as this punishment for their sins (as they call the *rhinoceros*-bush,) together with several other dry barren shrubs and bushes, is found in greater abundance than any where else near their farms, the place where the cattle are chiefly used to feed. Notwithstanding these inconveniencies, the colonists remain immoveable in their stone houses; while, on the contrary, the Hottentots (and this was the case in former times) on the least panic remove their huts and cattle to another place, so that the grass is no where eaten off too close. Together with this diminution of pasturage, there is another circumstance which contributes not a little to the degeneracy of the breed; this is, that the calves, on account of the great quantity of butter made, (which never was the case with the Hottentots) are reared up with less milk than formerly. In the mean time, if they go on in this manner, the presage of the country people may chance to prove true, viz. that many spots that are now inhabited and cultivated, must be relinquished and suffered to lie waste. But it may likewise happen, that time and rest may at length restore to the soil the heat and strength, which the colonists have deprived it of; and that the grass and herbage may, in
their

their turn, have an opportunity of extruding the shrubs and bushes, after having received the protection of the shelter and shade of these latter; and after having, by undergoing a kind of putrefaction, made themselves a soil more fertile and better adapted to their nature. It is also not improbable, that the game, finding more security from the sportsmen here than formerly, may resort hither in great numbers: and it is well known, that in feeding they make a more equal division between the grass and bushes than the ordinary cattle do; nay, it may happen, that the gazell's dung and other accidental circumstances, which people here have neglected to make trial of, may come to extirpate the *rhinoceros*-bush in its turn. The animals which occur only in Africa are, in my opinion, as much designed for the plants peculiar to this climate, as the plants are for the animals. The *rein-deer*, for instance, an animal destined by nature for the climate of Lapland, and for the moss with which it is covered, by botanists called *lichen rangiferus*, is in that place domesticated with the greatest advantage; where, however, cattle would thrive very ill. The *elk*, another of nature's kind presents to our climate, was formerly considered as a fit subject for the chase only, (which, in fact, was the chief employment of most nations, and even of the most savage) till our more considerate countrymen and truly zealous patriots, the Barons ALSTROEMMER, by proposing premiums and by other methods, endeavoured to make this stately, strong, and swift-footed animal likewise domestic, and thereby more serviceable to the country it inhabits. Induced by these examples, the African colonists ought to take it into serious consideration,

1775.
September.

1775
September.

consideration, whether by extirpating the game, they are not in reality laying waste their country, and rendering it a desert.

It is said, that a farmer once attempted to destroy and extirpate all the rhinoceros-bushes on his lands by fire, but that they afterwards grew up again more vigorous than ever; so that, as well with respect to the effects of the industry of man as to the more immediate operations of nature, it is not at all unlikely, that future ages may see this part of Africa entirely changed and different from what it is at present.

Gaurits-rivier is likewise called *Goud's-rivier*, probably, from the resemblance in sound between these two words; or else from the latter word being more easy to pronounce, and not with any reference to *gold*, to which it might otherwise seem to allude. This river, which, farther to the northward, is likewise called *Olifant's-rivier*, is one of the most considerable in this part of Africa: and though it was at that time in a great measure dried up, there was yet a strong current, and it was dangerous to ford over, as it was not only very broad and pretty deep at the fording-place, but made a particular bend there; so that we should have been badly off, if we had not fortunately happened to have been told of it in good time.

The banks of the river were extremely high and quite perpendicular, excepting just at the place where the passage was. The water sometimes swells so suddenly and unexpectedly as to come unawares upon travellers, even while they are passing over it, and either drown them or carry them out to sea. A peasant, who some time before

fore made a halt at night near the ford of this river, had, by an unexpected flooding, been washed away and lost, with his wife and children, and the waggon in which they were sleeping.

1775.
September.

The reason of these sudden floods is partly the hasty melting of the snow on the various high mountains which lie to the northwards, and partly the falling of heavy rains in the extensive *Carrow-field*, lying to the north of this spot; in which plain *Oliphants* or *Gaurits-rivier*, by means of divers small branches, has its source, as is partly shewn in the map.

Going from *Gaurits-rivier*, and afterwards from *Honing-klip*, which is a narrow vale, we kept to the right, in order to get to *Moffel-bay*, and so over the *Brak* rivers to the *Houtniquas* forests; we having been particularly advised not to go as yet to *Lange-kloof*, as, on account of a great drought and deficiency of rain then subsisting in those parts, our cattle would run the risk of being famished.

The *Brak* rivers have got this appellation from the quality of their waters, which are brackish or saltish, in consequence of the sea coming up into them, and occasioning in the cattle which are not used to them a troublesome diarrhoea. Of this circumstance I was ignorant, and consequently my oxen were attacked with this complaint; by which they were so much debilitated, that I was obliged to leave my waggon on a hill, till a peasant in *Houtniquas* drove thither with a team of his oxen to bring it off.

Just below the farm that lies to the westward of little *Brak-rivier*, and is called *Geelbeks-valley*, there is a tract of about two-thirds of an acre of land, which is always bare of plants,

1775.
September.

plants, and in part covered with a hoar frost. This was mistaken by the colonists for saltpetre, but was, in fact, nothing more than fine sea-salt. When this kind of hoar frost appeared in greater abundance than common, the neighbouring inhabitants looked on it as a certain sign of an impending fall of weather.

I visited *Moffel-bay* on horseback. This harbour, though it lies rather open to the easterly winds, and is not resorted to by ships, except in cases of extreme necessity, might, however, in many respects prove very useful, were it better known.

On a stone hereabouts is engraved an inscription as follows: Captain SWENFINGER, of the Danish ship the *Kron-Prinsefs*, 1752. The inhabitants informed us, that the ship here alluded to had been driven in there by a storm and run aground; and that some of the sailors having swam ashore and got a couple of lines, by means of them a stout rope had been stretched from the ship's mast to the shore; upon this, which thus had a sloping direction given to it, a large metal ring was hung, to which every one of the crew separately was tied fast, and slid on shore one after the other, when the ring was immediately brought back again to the ship by means of a line. When the storm was over, part of the lading was saved, and taken to the Cape in waggons. The country people who lived nearest the spot assured me, that ships would frequently manœuvre at the mouth of the harbour, as though they were in search of the port, but could not rightly tell where to look for it; one in particular, was said to have fired several guns as signals of distress, before she ventured in. The reason

reason of this was supposed to be, that the place is easily mistaken, as from the charts people are induced to look for an island here; which, however, is, in fact, nothing more than a low inconsiderable rock, which at flood lies for the greater part under water, and must necessarily appear to the ships that are running into it as if it was joined to the land; and indeed, it was partly this circumstance that was the occasion of Captain SWENFINGER's misfortune: and it is said, that on the whole coast between *Falsel-bay* and *Moffel-bay* there is no anchorage to be found. In fact, it seems as if government wished to keep navigators in some degree in the dark with respect to *Moffel-bay*, as a store-house with a flag-staff, which the captain of a Danish vessel had erected there, was destroyed immediately after his departure from the place; and at the same time, all buildings prohibited within sight of the harbour. This conduct is certainly not founded on the soundest policy; for a more accurate knowledge of *Moffel-bay*, may be the future means of saving some vessel, which may by stress of weather be forced to run into it. Being convinced of this from divers considerations, and no one having given any description (at least in print) of this harbour, I think it my duty, till farther information is given on this subject, to communicate the result of my observations, however imperfect, upon it. There was not a boat to be found in the bay, therefore I cannot give the soundings. By means of the compass I had brought with me I marked out the shore here, having investigated it, partly on foot and partly on horseback, as far as is indicated by the dots in the map. The Danes who ran aground here assured the in-

1775.
September.

1775.
September.

habitants, that there was a good sandy bottom for anchorage; and that the small bend or inlet to the south-west, had depth of water sufficient to contain a ship.

For the purpose of getting acquainted with the harbour, supposing the reader to have acquired a previous knowledge of the latitude, and to have compared it with the small portion that I have pricked out on my map, it may likewise be of use to him to be informed, that the north, or north-west shore, is without any rocks or stones, being composed of verdant hills covered with shrubs and bushes, excepting just at each of the spots, where *Heerte* and *Kleine Brak* rivers empty themselves; the sand thereabouts having been raised up to some height by the sea-wind, so as to have encroached on the verdure of the prospect. The south-west shore, on the contrary, is very stony and mountainous; though just at the water-side it is low, one place excepted, which, at a very small distance from the water, appears with a rock-head, as it is called, or a rocky hill, flat on the top, which at the sea-side is perpendicular.

It is, probably, not difficult to land here with boats in fair weather; but at this time, the bay was greatly agitated by a wind from the sea; and the height of the water, which continued even in the afternoon, prevented us from catching oysters, which, we were informed, might otherwise have been met with at this place. Watering must be very a tedious and laborious business, as things are situated here at present; for there is only one very inconsiderable rill of fresh water here, which runs down into the above-mentioned inlet, where the anchoring-place is; but at the distance

distance of a few stones throw from the strand, is the well-spring itself, of such a width and depth, as to give one reason to suppose, that one might fill with ease a couple of hogheads at a time with fresh, clear, and well-tasted water. By properly purifying this water, and making a conduit for it, there might possibly be still an alteration made for the better. Indeed, I know many instances, where by digging a tolerably deep pit near a shore, particularly if it were sandy, fresh water has been absorbed into the pit and filled it. This likewise renders credible an account that I heard from some peasants in *Houtniquas*, that being on a hunting party near the mouth of *Brak-rivier*, and finding themselves extremely thirsty, it came into their heads to make an experiment, and stick a reed to the depth of a foot and a half into the sand near the level of the sea, when, contrary to their expectation, in a short time they were enabled to suck up through their reed a quantity of fresh and well-tasted water.

1775.
September.

C H A P. VII.

Journey through the Houtniquas.


1775.
September.

HOUTNIQUAS Land, which is a woody tract of country, is supposed to commence to the eastward of *Groote Brak-rivier*, and to extend to *Keurebooms-rivier*, which empties itself into *Algoa-bay*. To the northward this district is entirely separated from *Lange Kloof*, by a long and very high range of mountains, extending from east to west. Along the side of these mountains runs a wood, to the trees, herbs, and general properties of which, the description I gave of *Groot Vaders Bosch* is equally applicable.

On the western side of *Keerom-rivier*, or the hither side of *Houtniquas*, between the wood just spoken of and the sea-shore, there are extensive plains of indifferent grass. There are likewise in the vales near the shore, some woody tracts of land and streams of fresh water; so that two farmers have lately made a new settlement here, who will find no difficulty in getting their livelihood, in the same manner as the other farmers do, who have set themselves down in the upper and more extensive side of the forest, by felling of timber, and at the same time they may sow
corn

corn and rear cattle sufficient to answer the demands of their families. The tract of country lying between *Keerom* and *Keurebooms-riviers*, makes the internal part of Houtniquas, and is said to be almost entirely covered with woods. This part I had no opportunity to visit, and therefore was obliged to be contented with putting down on the map the farms and rivers as well as I could conceive them from an account, which, however, was not very accurate or distinct, given me by a farmer, who had travelled a good deal in that district.

1775.
September.



Keerom-rivier (or Turnabout-river) in which the smaller branches *Zwart-rivier* and *Trakudiku* meet, has obtained its name from the circumstance of the person who first travelled this way, having been obliged to turn back at this river, on account of the dense and almost impenetrable forests that grew every where by the side of it.

Keurebooms-rivier is perhaps so called, after a tree of the same name (the *Jophora capensis*, LINN.) On this kind of tree there is found a great quantity of gum, resembling that of the cherry-tree, but not so adhesive. I have hardly ever seen a tree of this kind any where else, excepting a few at *Bay Falso* and in *Constantia* district.

Algoa-bay is said not to have been once visited by the ships, since Houtniquas has been inhabited and cultivated. It was thought, however, that the harbour was very fit for use, and convenient both for wooding and watering, of both which articles there is a great abundance. It is pretty much exposed to the sea-winds; though, on the other hand, the winds do not blow with such violence here as at the Cape. I could get no farther oral information with respect

1775.
September.

respect to this harbour; but a description of the coast that I have met with, says, that the western creek lies in lat. 33 deg. 55 min. and that from the outermost point a reef extends about a mile out; and that in the place, where the bay bends in two leagues to the west, ships may lie at anchor in good ground, well sheltered from the north-east, north-west, and south winds. There is, however, in this same description an erroneous observation, viz. that no other than brackish or salt-water is to be got at *Mossel-bay*.

Algoa-bay, which I have briefly mentioned above, I have been obliged to be content with laying down in my map, merely in consequence of some hints given by M. ADOLPHUS BURTZ, captain of a Swedish East-Indiaman, on the authority of some old chart. The description of the coast before referred to, moreover mentions, that Algoa-bay is a deep inlet, where there is abundance of wood and fresh water; and also that in sailing into it, one finds from twenty-four to ten fathom of water, with a reef extending a league into the sea; which, however, if there be occasion for it, may be avoided, by running round to the north of it.

Inasmuch as the bays above-mentioned (setting aside another in *Krakekamma*) seem very well adapted for use, at least for that of small craft, the shipping and navigation between them and the Cape ought to be very considerable.

However extensive the colony is, yet it cannot be considered at present in any other light than that of a proportionably large but weakly consumptive body, in which the circulation of trade is very slow and sluggish; as between the more distant members and the heart, or the internal

provinces and the *Cape*, there is only once a year a circulation of commodities, by means of the ordinary waggons; but if this body, thus half stifled as it were, had air given to it, by opening all the harbours, trade, manufactures, and agriculture would doubtless have new life infused into them. A farmer, for instance, has a hundred hours * hard driving to get his timber from *Mossel-bay* to the *Cape*, and a still longer and more laborious journey from *Houtniquas*. The seventy or eighty rixdollars he can get for a load of it, drawn by ten oxen, (including the felling of it and bringing it in) hardly pay him for his time and trouble; but at the same time his commodity comes to the townsmen at the *Cape* dear enough at that price; as a spar about twenty feet in length and one in diameter, comes to five rixdollars, and so in proportion for boards and planks. From hence it may easily be imagined, that building is extremely expensive at the *Cape*; and that consequently many people must set themselves down content without those conveniencies of life, for which, however, the country has sufficient materials. The farmer must, therefore, necessarily buy again, at so much a dearer rate, his own timber, wrought up into casks, waggons, and other necessary articles of joinery work; as he is obliged to carry them all the way by land to and from the *Cape*, merely to have the iron work put on them, supposing that in other respects he is able, or has proper tools for making them at home. The company itself, therefore, is likewise forced to allot several public buildings at the *Cape* for store-houses,

1775.
September.

* For an explanation of this word see page 132.

and

1775.
September.

and to have the greater part of their timber brought from *Batavia*, and some of it directly from Europe; in which latter place, as is well known, it must be paid for in specie; by which means the nation suffers a great loss, inasmuch as the colony actually has within itself at *Sitsicamma* a thick impervious forest, from whence the best kinds of trees, many of them indeed very rare in Europe, ought to be, and in fact might with ease, and to the great advantage of the company, be fetched for sale. By a navigation established between the above-mentioned ports, not only would the transportation of timber be facilitated, but likewise all other articles produced in the country. The farmers, who, for instance, might put their corn and butter on board of barges in *Krakekamma-bay*, would by that means avoid a journey of four hundred *uurs* over land (including both going and returning) which generally takes them up several weeks. Every peasant for such a journey as this has two or three Hottentots, one to lead the oxen, and either one or two to drive the spare team; besides which, his wife often goes with him, either for the purpose of having her children baptized at the Cape, or else for fear of being attacked by the Hottentots in her husband's absence. Thus, taking it at the lowest, and reckoning only three persons and twenty oxen for thirty days, it stands a great many farmers in ninety days work of themselves and men, and six hundred of their cattle, in order to make one turn with their butter to market, and so in proportion for such as are less distant. Hence it is evident, that many thousand days work are unnecessarily lost and thrown away every year in leading to the Cape, which, by means of the navigation

vigation I speak of, might be much more profitably bestowed on the orchards and the vineyards, the corn fields and the pastures. Industry, trade, and wealth, would in that case flow of themselves, as it were, into their now desert harbours, and convert them into marts, and, perhaps, staple towns.

1775.
September.

Flax is said not to thrive well in this climate; but hemp, which is cultivated both by the Hottentots and the colonists merely for the purpose of replenishing the pipes of the former with it instead of tobacco, I have seen succeed very well, and in a vigorous state; consequently, were there any industry in this part of the world, the people in the country, as well as those in the town, might work it up into sheeting, sacking, sail-cloth, cordage, and other articles, to their own evident advantage and that of the company; or, in one word, with a great saving to the whole nation.

Manufactories of every kind might likewise be established at these harbours and other suitable places: for instance, for the purpose of working up the wool of the country, (which is now quite thrown away,) at least into coarse cloth and stockings; these being at present bought at a very dear rate by the company, for the use of its slaves and the garri-son.

The towns-people, indeed, and farmers of the colony, get the woollen goods they want at a rather cheaper rate from the ships belonging to foreigners; but likewise by that means, pay in a manner a heavier tax to the foreigner than to the company; which, however, might get a sum equal and even superior to this, if it bought up the wool

1775.
September.

of the country's produce on its own account, and, after manufacturing it, fold the goods so manufactured at a reasonable price. I did not find more than one farmer who knew how to turn his wool to any account. This was a German, who taught his wife and female slaves to spin it, and make tolerable good stockings of it. On the other hand, I have seen many of the farmers, that lived at a great distance from the town, go without stockings and out at the elbows, though at the same time they were in possession of several hundred sheep. This proceeded as much from the dearth of wool, as from their distance from the town; and it is for the same reason, that the yeomen in some places here and there in *Roggeveld*, let their children run about just like the Hottentots, with nothing but a sheep-skin hanging over their shoulders, and without a rag of linen on their backs.

For want of artizans and mechanics, many of the more distant farmers are obliged to make and mend their own shoes and clothes, as well as they can, themselves; and make shift with a few cracked vessels of earthen-ware, which they have been so lucky as to bring all the way home from the Cape, without farther damage, for the use of their household.

There is not a shadow of doubt, but that the colony is able to maintain all the artizans and manufacturers it has occasion for. The tracts of country nearest to the Cape have, on account of the greater vent they have for their commodities, not only been able to cultivate wine and corn sufficient for their own use and that of the town, but likewise in such quantities, as to send a great deal to Europe
and

and the Isle de France. In the same proportion might the culture of the lands be increased round about the harbours above-mentioned, or other marts properly situated for the purpose. Thousands of plots of land, which, on account of the long way it is from them to the Cape, are now left in their original state, would by this means produce as much corn and wine, as would be sufficient to exchange with the wares of the artificers and trades-people in the town. Besides this, the advantages arising from the grazing of cattle would rather increase than diminish, if the straw and pasturage were managed better for the advantage of the cattle, than they are at present.

1775.
September.

As, agreeable to the scheme proposed above, many of the journies now made to the Cape might be avoided, a great many oxen might be dispensed with, which are now kept merely for this purpose; and in their stead milch cows might be kept to increase the quantity of milk, butter and cheese, in order to answer the consumption of an increased number of people.

With regard to the threshing of corn and manuring the land, operations which at present are either ill-performed, or else entirely neglected, there is much to be noticed, with a view to prevent that deterioration of the arable land and pasturage, which is observed to take place in such spots as have been cultivated for any length of time. The planting of olive and mulberry-trees, together with the importation and proper management of silk-worms, would probably, likewise, be useful acquisitions to the colonies, serving to augment its population, as it would indubitably be a peculiar advantage to the company to find the people,

M m 2

who

1775.
September.

who bear the burden of all the taxes paid by the colonies, by means of these and other institutions, more flourishing and wealthy, and at the same time exceedingly multiplied for the defence of the country. By these methods the company would in time be able, in some measure, to collect from the Cape that force, both military and naval, which is so highly necessary for the defence of its more opulent settlements in the East-Indies; and which at present, in a manner utterly disgraceful to the Dutch East-India company and to human nature, is recruited by the mean low wiles and artifices of crimps and kidnappers in Holland, which I shall expatiate upon hereafter.

Divers private persons, against whose interests it will seem at first to militate, that the navigation from the bays which I have just been recommending, should take place, will, probably, find many specious reasons to urge against it; but these will be easily overthrown by such as know the nature of affairs in this country, and are patriotically inclined towards the company. It is to be feared, indeed, that many who have had the direction and government of the colony, have either not understood, or else have not troubled their heads with any thing that did not respect their own emolument; or else have thought that prudence required, that the colonists should be oppressed and kept in poverty, in order to prevent them from revolting. But it is necessary only to know the colony a little better than they do, in order to discover, in the most clear and evident manner, that their great foresight and caution would, in this case, be carried too far. Moreover, the best and soundest principles of policy teach us, that

that it is not their wealth and strength, but an invidious and oppressive government, that can induce the colonists to think of revolting, in hopes of a change for the better. Let the members composing a state be wealthy, and they will make use of all their strength and power to maintain the authority and consequence of a government on which their own entirely depends. By consequence, the strength and power of colonists is dangerous only for tyrants and external enemies; while, on the other hand, their weakness peculiarly tends to the advantage of the latter. But enough has been said upon this subject, and it is fit that I should return to my account of *Houtniquas* land.

1775.
September.

The animals to be found there are elephants, lions, tigers, tiger-cats, wolves or hyænas, black monkies, a kind of badger, buffaloes, hart-beests, bosch-boks, gnometies, grys-boks, and hares.

The *elephants* are now, by being shot at continually, in a great measure expelled from *Houtniquas*, and have taken refuge on the other side of *Keurebooms-rivier*, in the woody, and almost entirely unexplored country of *Sitsikamma*.

The *lions* are extirpated from *Houtniquas*, at least, they now make no constant abode there; and those that now and then go thither from *Sitsikamma*, or from the other side of *Lange Kloofs* mountains, are soon discovered and shot.

The *tigers*, or more properly *leopards*, (for they seem rather to belong to that species) are not so easily extirpated, as their lurking-places in the forests are hardly to be found. In these parts, indeed, one seldom hears of their having
the

1775.
September.

the courage to attack mankind; though one cannot reckon one's self absolutely safe from their depredations.

Neither *wolves* nor *black monkies* are very common here. I have already told the reader what I know concerning these animals.

The sort of *badger* to which I allude, is called by the inhabitants *berg-varken*, or mountain-pig. These animals are said to be found likewise nearer the Cape, and have a long, extremely harsh, and somewhat blackish coat. I was told, that they are about a foot and a half high, and have their holes and hiding-places underneath stones, and particularly on the tops of mountains, from whence they never peep out but of nights. I had not the good fortune to see any of them. This animal must not be confounded with the *aard-varken*, or earth-pig, which, probably, is a species of *manis* (the *lezard ecailleux* of BUFFON,) and which is said to be found in considerable numbers in the district of *Zwartland*.

There have been, in all likelihood here, formerly *hart-beests*, as *Hartbeest-drift*, a small stream in this part of the country, has its name from those animals.

The *bosch-bock* (or wood-goat) Plate VI. Vol. II. is a species of antelope or gazel, which has been hitherto unknown to all the cultivators of natural history, whether ancient or modern, till I described it in the Memoirs of the Swedish Academy for the year 1780, quarter 3d, by the name of *antilope fylvatica*. This animal has obtained the name it goes by, in consequence of its being the only one among the gazels in Africa, which may be properly said to live in the woods and groves; excepting, however, Mr. Pen-
nant's

nant's *antilope royal*; unless, indeed, this little animal be the same with the *gnometie* of the colonists, or belong to the gazel genus.

1775.
September.

Groot Vader-bosch and *Houtniquas-bosch*, were the only forests in which I saw and gave chase to the bosch-bok. In other places, whether nearer to or farther from the Cape, it is hardly to be found, if not somewhere in *Sitsikamma*. It would, perhaps, be not disagreeable to zoologists, to find in this place a description of this rare species of *gazel*; and though I had no opportunity to make a drawing of it, otherwise than from a couple of these creatures skins, and from the observations I could make on it while it was running by me; yet I am apt to believe, that it may be pretty well depended on, and that, at least, it will be sufficient to assist the zoologists in their systematic researches.

With respect to its size, the bosch-bok is somewhat above two feet and a half high. From seeing it run, and from what I can conclude from the skins, it appears to me, that the body of this animal, when compared with the whole height of it, or with the length of its legs, is somewhat more bulky than that of the other kinds of gazel.

The measure of the dressed skin, from which both the description and drawing are chiefly taken, was as follows: The horns ten inches and a half long; their distance from each other at the base one inch; the distance between the tips as well as the middlemost parts of them three inches and a half; the ears were half the length of the horns, or five inches; the breadth of the forehead from eye to eye three inches; from the eyes to the horns one inch;
from

1775.
September.

from the horns to the nose six inches and a half; from the horns to the rump four feet; from the top of the back to the hoofs thirty-three inches; from the bending of the knees to the hoofs one foot; the hoofs themselves about an inch. The dressed skin of a *fœtus*, of which I took the measure, was about two feet in length. A pair of bosch-bok's horns, which I brought home with me, are ten inches long, and the base of each five inches wide. But on the skull of an animal of this species, brought home by Professor THUNBERG, the horns were thirteen inches long. From the dimensions of these parts, a conclusion may be drawn with respect to those of the remainder, as well as with respect to the size of the animal in general.

This species of gazel is monogamous, or keeps in pairs. The female is, according to all accounts, distinguished from the other sex in having no horns, in the loins being of a lighter colour, and in not having in these parts the long hairs, and especially the white ones, which we are about to mention in the description of the male.

The horns of this are black, in some measure triangular, and at the same time wreathed, so that both the sides and angles have somewhat of a spiral turn. At bottom they are rather rough, in consequence of a set of almost innumerable wavy rings; which, however, are not elevated much above the surface. At top they are conical and sharp-pointed, and in that part as smooth as though they had been polished. In a pair I brought with me, the extreme points or tips are light-coloured and transparent. As to the position of the horns, they are almost in the
same

same line or horizontal plane with the forehead, inclining a little forwards, and at the same time, by means of the twist they make, receding from each other towards the middle, and making with this part a little bend backwards, so that the tips point somewhat forwards. The three angles or ridges, that separate the three sides just mentioned, form a spiral in the following manner:

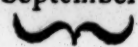
1775.
September.



The foremost is very much rounded and cylindrical, beginning inwards, and proceeding more and more forwards, till, coming sideways and a little outwards, it disappears in, and is confounded with the smooth conical tip. The second is a little raised, and mostly rounded off in the external part; but internally forms, as it were, a furrow, in conjunction with the foremost. This latter angle or ridge, moreover, goes off at first straight forwards from the forehead; and afterwards running sideways, outwards and backwards, at length joins the above-mentioned conical tip directly at the back part. The third angle has a sharper edge, which, beginning externally and at the back part, towards the middle of the horn, runs backwards and inwards, and afterwards terminates inwards and somewhat forwards, in the smooth tip like the others.

The teeth of this animal are like those of other gazels. It has no fore teeth or *incisores* except in the lower jaw, where it has eight. These are broader than the other teeth, being small at the roots, and broad and squared off at the top. Of the middle ones, which look towards each other, the interior sides are perpendicular; but the exterior ones oblique, and all the rest have a proportional inclination, at the same time decreasing in size; so that the outermost, both to the right and the left, are the smallest.

1775.
September.



There is no *porus cariferus* in this, as there is in other gazels. The hairs on the head are very short and fine; afterwards they become more rough and rugged, resembling goats hair more than that of gazels or harts. Forwards on the neck, breast, sides, and belly, they are an inch and a half or two inches long. On the ridge of the neck, and so on all along that of the back, they are three or four inches in length, so as to form a kind of mane there, terminating in a tail about a finger's breadth long. On the hind part of the thighs and buttocks likewise, the hairs are eight inches long; the legs and feet are slender, and covered with short hairs; the fetlock-joints are small; the nose and under-lip are decorated with black whiskers about an inch long.

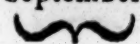
The predominant colour in this animal is dark-brown, which occupies the principal part of the sides, the back, the upper part of the tail, the upper part of the chest and fore ribs, and the fore part of the belly. A still darker brown, bordering upon black, is discoverable on the outside of the shoulders, and some part of the fore ribs. The fore part of the nose, from the eyes to the muzzle, is of a foot-colour. The ears are likewise as black as foot on the outside, but on the inside grey; and both outwards and inwards, covered with hairs still shorter than those on the head; excepting half the fore part of the lower edge, where the hairs are white and half an inch long.

The edges of the upper lip are white, as well as the whole of the lower lip and mandible, behind which the white colour terminates in a point towards the top of the wind-pipe. On each cheek-bone there are two large round

round white spots, one an inch beneath and behind the eye, the other an inch below and somewhat forwarder than the former. A still larger round white spot, two inches broad, is discoverable on the fore part of the neck, somewhat below the top of the wind-pipe. Nine inches below this, just above the fore ribs, there is another white spot, measuring six inches across, and an inch and a half in height. This, in the skin of the foetus I spoke of, was somewhat hollowed out, and thus resembled a new moon; but in this skin, the upper round spot, just described as being on the fore part of the neck, was not to be seen. The fur of this creature is, moreover, white between its fore legs, and somewhat on the sides of the shoulders. The fore legs, from the knees to the pasterns, are likewise white on the inside; and where it borders upon the brown part, inclines to a dirty yellow. On the outside of the fore legs, near the knees, there is a long oval white spot; and on the same side, just above the pastern-joint, there is a little cinnamon-coloured spot.

The hind legs, on the inside, from the pasterns to a little way above the bending of the knees, are marked with a white streak narrower than those on the fore legs. The pasterns of the hind legs are spotted with white on the fore parts, exactly like those of the fore legs. The back part of the belly or the groin is white. Divers small white spots, from nine to twelve in all, are seen on each of the haunches and on the sides near them. A narrow line of long white hairs extends from the neck all along the back and tail, in the midst of the long brown hairs which I have described above. From the chine of the back to the

1775.
September.



fides run five white parallel streaks, which, though they are not discoverable but by a close inspection, it was certainly proper to mention, in case some individual should be met with, on which these marks might be more distinct, and in consequence of which some people might be induced to take it for a distinct species.

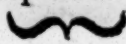
It is generally said, that goats are bad gardeners; and this in a certain degree is true of this *wood-goat*, or, as it is called, *bosch-bok*. At *Groot Vaders-bosch*, the people complained much of the mischief done by this creature in the vineyards and kitchen-gardens there. It likewise shewed a great deal of craft and artifice in avoiding the snares and traps set for it, as well as the ambuscades of the sportsmen. I myself sat up a whole night in a vineyard on the watch for this animal, without getting the least glimpse of it; though it had, according to all appearance, paid us a visit incog. and made off undiscovered.

As the *bosch-bok* runs but slowly, it sometimes happens, that he is caught with dogs. When he sees there is no other resource, he puts himself in a posture of defence; and when he is going to butt, kneels down. The colonists are not very fond of hunting him in this manner, as the beast, on this occasion, generally sells his life at a very dear rate, by goring and killing some of their best and most spirited hounds.

This creature's horns, which are its chief defence, sometimes also prove its bane, by being entangled in the bushes and small branches of trees, which thus stop the beast in its flight. In some measure to avoid this, it carries its nose horizontally and strait forward while it runs; so that
its

its horns lie, as it were, directly on its neck: notwithstanding which, their horns are generally worn away a little on the fore part, and thus acquire some degree of polish. In fine, this species of goat is swifter in woodlands than the dogs, which likewise sooner lose scent of him there.

1775.
September.



The female, which is without horns, and on that account runs about in the forests more free and unimpeded, does not suffer herself so easily to be hunted out of the woods, having there, as well as on the plains, a more certain defence against the dogs in her legs, than the male has in his horns, especially as she is not so bulky and heavy as the male. Her breast is said to be very plump and fleshy, but the flesh in general is not very tender; in that point resembling that of the *bunte-bok*, or *guib* of BUFFON, Tom. XII. tab. 40.

By the wreathing of their horns, the form of their bodies and white spots, it should seem moreover, that there was some distant affinity between these two sorts of gazels; but by no means great enough, for them to be merely varieties of the same species. Besides the difference in their colour and spots, which is too remarkable for them to be considered as one and the same animal, (not to mention the length of the *bosch-bok's* horns in proportion to its body,) I have never seen the *bunte-boks* live otherwise than in large herds on the plains, and these were at least half as high again as the *bosch-bok*, or of the same size with the *hartbeest*.

The cry of this animal, as I have several times, especially in the evenings, heard it in *Houtniquas*, somewhat resembled the interrupted, short, low, and rather hoarse growling

1775.
September.


growing of a dog. Yet, as I was informed by several people that the cries of the Cape *tigers*, or rather *leopards*, pretty much resembled this, I am uncertain whether the noise I heard always proceeded from the *bosch-bok*. Without doubt, it appears something extraordinary, that the cries of the *tiger* and a *gazel* should be like each other; but, perhaps, the tiger may have the gift of being able to imitate *bosch-boks*, in order to lead them astray; just as the *hyæna* has the power to imitate, for a similar purpose, all kinds of animals. Nay, there is likewise some resemblance between the cries of a *lion* and that of an *ostrich*; though between these animals there is much less affinity: and, indeed, there is no foundation for any conjectures concerning the cause of this similitude.

The *gnometie*, called also the *erwetie*, is a little animal of the hart or gazel kind, of the size of a hare, and is, perhaps, the *cervus Guineensis* of LINNÆUS, the *antilope royal* of PENNANT, and the *chevrotain de Guinée* of BUFFON. I have frequently perceived the traces and other marks of this diminutive creature, but had not the good fortune actually to see more than one of them; and that only in a hasty manner, as it was bounding about in a grove at *Sitsicamma*.

Of *hares* there are at least two different sorts in *Houtni-quas*, and in the other parts of Africa. The one is almost the same with our common hare; but of the other I find it difficult to pronounce, whether it be absolutely the same with the *lepus Capensis*, *Syst. Nat. cauda longitudine capitis, pedibus rubris*, or not. The feet excepted, the characteristic marks are the same; for the feet and body of this

were of the same colour as our common hares are in summer*, and the tail was almost of an equal length with the hare, as mentioned in the *Systema Naturæ*. I found it moreover broad at the base, and diminishing by degrees, so as to terminate in a point. Underneath and on the sides, the tail was as white as chalk, but above there was extended along it a stripe as black as a coal. This description I drew up from a young leveret of this species, which was brought to the Cape alive, and was the only one that I have ever seen.

1775.
September.



The *buffalos* (vide Plate II. Vol. II.) were of a sort entirely different from all hitherto known by this name, which is sufficiently manifest from the description I have already inserted in the Memoirs of the Swedish Academy for the year 1779. It is true, I had no opportunity in *Houtniquas*, either to see or shoot any of them; but I frequently met with the fresh traces of them. Such dangerous neighbours made it rather unsafe to botanize here; for though the buffalos do not absolutely go in search of mankind or the brute creation on purpose to do them mischief, except they are previously irritated, nevertheless, their perverse disposition and great strength of body render them extremely dangerous, when one meets them in the narrow paths, called buffalo-roads, where the wood on each side is frequently so thick set, as not to allow one to make way either to right or left. In a journey that Dr. THUNBERG, some years before, took into *Houtniquas*, one of his company had very imprudently tied two of his horses together, one behind the other, and drove them before

* In the colder climates of Europe, the common hare is white in winter.

1775.
September.

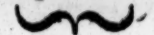
him on a narrow path. The owner of them had just time (and that was all) to save himself, while a buffalo meeting them gored the horses to death, and trampled them into the dust. But it will be more apposite to our purpose, to give the history and description of this beast farther on in the order of the time, when I became better acquainted with it. I likewise once saw a *tiger-wood-cat* and a *grys-bok*, and shall, perhaps, find a better opportunity to make farther mention of these also.

Of the feathered tribe I found in *Houtniqwas* a new species of *tantalus*, called by the colonists *bagedash*, and also *badelde*. This latter name has, in some measure, the same sound as the bird's note; the bird itself, which was said to be confined to this province, I have found likewise in great numbers about *Zwart-kops-rivier*. This same bird is called by the Hottentots *'ta 'kai 'kene*, a name which, if rightly pronounced with three smacks of the tongue against the roof of the mouth, a stranger will find more difficulty in uttering than the bird's own language. It lives chiefly on bulbs and roots, which with its crooked bill, it is said to dig up out of the plains with great ease and readiness. There it is shy and difficult to come at. In the evenings I always saw them upon some tree in the woods at roost, and in this situation, one morning at sun-rise, I had the good fortune to shoot one of them.

The bill of this bird was five inches long, black at the tip and lower nib, at the upper nib red. The neck was of an ash-colour: the back the same, and at the same time had a cast of green with a little yellow. The wings were dark beneath, and above of a blue colour inclining to black; the
 lesser

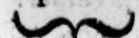
leffer coverts of a violet-colour. The tail, which was wedge-shaped, was about twice the length of the bill, and the body was somewhat larger than that of a hen. The thighs were of an ash-colour. The feet and legs, as well as the membrane between the claws, was blackish; in other respects, this bird had all the characteristic marks which belong to the *tantalus*. The colonists assured me, that it was a sign of rain, when these birds assembled in great flocks, and flew against the wind.

1775.
September.



The state of the weather in *Houtniquas* was said to be as follows. In March and April it rains here most; and, on the contrary, in the months of May, June, and July, (which about the Cape and elsewhere are the winter months, and are attended with copious rains) it is here quite dry, though frequently rather cool and bleak. The north-west wind at this time prevails here, as well as at the Cape; sometimes the wind veers about to the north, and brings with it the warmth of summer; a change which frequently occasions the milch-cows in *Houtniquas* to grow stiff in the joints. I was assured, that it never rained when this north wind prevailed, probably on account of the chain of mountains, which extends from east to west, proving a barrier to keep the clouds on the other side; or else by virtue of their attraction, detaining these condensed vapours on their summits. I went through the wood directly across it, with the intention of ascending the mountain, whence I might have a view of *Lange Kloof*; but found the foot of the mountain every where so thick over-run with high and stiff perennial grasses and bushes, as to be absolutely impenetrable.

1775.
September.



Houtniquas and *Lange Kloof*, however, communicate with each other in one place, by means of a very bad road over a mountain lower than the rest, near *Trakudiku*. I did not go quite on to this place, but saw from *Zwarte-rivier* the smoke of a chimney near *Trakudiku*, and from the information I thus acquired, gave this river in some measure its true situation in my map.

The badness of the road, and the want of a proper guide, together with the enfeebled state of my oxen, more particularly prevented me from going from this place to visit *Algoa-bay*, which, however, I wished much to do. Besides, we could not venture to quit our waggons and make the trip to that bay alone on horseback; as almost the whole province was involved in riot and drunkenness, by means of a hoghead of brandy that had been carried thither; and my Hottentots, likewise, by the same means, had been thrown into a state of licentiousness and confusion. There being no stills in those parts, a peasant there had wrote to the Cape for a quantity of the above-mentioned liquor, in order to turn a penny by retailing it out; but had in the mean while unfortunately drunk it himself by the wholesale, so as to be night and day in the highest degree intoxicated with it: and, indeed, in his fury, would have shot my companion dead on the spot, had I not been luckily near at hand to prevent him. In another place, where our landlord, in other respects a worthy man, and of a very gentle disposition, had made a purchase of some of this same brandy, he turned his wife, with a child in arms, and several other children somewhat older, out of doors in the middle of the night. The laws of hospitality, and perhaps an apprehension

1775.
September.

sion of meeting with some resistance, had, however, so much weight with him, that my companion and I were left in peace and quietness. In another place hereabouts, a peasant had been basking in the sun and drinking, in company with a parcel of Hottentots, who, when he had got his fill, was not only well flogged by this Pagan crew, but was upbraided by them for having been used to sleep with his housekeeper, a Hottentot's widow, who was supposed besides to be in another way nearly related to him. I myself saw this man with a terrible wound on his head, of which, however, he was ashamed to tell the cause. I likewise had the pleasure of seeing his mistress, dizen'd out with brass and leathern rings on her arms and legs, and with beads about her waist and neck. She was clad in the usual manner with a sheep-skin *pellisse*, and a well-greased raw leathern apron, was well besmeared with foot besides grease, and could boast of as broad and flat a nose as any Hottentot lady whatever. With all these perfections, however, she seem'd to me to be rather a cure for love, than an incentive to that passion: notwithstanding this, it is not uncommon for the white people here (particularly men who are more licentious in their manners than the other sex) to be criminal in this point. That the Hottentot women are complying in this particular, does not only contradict their general character of indifference in matters of love, but also that zeal, which I have attributed to them, in the performance of their duties towards their own nation.

Their diet, which, when they are in the service of the Christians, is more plentiful and of a more strengthening

1775.
September.

quality, and, perhaps, the incitement of the example of these latter, may have its effect in making some alteration in the nature of these females. Add to this, that out of the society of their nation, they do not feel themselves bound to observe that rigid virtue and simplicity of manners, which they otherwise would, any more than the religion of the Christians; neither can it indeed be required, that such a one should always be proof against flattery, promises, presents, and, perhaps, the threats, which a master, of whom she stands in awe, may think fit to employ, in order to satisfy his unruly desires. The pledges of love, proceeding from such a union, have hair almost, if not quite, as woolly and frizzled as the genuine Hottentots; but their complexion and features, partake more or less of both the father and mother. They are likewise, as it appears to me, more bulky and lusty than the Hottentots are in general; they are better respected too, and at the same time more confided in, and more to be depended upon, but at the same time prouder and more conceited than the others. Neither these, nor any other illegitimate children, are ever baptized, or, indeed, enquired after by the Christian ministers at the Cape, except in case that any one should present himself as the father, and make a point of the child's being baptized, and thus give the infant the right of inheritance.

I saw two brothers in the vicinity of *Hottentots Holland's Bath*, the issue of a Christian man and of a bastard negress of the second or third generation. One of the sons, at this time about thirty years of age, seemed not to be flighted in
the

the company of the Christian farmers, though, at that time, he had not been baptized. The other, who was the elder brother, in order to get married and settled in life, as he then was, had been obliged to use all his influence, and probably even bribes, to get admitted into the pale of the church by baptism. For my part, I cannot comprehend the reason why the divines of the reformed church at the Cape are so sparing of a sacrament, which others, particularly the Papists, have endeavoured to force, as it were, upon the heathens with fire and sword, and all manner of cruelties. The cloth does not, as far as I know, receive any benefit from the christening of children at the Cape, at least no particular benefit from the baptizing of illegitimate children; such conduct, therefore, cannot fairly be ascribed to any retrospect to self-interest, nor indeed to absolute remissness and neglect; a disposition which would but ill suit with that spirit of charity and universal benevolence, so peculiarly enforced by the doctrines of Christianity. Farther, if the clergy at the Cape think by this means to diminish the number of unlawful connections with the heathen women, they will find that this stroke of policy will not answer their purpose: indeed, the letting such numbers of infants born of Christian parents suffer in their spiritual interests, is a strangely cruel method of preventing sin. It is true, a great many of the whites have so much pride, as to hinder, as far as lies in their power, the blacks or their offspring from mixing with their blood: but it appears to me, that Christian humility ought to operate so far with the clergy, as to prevent them from being ashamed

1775.
September.

1775.
September.

ashamed to see their black fellow-creature walking cheek by jowl with them on the road to heaven.

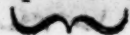
This puts me in mind of an event, which I had before seen mentioned somewhere (and, if I remember right, in the *Histoire Philosophique Politique*) as having happened not a long while ago in *Batavia*. I enquired, therefore, concerning the truth of it, of those that had lived at that place, and found several agreeing in the following account.

“ There was a citizen in *Batavia*, who had often importuned the ministers of his church to baptize his illegitimate child, but had always found them inflexible. “ Well and good ! says the man to them at last, it seems as if you alone wished to shut the door of heaven, the keys of which you imagine you have in your possession : but the Mahometan priests of the Malays, are not so churlish and niggardly of salvation as you are ; they having already promised me to incorporate my son this very day into their church, and make him a true Mussulman : for some kind of religion I am determined my child shall be of, as I hold that, in a well-regulated society, no man ought to be without a religion.” The Christian priests, however, no sooner saw that preparations were made for circumcision, than they hastened, by administering the sacrament of baptism, to deprive the Mahometan church of a soul, which they had just before rejected as illegitimate. And since that time, they are said to be less backward in opening the doors of heaven to bastards.”

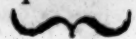
Here follows another instance of the depravity of taste in the white people in this colony, with regard to love matters. I

paid

paid a visit to a European, who had settled in Houthiquas. He was a good lively handsome fellow, about the middle age, and, I believe, of good extraction. He had served under several different potentates in Europe, and had shewed them all a fair pair of heels. He gave me the history of a great many singular adventures of his, but the most singular of them all, in my opinion, I was eye-witness to myself. This was, that he had married two years before an ugly footy Mulatto, the daughter of a Negress. She had been the mistress of another farmer who was dead, and by whom she had a couple of bastards. These I saw at that time likewise in the house, grown up and unbaptized. But what seemed to me the most singular circumstance in the whole affair was, that this must have been absolutely a love-match; for though he had got a few cattle with his dingy spouse, yet the house, which he likewise had with her, was certainly not a palace. It was, in fact, a miserable cottage, though pleasantly enough situated in the skirts of a forest. The walls were made of reeds tied together, and supported by a few upright chumps of wood, interspersed with some rough boards, such as are generally used for fences. This structure was plaistered over with a thin and ragged covering of clay. There were but two rooms in it, and poverty seemed to have taken full possession of them both. In the inner room, the man's wife lay ill of a putrid fever. The outer apartment, which was the common bed-chamber for all the rest of the family that were in health, I can best describe. It was somewhat more than two yards in breadth,

1775.
September.

1775.
September.



and about six long, with a peep-hole at one end of it, and a small broken window at the other; not to speak of several other apertures, which occasioned a draught of air that delivered my friend and me from all apprehensions of danger from the contagion of the putrid fever, but at the same time prevented us from keeping a candle alight for any length of time. The rain, which had wetted us to the skin when out of doors, now followed us into the house, dropping from the eaves; a sign that the roof could not boast of any great superiority over the walls. Our bed was on the damp loam-floor; a piece of sail-cloth, the relicks of an old waggon-tilt, served us and our landlord himself both for bed and bed-clothes; as for pillows, there were none but what we brought with us, which consisted merely of our dripping-wet saddles. We shall now drop the subject of the amorous intercourse of the white people with the blacks, in order to give, in a few words, a general idea of the houses in *Houtniquas*, that posterity may from hence be able to judge of the future increase of the colony.

There was only one wooden house on the borders of this forest, and this was long and spacious, with but one room in it, and built with logs cleft down the middle. Another was like that just described, composed of straw and clay, but not quite so transparent; this belonged to a young beginner. A third that we saw was likewise of clay, but well-built, roomy, and neatly furnished; being the property of a clever, industrious, well-behaved man, DIRK YVES by name, who had likewise built himself a mill,

mill, and several other conveniencies. The rest were all of clay or mud, and were partitioned out into two rooms, in the same manner as I have in general described the colonists houses at the beginning of this journal. 1775.
September.

It was said to be at that time, not above twenty years since *Houtniquas* was first known, and twelve years since it began to be inhabited by the colonists, who did not repair thither in any considerable numbers till of late years.

I mentioned, that the confusion and disturbance occasioned by the introduction of the hoghead of brandy, had reached even to my Hottentots; and that on this account I was obliged, much against my will in other respects, to make haste with them from these parts. My companion had been imprudent enough, at their earnest request, to indulge them with a sup or two of this precious liquor; the consequence of which was, that they became furious, and broke out into the most abusive language, because they could not have any more of it. At length, we were forced to try what blows would operate upon them; which had this effect, that the next night, by way of revenge, they took to their heels and ran away. We, on our parts, rode to one of the two *Hottentot craals* that were at the hither end of *Houtniquas*, in order to search for them. In the first they were not to be found, neither did the people chuse to give us any explicit information concerning them; but when we came to the other, and began to climb over the fence, or the place where they kept their cattle, they let all their dogs out at once upon us. We directly put ourselves in a posture of defence, as if we were going

1775.
September.

to shoot both the dogs and their masters. This occasioned the Hottentots to call their dogs off, which obeyed immediately. We then went into their houses without delay or molestation, some of which were built of straw in a square form, with shelving roofs, like the cottages of the slaves. In one of these cottages, on a little bench, we found our Hottentots fast asleep. We contented ourselves with gently reproaching them on the score of their misconduct; but at the same time, with an air of authority, commanded them to return to their duty. They, on their side, without answering us or offering to gainsay us in the least, followed us as quietly as if they had been our prisoners. They took leave of their countrymen and countrywomen by shaking hands with each other, in the Dutch fashion, though without bowing; at the same time with great cordiality, and a deal of talk on both sides. The women seemed as if they wanted to keep them, and I do not doubt but that the fellows would have been easily prevailed on, if our guns had been out of the way. Indeed, with respect to my Hottentots, I was as much afraid of the temptations of the women as of the intoxicating quality of the brandy; and therefore made so much the more haste to get away from this place, which otherwise might for many years have afforded employment to the attentive researches and observations of a botanist.

Our departure took place in the beginning of October; but before I go on any farther with my journal, I will set down the state of the weather for the month of September just elapsed.

The

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

291

The rainy days were the 8th, 9th, 16th, 20th, 21st, 24th, 25th, 29th; and the last of these days was remarkable for south-east winds and rain. The thermometer was for the most part early in the morning between 49 and 50, in the middle of the day between 76 and 80, and in the evening at sun-set between 50 and 60.

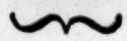
1775.
September.

C H A P. VIII.

Journey through Lange Dal.

1775.
October.

ON the 9th day of October we departed from Houtniquas, returning over the great and little *Brak* rivers to *Geelbek-rivier*, from whence to *Hagel-craal* and *Artaquas-kloof*, whither we went the next day: there were two roads. The one, which was better cleared and more beaten, though farther to the west of the last-mentioned river, we sent our waggon by; and took the other road, though it was hilly, ourselves, being advised so to do, as it was a nearer way on horseback. By a trifling neglect, one often loses a great deal; and we, by loitering a little on the road, were disappointed of our night's lodging, being overtaken by the darkness and rain; so that, although we were near the farm whither we were going, and heard the barking of their dogs, and the crowing of their cocks, we were not able to hit upon the spot. After many fruitless attempts, and getting into the roads that led to the pastures, and other by-ways that took us into thickets, and directly against the steep parts of mountains, we at last thought we had hit upon the right road, when we found in our way a river deeper than any we had hitherto, in
our

1775.
October.


our bewildered situation, ventured to cross. It is true, we were not afraid of being soured a little by going through the water, as the rain had made us almost as wet as we well could be; but neither of us chose to be the first to venture over, for fear of there being some hole or oozy part in our way. I therefore drove before us over the river, on the *forlorn hope*, as it were, an old horse that I led in hand along with me. No sooner had he got over than he set off full gallop, and freed himself in an instant from the confinement in which we had kept him the whole day; while we, wet, cold, and hungry (having eaten nothing all day long but a slight breakfast) were obliged, after several more unsuccessful attempts, to pass the night in the open air, exposed to the wind and rain. That we might not so easily be attacked unawares by tigers, we got away from the river and vale, which was full of bushes, on to the mountain, and there took the saddles off our horses near a bush that stood quite separate and alone. Hardby was a precipice, which we fortunately perceived time enough to be able to be upon our guard against it. Having tied our horses halters round their fore legs, a method very common in Africa, we then let them feed on the other side, with a view, that if any lion should come upon us, he might first find employment with them; and at the same time, that if a wolf should make its appearance, the horses should not run off. The reason of this precaution will appear by referring to page 160.

In the night, when we felt ourselves almost stiff with cold, we wandered up and down, and frequently fell down on the top of the mountain, which was greasy and slippery,

1775.
October.

pery, in consequence of the rain. With regard to our situation in other respects, it was difficult to say, whether it gave us more comfort or vexation to hear, as we frequently did, the farmer's cocks crow. As soon as ever the day began to dawn, at about five o'clock, we saddled our horses without delay, and easily found our way to the farm called *Hagel-craal*, which was only at the distance of a few gun-shots from us. DIRK MARCUS, the master of it, a hearty old fellow, as soon as we accosted him, began to praise us highly for industrious young men who were up before him; but afterwards, when he was made acquainted with the difficulties we had undergone, he heartily pitied us, though he could not help at the same time seriously chiding us for not being accustomed to smoke; as in that case we might, at a juncture when it was most wanted, have had about us the means of making a fire, as well as of appeasing our hunger, and passing away the tedious hours with a pipe. After this, he gave us an account of a great many adventures he had met with in his excursions into the interior part of the country, where he had acquired a tolerable competency by shooting elephants. The information and advice he gave us were both useful and agreeable.

This worthy man sent his people after the led horse, which I mentioned as having run away from me; and when we took our departure, which was on the 13th, at ten o'clock in the morning, he lent us several stout oxen to help to draw our waggon over the very hilly dale called *Artaquas-kloof*. At six we arrived at *Paarde-craal*, a small river so called, where we rested till the next morning,

morning, or the 14th. By noon we reached *Zaffraan-craal*, at which place the long and tiresome vale of *Artaquas* ends. Here, according to previous agreement, we turned the oxen we had borrowed loose, which went home of themselves the same way we had brought them. The vale just mentioned, is reckoned among the districts which are cold and four in the highest degree, and at the same time is considered as unfit to be inhabited. Here there is said to grow a herb, called by the colonists p—grafs, and which, as far as one may trust to their description of it, is, probably, a species of *euphorbia*. This is said to be frequently eaten by young cattle brought from other countries, which thereby get a dysury, or stoppage of urine, that often proves mortal. In the urine as well as the urethra of these animals, a substance resembling little lumps of cheese has been observed. The only means by which they have sometimes been so fortunate as to save the life of an animal attacked with this disease, has been by hunting and driving it about for some time without intermission, in order to attenuate, concoct, and expel the coagulated matter.

In time of war or intestine commotion, a pass so narrow as *Artaquas-kloof*, must necessarily be of great importance, as a key to the whole tract of country lying to the eastward. In *Lange-kloof*, likewise, and *Kromme-rivier*, many impediments might be laid in the way of an army that was marching that way. The tract of land round about *Zaffraan-craal* strait on to *Lange-kloof*, is of the kind I have described above under the denomination of *Carrow*.

In the house at *Zaffraan-craal* we suffered an inconvenience, which is said to be very common in the *Carrows*.

1775.
October.

1775.
October.

This was the common house-fly in such prodigious quantities, as almost entirely to cover the walls and ceiling. In fact, they did not cease for a moment to molest us, by swarming and buzzing about in our eyes, ears, noses, and mouths, so that it was not possible for us to keep in the house for any time together: notwithstanding which, an old slave, who at that time lived there quite alone, was obliged to sleep in the midst of this nest of flies every night. In other tracts of this country molested by flies, I saw these troublesome insects taken very dexterously in the following manner. All over the ceiling are hung up bunches of herbs, on which the flies are fond of settling; a person then takes a linen net or bag of some depth fixed to a long handle, and putting it round every bunch, shakes it about, so that the flies fall down to the bottom of the bag; where, after several applications of it in this manner, they are killed by the pint or quart at a time, by dipping the bag into scalding-hot water. In certain parts of the *Carrow*, where the flies abound most, it is said, that there is a bush which exudes a humour somewhat of the nature and consistence of tar. This, by its adhesive quality, detains the flies, which are very fond of settling on the plant, and by this means destroys them. There is another shrub frequently found in the *Carrow*, which grows here likewise, and is called *Canna-bosch*; whence the whole tract of country hereabouts bears the name of *Canna's*, and not *Canaan's Land*, as Mr. MASON has called it in the *Philosophical Transactions*. In fact, from the extreme drought that prevails here, instead of the Land of *Promise*, Mr. MASON would have done better to have called it

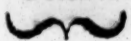
it the Land of *Affliction*. A road between *Artaquas* and *Lange-kloof*, inclining more to the southward than that by which we went, passes over a high and steep mountain, which, from the circumstance above-mentioned, is called *Canna's-boogte*, or Canna's-heights.

1775.
October.

Having examined this same Canna-shrub I found, that in strict propriety, it formed a new species of *salsola*; for which reason, in my manuscript descriptions of plants, I have called it *Salsola caffra, foliis minutis subrotundis, carnosiss, concavis, imbricatis*. The leaves have a bitter salt taste, and burned together with the whole shrub, produce very strong ashes, excellently well adapted for the purpose of making soap; for which reason, particular attention is paid by the *Carrow* farmers to the culture of this plant. In the parts of the flower, the *Canna*-shrub so far differs from the generical character of the *salsola* in the sixth edition of the *Genera Plantarum*, inasmuch as this species has a little obsolete *style*, with two or three brown *stigmas*. The remaining parts of its character were, *Stam. fil. breviss. Antheræ cordatæ, Calyx perianth. persistens, Capsula 5 valvis, 1 locularis, and Semen 1 cochleatum*, as in the *salsola*, or rather resembling a watch-spring coiled up.

It was curious to see how the only slave that was then at *Zaffraan-craal*, and who had the absolute management of the farm, how skilfully, I say, with the assistance of two Hottentots who dwelt not far from the place, he had brought the water in rills and channels down to the fields of wheat (of which the ears at that time were peeping forth,) as well as to the garden; and had made dams at these places, so that they might be overflowed and water-

1775.
October.



ed whenever it was requisite, by which means they appeared clad with a delightful verdure. In every other part the earth was as much parched up, and as dry as the high road; on which account, having set out upon our journey at night, for the sake of taking the benefit of the coolness of the air, we were soon obliged to turn back and stay till morning, as we were not able to distinguish the road from the other parts of the fields and commons.

The next morning we continued our route, and after passing over *Morafs-rivier*, came to *Canna-river*, by others called *Kleindorn-rivier*, where we baited. All the verdure our oxen and horses could find here consisted only in a small quantity of a reed (*arundo phragmites*) still left in the above-mentioned river, the greater part of it having been previously consumed by the cattle belonging to former travellers. It happened, however, that we staid longer than we ought to have done in a place that was eaten so bare, in order to regale ourselves with a meal of our own cooking, composed of a kind of a partridge that I had just shot, as for the last three days we had had nothing to satisfy the cravings of our appetites but our Hottentot's coarse ammunition-bread and a little tea. It fell to my lot to pluck the bird, and Mr. IMMELMAN undertook to dress it; and, indeed, he shewed himself a perfect master in the art, stewing it in a *quantum sufficit* of water, and a little *sheep's-tail* fat, which our Hottentots had got at *Zaffraan-craal* for their own eating; so that it would be no easy matter to describe the highly agreeable sensations conveyed by this delicate dish to the organs both of taste and smell.

But,

But, as ill-luck would have it, we had neither of us remembered to draw the fowl, till in order to divide it equally between us, we cut it in two; when the sauce, which we just before had found delicious in the highest degree, became quite nauseous. The Hottentots laughed heartily at our omission, and still more at our delicacy, and at the same time licked it up every drop.

1775.
October.

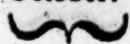
The delay occasioned by this meal caused us to be overtaken by darkness, before we could reach the next farm; in consequence of which, we got into a labyrinth of bushes and briars for want of being able to see the road. We were therefore obliged to stop, and prepare to suffer hunger and thirst, together with our beasts, till the next morning, and be almost frozen to death into the bargain; for though it had been reeking hot the preceding day, the night was nevertheless extremely cold. About midnight, however, the moon shone, and enabled us once more to find the road, when we soon came to a farm near *Kleine Dorn-rivier*, called *Zandplaat*.

It was not without the greatest astonishment, that we beheld the next morning the considerable number and unparalleled fatness of the sheep here, when we compared them with the horrid drought and aridity of the land. In this part of the country, when they are going to kill a sheep, they always look out for the leanest in the whole flock, as the rest are intolerably fat. The tail alone of one of these sheep (which is thick and of a triangular shape, being from a foot to a foot and a half in length, and sometimes above six inches thick near the rump) will weigh from eight to twelve pounds; and mostly consists of a delicate

Q q 2

kind

1775.
October.



kind of fat, which by some people is eaten with bread instead of butter, and is used for dressing victuals with, and sometimes even for making candles.

Here, as being produced in the *Carrow* and in a warm district, the wine is said to be good; but I can form no judgment of it myself, as the farmer had already sold or consumed all he had made. On the other hand, in *Lange Kloof*, as being a *four* district, not a drop of wine can be made.

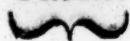
Some Hottentot wives had got their huts built near this farm; and a Hottentot lad, who was, in fact, in the service of the farmer, had at that time lain for several days in their quarters, afflicted with a bad disorder, which seemed to have a great affinity with the putrid fever epidemic here, and consequently would not bear bleeding. I was forced, however, to undertake this operation, in order to rescue the lad from the clutches of his master, who had an unlimited confidence in venesection, and had already whetted his knife on purpose to perform it. The patient, who either could not or else would not give any account of the state in which he found himself, had, previous to the operation, a small pulse; and during it was taken with a universal tremor, upon which, after his arm was bound up again, supervened convulsive twitchings. So that, in fact, we left our patient in a much weaker condition than we found him in, though I had been very sparing in taking blood from him. My host, nevertheless, was very well satisfied, and would not be persuaded but that the tremor was going off; at the same time he bade his wife give me for my trouble the best of every thing they had in the house.

house. In the space of about half an hour, however, they came and told us, that the poor lad was at the point of death. I cannot deny, but that I reproached myself internally, with having been in a manner the instrument of his death; I did not however omit, in order as it were to disburthen my conscience, to reproach my host bitterly, as having been the principal cause of sending the soul of a Hottentot into eternity. But the good man seemed so much troubled, and took it so to heart, that I was actually going to comfort him, when he at last broke silence with a deep sigh, and answered me with some warmth, saying, The devil a bit did he care for the Hottentot or his soul either, so that he could but get another ox-leader in his stead, as he must soon drive to the Cape to dispose of his butter.

In the mean time we went to see the ceremonies practised with the corpse. In fact, they consist in this; the Hottentots shake, jolt, pummel and cuff their dying countrymen, as well as such as are just dead; at the same time shrieking and hollowing in their ears, and casting a world of reproaches on them for dying. Neither do they forget besides to endeavour, by fair words and promises, to persuade them not to leave this world; as if it depended on a man in the agonies of death, to die or not, just as he pleased. I now saw this ceremony performed to a hair on the youth I had let blood, by two Hottentot old women. Indeed, I was afraid, that by their perseverance in this pious work, they would quite suffocate the small spark of life which, at least just after our arrival, was perceived in him; but, on the contrary, the patient came a little to himself, so that it appeared, as if by their shaking and jolting, they had

1775.
October.
~~~~~

1775.  
October.



had put the languid circulation, and consequently the vital powers into proper motion again. My host and I, however, on our sides, did not neglect to get some brandy as soon as possible, in order to moisten his lips and nose with it. I afterwards heard here, on my return from my tour, that this swoon came on the youth in consequence of their having let him run out of the house during the frenzy produced by the fever; as likewise, that low and fatigued as he was at that time, yet in the space of ten or twelve days he had grown quite stout and hearty, insomuch, that he had run away from his master during the journey to the Cape, in which I mentioned that my host intended to make use of him as ox-leader.

There was an *otter* extremely well stuffed, which I now keep in the cabinet of curiosities belonging to the Academy of Sciences, but which being a rarity in those parts, my landlord intended as a present for the governor, and had kept it hid up in a private place for that purpose: he now, however, gave it to me by way of recompence for bleeding the lad, so thankful was the simple boor, and so much charmed with this operation. This otter seemed to be of the same species with our European otter, and to differ from it only in size, and in being of a lighter colour. The length of the body, measuring from the nose to the root of the tail, is two feet and a half, and the whole length of the tail rather more than eighteen inches. This animal, in all probability, lives chiefly on a kind of round crabfish and frogs; as in the fresh water of all the African rivers, that I have laid down in my map, two sorts of fish only, that I know of, are to be found, (and these too in a very trifling

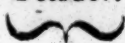
trifling quantity) viz. a very small kind of *gilt-head*, the species of which I have forgot to describe, and the *cyprinus gonorynchus*, about the size of an ordinary herring.

1775.  
October.

On the 17th we went from the arid Carrow district into *Lange Kloof*, (or the long dale) which commences at *Brakrivier*. By way of reinforcing my team, I was obliged to buy another pair of oxen here, at eight rixdollars a head. The farmer's wife, who seemed to be the chief manager here, warranted them to be without fault or blemish. As one of them, however, when we drove from hence, was soon found to be rather lame in one of the hind legs, we began to harbour some suspicions of the fair vender's honesty. Her neighbours at least assured us, that with respect to the dependence that was to be placed on her word, the ox might have been lame of all four legs, without our having any reason to blame any thing but our own credulity. We were likewise over-reached with regard to a horse that we left here, by this same hostess of ours and her husband. Shortly after this they removed to the Cape, with a view to go into the commercial line there. They were nevertheless at this time, hospitable to the fullest extent of the word; at the same time, eating themselves with an appetite that astonished us. As hospitality is commonly practised, and, indeed, is a leading feature in the character of the country people here, so it appears to me from several circumstances, that deceit in their dealings is likewise very prevalent in the colony; and by no means considered in so low and despicable a light, as it is with us, or as it really deserves to be.

In


1775.  
October.



In the neighbourhood of *Brak-rivier*, as well as in other places in *Lange Kloof*, they made great complaints concerning the p— grafs mentioned above, as growing in *Artaquas Kloof*; though nobody could, with any degree of certainty, point out any particular herb as coming under that denomination.

In this part of the country I was consulted by a married woman, who, through ignorance, as well as impatience, had pulled away piece-meal her uterus, which was in a prolapsed state, without any bad consequences ensuing.

Near the source of *Keurebooms-rivier* there was a farm, from which, by a troublesome foot-path, one might go in a day to *Algoa-bay* in *Houtniquas*. *Pott-rivier* is likewise called *Chamika*, a name, which, as there was no room for it in the map, I thought it was proper to mention here for the sake of future travellers. As Mr. IMMELMAN and I being on horseback, had rode to a good distance before the waggon, we lost our way, it being then very dark; we had the good luck, however, at length, to come up to a farm, not far from the last-mentioned river. We found the farm inhabited only by some Hottentots, who were left there by a colonist in order to look after it. They were so cross-grained, as not to answer either in Dutch or Portuguese Mr. IMMELMAN's enquiries about the road, although he promised to give them something to drink, and though, as we were afterwards assured, they perfectly understood both these languages; but, to make amends, they jabbered a great deal to us in their own, of which, however, we could not comprehend a syllable. I do not know whether

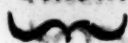
1775.  
October.  


whether this behaviour proceeded from a wicked disposition, the foundation of which is to be sought for in the general depravity, as it is called, of human nature; or whether it might not rather be considered, as a well-founded grudge harboured in the breasts of these people against the Christian colonists. We since heard of many instances, in which the same thing had happened elsewhere to other Christians, who, by way of putting a trick on these poor fellows, pretended to be ignorant of the Hottentot language; and by this means heard unsuspected the answers of the Hottentots, consisting in mere impertinence and scoffing jests, which they threw out against the Christians with the highest glee, and, as they thought, with impunity, till the latter pulled off the mask in order to avenge themselves.

As we could get no information from these Hottentots, we endeavoured to find the way again ourselves, as well as we could: but just as I imagined I had hit upon it, and as I was riding across the river just mentioned, my horse sank all at once in the ooze quite up to the saddle. I immediately threw myself off on the bank; but we found it a difficult matter to drag my horse out of this quagmire; and afterwards were obliged, together with our waggon, that came up afterwards, to wait for the dawn of the following day (the 22d) before we could find the right fording-place, when we proceeded to the river *Kukoi*, or, as it is pronounced, *t'Ku-t'koi*.

This name, which signifies head or master, has probably been bestowed upon this river, as being the first branch, or rather the source of the great river of *t'Cam-t'Nasi*, which again runs into that of *tC'amtour*. The farm at

1775.  
October.



*Kukoi* river is called *Avanture*. From the mountains thereabouts we saw the sea, without being able to get the least glimpse of the forests of *Houtniquas*, on account of other mountains situated between. Neither had any one tried to go down from hence into *Houtniquas*.

We staid in *Lange Kloof* till the 31st, or last day of this month inclusively.

At *Apies-rivier* I saw an old *Boshies-man* with his wife, who, I was informed by farmer *P. Verejra*, had, a few months before, reigned over above a hundred *Boshies-men*; but they were now translated by the farmer from that princely, or rather patriarchal dignity, to that of being shepherds to a few hundreds of sheep. With regard to other matters, he gave them the highest commendations, as being quite different from the *Hottentots* in general, alert and exact in their business, and likewise as being well contented with their lot, and suiting their inclinations to their fortunes. It is possible, indeed, that this ancient couple, in consequence of their good sense and experience, might actually find a greater and more substantial bliss in being placed at the head of a flock of sheep, than when they were on their throne surrounded by their subjects. I will even admit the farmer's assertion, that his sheep thrive better under the care of these illustrious and consequently more enlightened personages; yet still it is a deed that cries to heaven for vengeance, to bereave a whole community of its head and governor, for the sake of some advantage and utility accruing thereby to a flock of sheep, the property of a vile peasant!—We saw, moreover, as we rode along, (especially in *Lange Kloof*) numbers of fugitive *Hottentots*

tentots of both sexes, who were now no longer pursued, partly on account of their age and infirmities, and partly because it was not worth any colonist's while to lay hold on them, as they would be liable to be demanded back by their former masters. One of these that I passed on the road, a very old man, died (as I was told) the day after of weakness and fatigue. Most of these fugitives carried a thick stout staff, generally headed with a heavy griststone of two pounds weight or more, rounded off, and with a hole bored through the middle of it, in order to increase the force of the stick for the purpose of digging up roots and bulbs out of the ground; and at the same time for piercing the hard clay hillocks, which are formed to the height of three or four feet, by a kind of ants, (*termes*) a species of insect of which the Boshies-men's food in a great measure consists. It gave me no small pain, to see the poor old fugitives frequently wasting the remains of their strength on these hardened hillocks in vain, some other animal, that feeds on ants, having worked its way into them, and consumed all their provision before hand.

I was at a place in *Lange Kloof*, where several Hottentot fugitives came to beg tobacco of our hosts. They acknowledged, that they had come over the mountains from *Hout-niquas*, where they had, indeed, had a very good master; but said, that they chose to go home to their own country: and, indeed, since the death of one of their companions, were more particularly obliged to remove from thence.

At *Krakkeel-rivier* the ground was very stony, and there were a great many heaps of pebble-stones, three or four feet in height, that had lain there time out of mind; so that no conjectures

1775.  
October.

could be formed, to what end or on what occasion they had been laid up together.

In a vale near this spot I saw several large pits, with a sharp stake placed in the middle, intended as snares to catch the larger sort of game. I and my horse were very near being caught in one of them ourselves.

In the mountains near *Klippen-drift* lives, it is said, a race of Hottentots, which, from the place of their abode, are called Mountain-Hottentots. These are, without doubt, the same kind of Boihies-men, that steal and make their prey of cattle, and, in other respects, live on game and the natural produce of the fields, as I have described above. The farmers hereabouts, on that account, did not dare to let their cattle feed at any distance from their farms.

At *Zwarte Kloof*, a farm between *Krakkeel* and *Wagenbooms-rivier*, they shewed me a Hottentot girl, about ten years old, who, though born and brought up in their service, had got, as they said, even at that tender age, the Hottentot way of eloping. She had run away for a fortnight together, and in all this time had lived on nothing but the wild produce of the fields and woods; and yet had kept up her flesh, and returned home plump and in good condition. On her return, she gave an account of herself to the following purport. That she had wandered to a great distance, and once at the sight of a huge beast, (which, on her giving a farther description of it, was supposed to have been a lion) she was so terribly frightened, that she immediately made the best of her way home.

About *Wagenbooms-rivier* there is found, according to all accounts, a lizard as black as a coal, about a foot in length,

length, which we supposed to be very venomous, as the Hottentots testified the greatest dread of them. This creature is said, however, to be very rare. The heaps of stones lying near this same river, are the peculiar abode of great numbers of those little animals which are described by M. PALLAS, by the name of *cavia Capensis* \*, and by the colonists are called *dasses*, or badgers. These creatures, which have some affinity with the ordinary marmots, and are about the same size, are eaten by many people, who look on them as a delicacy. They are likewise easily made extremely tame, and are found in many other places in the African mountains. The little *Dassen* islands on the western coast of Africa, take their name from them.

1775.  
October.

On those places in the mountains, where these creatures dwell, there is found a substance called here *Dassen-piss*. It resembles petrolæum, or rock-oil, and by many, that have seen it, is actually considered as such. It is likewise used by some people for medical purposes, and by them is supposed to have greater powers than is consistent with any degree of probability. Finding that this substance did not stand the same proofs as petrolæum, and at the same time that it was found only in places frequented by the *dasses*, I had sufficient reason to conclude that it proceeded from this animal, and that it is most probably the menstrual excretion of the creature; as observations made on a tame female of this species, have given room for such a suspicion; and as besides the dass's excrements are often found in this substance, and seldom any where else.

\* This animal is of the same genus with the Guinea-pig, or *cavia cobaya*.

The

1775.  
October.

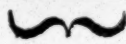
~ The river of *Three Fountains*, (*Drie Fonteins*) the last in Lange Kloof, is the origin of some great river in Sitficamma.

The temperature of the air for this month of October, approached as nearly as possible to that of the preceding month, or September. The rainy days were the 9th, 10th, 19th, 20th, 22d, 23d, 26th, 27th, and 28th.

## C H A P. IX.

*Journey from Lange Dal to Sitficamma, and from  
thence to Sea-cow River.*

ON the 1st of November we fet out for *Kromme-rivier*, or the Crooked-river, so called from the circumstance of its running with many turnings and windings through a very narrow dale. This river was very full of ooze, and in other respects was inconvenient to us, as we had to cross it eight times before we got to *Essenbosch*, which was the following day, or the 2d of November.

1775.  
November.  


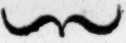
The name of *Essenbosch* is given to a kind of woody tract along *Essen-rivier*, which, as well as the wood, has taken its name from the esse or ash-tree. This tree makes an entirely new genus, and is described by me in the Transactions of the Royal Academy of Sciences, by the name of *Ekebergia Capensis*, in compliment to SIR CHARLES GUSTAVUS EKEBERG, Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences, and Knight of the Order of Vasa, who was the occasion of my making this voyage; and who, by his zeal for natural history, and the great pains he has been at in promoting it, is highly deserving of this distinction.

The

1775.  
November.

The tract of country round about this place is considered as *four*. A farmer had lately chosen this spot to cultivate and live in. For the present, a hut composed of leaves and straw was all the house he had. Here I found and made a description of many trees and shrubs, which I had not seen before. Here were likewise, in greater numbers than elsewhere, insects of that peculiar genus first described by Professor THUNBERG, by the name of *pneumora*, in the Swedish Transactions, Vol. XXXVI. p. 254. This species, to which likewise must be referred the Gr. *papillos*. FABR. is composed of 1. pn. *immac.* (gryll. *unicol.* LINN:) 2. pn. *macul.* (gr. *variolos.* LINN. and FABR.) 3. pn. *sex gutt.* (gr. *inan.* FABR.) They are from two to three inches long, and their abdomen, one single small gut excepted, is found empty, and at the same time quite pellucid, and likewise blown up and distended; on which account they are called *blaazops* by the colonists, and are said to live on nothing but wind. In the day time they are mostly silent, but in the places haunted by them, one sometimes of an evening hears the noise of them from all sides, which is tremulous and tolerably loud. They are easily allured by any strong light in the dark, and then are easiest caught; but very rarely appear at that time. A person assured me, they might easily be brought out of their-hiding places by a noise, or by talking to them, as it were, and going to meet them; but when he made the experiment in my presence it failed.

On the 3d we baited at the next farm, which was on the other side of *Diep-rivier*. Several Hottentots of the Boshiesman race, who were in the farmer's service, had their huts

1775.  
November.  


near the farm. These huts were made of straw, but were now, for the greater part, covered besides with large slips of elephant's flesh, which was cut out zig-zag fashion in strings or slips of the thickness of two, three, and four fingers breadth, and hung together to the length of several fathoms. Some of these were wound round the huts, while others were stretched from one hut to the other for the sake of drying them. At this time the men, women, and children here had no other employment than that of sleeping, smoking, and eating elephant's flesh. And though I had eaten dog's flesh in the South-Sea, yet the looks and flavour of the present entertainment, were sufficient to take from me all curiosity and desire of tasting that of the elephant. Besides, at this time it was not fresh, but had been dried for some days in the sun; so that had I tasted of it, my opinion could not by any means have been depended on; and I should have drawn upon myself the contempt of the colonists into the bargain, who look upon it almost as horrible an action to eat the flesh of an elephant as that of a man; as the elephant, according to them, is a very intelligent animal, which, when it is wounded and finds that it cannot escape from its enemies, in a manner weeps; so that the tears run down its cheeks, just as with the human species when in sorrow and affliction. I was desirous of riding out upon the plains where the elephants had been shot, in order to see the skeletons of them; but I was assured, that all their bones had been already dragged off the premises by the wolves.

1775.  
November.



This which they were now feasting upon they supposed to be a young male, as the tusks were rather of the smallest, being no more than three feet long, and its largest grinders not above four inches in breadth; while the grinder of an elephant which I got from some other elephant-hunters at the Cape, and now preserve in the cabinet of the Royal Academy of Sciences, is nine inches broad, and weighs four pounds and a half; though it bears evident marks of having been the farthest tooth in the jaw, and of not being grown to its full size, having been enclosed in the gum to about two-thirds of its breadth. The distance from the root to the top of the tooth, or its elevation above the socket, seems to have been three inches. The ears of the elephant shot at this place, were reported to have reached from the shoulders of a middle-sized Hottentot down to the ground. One of the fore legs, which had been brought to the farm, lay there as yet undissected. The hide was not near so compact and close as those of the rhinoceros and hippopotamus, but the texture of it seemed to be composed of larger tubes and blood-vessels; at the same time that the external surface of it was more uneven, wrinkled, and knotty, and therefore cannot be used for making whips, as are the hides of the animals just mentioned. The foot was almost round, measuring very little more across than the leg, which was hardly one foot in diameter. The toes should be always five in number, but the hoofs vary in that respect, according to the observation of M. BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 68. In this specimen I found only four, the largest of which seemed to have been on the outside of the foot, and the smallest

smallest were but one inch each in diameter. The skin under the foot, did not seem to be thicker or of a firmer texture than that of the other parts of the body.

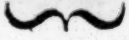
1775.  
November.

It was supposed, that the elephant which was shot here, had been driven away from its herd by some other males stronger than itself out of *Sitsicamma*, in the thick forests of which the elephants may find an asylum; or, to speak more properly, be fortified against the attacks of their enemies: for as to *Lange Kloof*, and other places which the Christians had begun to inhabit, these animals were obliged immediately to retire from them. The chase of the elephant here mentioned was, according to the account given by the hunters themselves, (a couple of farmers) carried on in the following manner.

On the very evening on which they saw this huge animal, they immediately resolved to pursue it on horseback; though they were so far from being skilful and practised elephant-hunters, that they never before set eyes upon one of these animals. This probably, however, according to their description, was not less than eleven or twelve feet high; while, on the other hand, the largest of this species are said to reach to the height of fifteen or sixteen feet \*. Their horses, though as much unused as their riders to the sight of this colossal animal, yet did not flinch in the least. The animal, likewise, did not seem to trouble him-

\* If this be the case, the Asiatic elephants are much inferior to the African in point of size: as Mr. WOLF, who was nineteen years in Ceylon, where these animals are largest, and who had opportunities of getting the best information concerning them, speaks of twelve feet, or six German ells, as being a great height, and mentions an elephant of twelve feet and an inch in height, as a great curiosity. Vide WOLF's Voyage to Ceylon, just published.

1775.  
November.



self about them, till they came within sixty or seventy paces of him; when one of them at that instant, after the usual manner of the Cape huntsmen, jumped off his horse, and, securing the bridle, fell upon one knee, and with his left hand fixing his ramrod, upon which he rested his piece, into the ground, took his aim and fired on the elephant, which then had got about forty or fifty paces farther off: for in this country, when they hunt the larger kind of animals, they generally choose to take the opportunity of shooting at the distance of one hundred and fifty paces; partly because they load their pieces in such a manner, that the ball, in their opinion, has the greatest effect at that distance; and partly at this distance, they can get time to mount their horses again, and make off, before the wounded animal can come up to them to take his revenge. Our sportsman had scarcely got into the saddle, and turned his horse's head round, before he found that the elephant was at his heels. Just at that instant the creature had set up a sharp shrill cry, which he thought he felt pierce to the very marrow of his bones; and which caused his horse likewise to make several hasty leaps, and afterwards set off galloping with an incredible swiftness. In the mean while the huntsman had the presence of mind to ride his horse up an ascent, knowing that elephants and other large animals are slow and unwieldly going up hill, in proportion to their weight, but the contrary in going down hill. On this account he galloped off with the greatest security, and at the same time his companion had the more leisure to advance to one side of the elephant, where he thought he could easiest direct his shot at the heart and  
larger

larger arteries belonging to the lungs of the animal. This, however, did not hit any dangerous part, as the horse was unruly and pulled at the bridle, which the man had hung over his right arm, at the time that, in the same manner as the former, he had jumped off his horse and fired his piece. The elephant, which now turned upon this latter, was soon tired of pursuing him, as he had an opportunity of riding from it up a still steeper hill than his companion. Afterwards the two hunters found it answer better to hold each other's horses, so that they should not get away, while each of the sportsmen fired their pieces by turns. The elephant, even after the third ball, still threatened vengeance; but the fourth entirely cooled his courage: however, he did not absolutely drop till he had received the eighth. Several experienced hunters of elephants have nevertheless assured me, that one single ball is sufficient to bring an elephant to the ground, but for this purpose it is necessary,

1775.  
November

1st, That the bore of the piece be large enough to admit of a ball weighing about three, or least above two ounces.

2dly, That the piece be well stocked, which will enable it to bear a higher charge; for it must be observed, that the farmers, for the purpose of hunting the elephant, sea-cow, rhinoceros, and even the buffalo, generally chuse and pay a good price for the old-fashioned Swedish and Danish muskets, which at present, on account of their great weight and clumsiness, are no longer in use; but they generally put a stronger stock to them than they had before, in order that they may bear a charge so much the higher

1775.  
November.

higher without recoiling. It is in consequence of the weight of the piece, that the sportsman hardly ever offers to fire off his gun, without resting on his ramrod in the manner before mentioned. Still less does any one venture to discharge his piece, while sitting on his horse, as both the horse and its master have usually a tremor upon them in consequence of hard riding.

3dly, It is requisite for the shooting of elephants, that the ball be composed of about one part of tin, and two parts of lead; for a ball made of lead alone is always quite, or, at least, in some measure flattened, against the thick and very tough hides of the larger kind of animals, and by this means misses its intended effect, as I have myself seen in the case of the rhinoceros. Again, if there be too great a mixture of tin in the ball, this will be too light and brittle into the bargain; so that, as I have likewise found by experience, it will fly asunder in the seam, when it hits against the boney parts of the body of any large beast. Several people have assured me, that with muskets of this kind highly charged, and tin balls, they could make a hole through a plough-share of a tolerable thickness. Indeed I never saw this done, but do not look upon it as incredible; as when I seemed to doubt of the fact, several people offered to lay me a wager of it. On the other hand, I was the more inclined to believe it, as I knew that with a mere leaden pistol bullet, a person has sometimes shot through a breast-plate. I have heard many sportsmen mention it, as a fact well known among their fraternity, that when they have got an opportunity of firing with the larger kind of fire-arms among a herd of zebras and quaggas that

that have stood close together, the ball, when it did not hit upon any of the boney parts of them, has passed through four or five of these animals at a time.

1775.  
November.

4thly, It is necessary above all things to hit the elephant on the heart, or somewhere near it, where it is a great chance but that the ball meets with some large blood-vessel, by which means the animal soon bleeds to death. It is therefore the more requisite to have a large piece, as the wound made by a small ball, may easily happen to be closed up with fat or clots of blood; not to mention the elasticity of the hide and muscular fibres, which in the elephant, rhinoceros, and many other large animals, is proportionally greater than in the smaller kind of game; and in consequence of which, the wound made by the shot is the easier contracted and diminished.

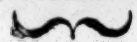
A man famous for shooting of elephants, told me, indeed, that the best way to come at the heart of this animal, was to level the piece at that part of its side, which is generally in contact with the tips of its ears; but to judge from the beautiful drawing of this creature in M. BUFFON's work, the ears seem too short for the directions given me by my informer to be of any use; except, indeed, that the African elephants should have somewhat longer ears than that of M. BUFFON; or that the ears in the large and very old animals, are proportionably much more lengthened, than in the young one represented in the work above-mentioned.

It must have been from experience, that the huntsmen at the Cape have learned not to take aim at the elephant's head, as the brain is too small to be easily hit, and is

I

more-

1775.  
November.



moreover well defended by a thick and hard cranium. This likewise corresponds with what is previously known with regard to this animal; but from what has been said above, it is evident, that two or three hundred people could not possibly have any trouble in shooting one elephant, (a fact which however is related by M. BUFFON, page 11, from BOSMAN's Voyage to *Guinea*, page 254,) unless the fire-arms, as well as the sportsmen, are miserable indeed: much less does it require a whole army, as the former author supposes it does, to attack a herd of elephants. In fact, this, in Africa, is often attempted by a single huntsman, when provided with a fleet horse used to hunting, and who at the same time finds the elephants on the plains before him. In so doing, he hardly runs any greater risk than when he has only one of these animals to attack. In this case, the youngest elephants are wont to fly first; but one or two of the old ones, who have the strongest teeth, and are the very identical animals the sportsmen wish to have to do with, sometimes, perhaps, will run after him; but as they are soon weary and turn back again, the sportsman turns upon them again, and always finds an opportunity of shooting some of them. When one of these beasts is hit only upon the hip, it is generally said, that he has received earnest of the huntsman, as he is rendered lame by it, and in consequence of this may expect from them a more dangerous wound before he can be able to get off. The larger the elephant's teeth are, and the older the animals are themselves, the heavier and slower likewise they are said to be, and find it more difficult to escape. When the sun has shone extremely hot, they have

have been generally found very weak and weary, so that some people have ventured forth on foot to shoot them. Some Hottentots, who are trained up to shooting, and often carried out by the farmers for this purpose, are particularly daring in this point; as they are swifter in running, and at the same time, not without reason, suppose that they have a less suspicious appearance than the white people in the eyes of the elephants and other animals; and, on account of the rank odour they have, (somewhat like that of game) which proceeds from their skin-cloaks, their grease, and their bucku powder, are less liable to be discovered by the scent.

1775.  
November.

When the elephant finds himself wounded, he is said not to offer to defend himself from his enemies, and sometimes not even to fly from them, but to stand still to cool himself, and sprinkle himself with the water, which he now and then keeps in reserve in his proboscis. Whenever he comes to a piece of water, and finds himself warm, he sucks up some of it, in order to sprinkle himself with it. It is already well known to naturalists, that the elephant's haunts are generally near the rivers; neither are they ignorant of the care and regularity with which, in Asia, those that are rendered tame, are taken to water in order to be washed: so that it did not seem at all incredible to me, that the elephants should sometimes be found, as I am informed they often are, in the dry torrid fields of Africa, quite faint and dying with thirst. One person assured me, that in a marshy place, or, more properly speaking, a place full of land-springs, (*fontein grund*) he had observed pretty distinct traces of elephants having lain there. All the accounts I could collect,

1775.  
November.

agreed in this, that these animals, when hunted, endeavoured, with the greatest care, to avoid muddy rivers, probably that they might not stick fast in the ooze; while, on the other hand, they industriously sought out the larger rivers, over which they swam with great ease. For notwithstanding that the elephant, from his feet, and the position of his limbs, does not seem to be adapted for swimming when he is out of his depth in the water, his body and head being entirely sunk under the surface, yet he is in less danger of being drowned than other land animals, as he carries his long trunk raised above the surface of the water in order to breathe, and can steer his course in it by means of this appendage; which at the same time forms his nose or organ of smell, and is endued with a great olfactory power. It has consequently been observed, that when several elephants have swam over a river at the same time, they have all found the way very well; and have been able at the same time to avoid running foul of each other, though their heads and eyes have been all the while under water.

It is merely for the sake of the teeth that the elephants are hunted by the colonists, though at the same time they contrive to preserve the flesh for their servants, viz. their slaves and Hottentots. And as the larger elephants teeth weigh from one hundred to one hundred and fifty Dutch pounds, which may be disposed of to government for as many gilders, so that a man may sometimes earn three hundred gilders at one shot, it is no wonder that the hunters of elephants are often so extremely venturesome. A peasant (now dead) who had hunted a large elephant over the mouth of *Zondags-rivier*, where it is very deep  
and

and broad, was bold enough to pursue it with his horse, and got over very safe, though he carried with him his heavy gun on his shoulder, and could not swim himself. It was said, however, that he got nothing by this bold and daring action, as the elephant took refuge in a close thorny thicket, where the hunter neither could nor dared to creep after it.

1775.  
November.

It is only on the plains that they can succeed in attacking the elephants; in the woods, where the attack cannot be made otherwise than on foot, the chase is always more dangerous. The hunter must take great care to get on the lee side of the animal, or against the wind; for if by means of the wind he once gets scent of the hunter, he rushes directly on him, endeavouring to kill him, especially if (as frequently is the case) he has ever been hunted before; and thus has had an opportunity of knowing, from experience, how dangerous and bold these marksmen are. More than one of these daring men have, by this means, been brought into the greatest danger. DIRK MARCUS, the man I mentioned before as living at *Hagelcraal*, gave me an account of one of his adventures of the chase as follows:

“ Once on a time in my youth, said he, when from a hill covered with bushes near a wood, I was endeavouring to steal upon an elephant to the leeward of me, on a sudden I heard from the lee side, a frightful cry or noise; and though at that time I was one of the boldest of elephant-hunters in the whole country, I cannot deny, but that I was in a terrible taking, inasmuch that I believe the hair stood quite an end on my head. At the same time it

T t 2

appeared

1775.  
November.



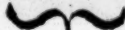
appeared to me, as though I had had several pails of cold water thrown over me, without my being able to stir from the spot, before I saw this huge creature so near me, that he was almost on the point of laying hold on me with his trunk. At that instant I fortunately had the presence of mind to take to my feet, and, to my great amazement, found myself so swift, that I thought I scarcely touched the ground: the beast, however, was in the mean time pretty close at my heels; but having at last got to the wood, and crept away from him between the trees, the elephant could not easily follow me. With respect to the place I was in at first, I am certain that the animal could not see me, and consequently that he first found me out by the scent. It may be thought, indeed, that, out of revenge at least, I ought to have fired my piece at this saucy intruder; but, in fact, he came upon me so unexpectedly, that in my first fright I did not think of it; and afterwards, my life depended upon every step I took; and at last I was too much out of breath to attempt any thing of that kind, being in fact very glad to get off so well as I did. Besides I doubt much, whether a ball lodged in the chest, would have gone through the pleura into the heart; the surest method is, to fire the ball in between the ribs, quite slanting through the lungs or chest."

Another of these bush-fighting gentry, CLAAS VOLK by name, according to all accounts, was not so fortunate. Being once upon a plain under the shelter of a few scrambling thorn-trees, (*mimosa Nilotica*) he thought he should be able to steal upon an elephant that was near the spot; but was discovered, pursued, and overtaken by the animal, which

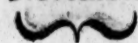
which laid hold of him with his trunk, and beat him to death. This, however, is the only instance in the memory of man, of any of these hunters having met with a misfortune in the exercise of their profession; excepting another peasant of the name of RULOPH CHAMPER, in whose side an elephant made a deep hole with its toe, as (without seeing the man) it was lifting up its foot in order to step over him. I examined the scar left after this wound, and found a deep depression of four of the ribs, which were still fractured, and of which the man complained a good deal upon any change of weather. This misfortune had happened to him many years before, near *Zwartkops-rivier*, where, with two of his companions, he lay sleeping in the open air, by a fire that was almost burnt out. These, very luckily for them, awoke a little before the arrival of the elephant, and crept away among the bushes; but the saddle-horses belonging to all the three, which, indeed, were tied to a tree, had their backs broke in several places. The elephants, which were four or five in number, were passing on their way very leisurely, at the time when they did this mischief.

From what has been already related, it follows evidently, that the elephant-hunt, so circumstantially described by M. DE LA CAILLE, in his *Journal Historique du Voyage fait au Cap de B. Esperance*, p. 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, as being undertaken by the colonists with lances, can be nothing else but a story, with which somebody imposed upon the good abbé's credulity; and which, when I was at the Cape, several people that knew a little more of the matter, were graceless enough to make a jest of. Neither is there  
much

1775.  
November.



1775.  
November.



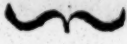
appeared to me, as though I had had several pails of cold water thrown over me, without my being able to stir from the spot, before I saw this huge creature so near me, that he was almost on the point of laying hold on me with his trunk. At that instant I fortunately had the presence of mind to take to my feet, and, to my great amazement, found myself so swift, that I thought I scarcely touched the ground: the beast, however, was in the mean time pretty close at my heels; but having at last got to the wood, and crept away from him between the trees, the elephant could not easily follow me. With respect to the place I was in at first, I am certain that the animal could not see me, and consequently that he first found me out by the scent. It may be thought, indeed, that, out of revenge at least, I ought to have fired my piece at this saucy intruder; but, in fact, he came upon me so unexpectedly, that in my first fright I did not think of it; and afterwards, my life depended upon every step I took; and at last I was too much out of breath to attempt any thing of that kind, being in fact very glad to get off so well as I did. Besides I doubt much, whether a ball lodged in the chest, would have gone through the pleura into the heart; the surest method is, to fire the ball in between the ribs, quite slanting through the lungs or chest."

Another of these bush-fighting gentry, CLAAS VOLK by name, according to all accounts, was not so fortunate. Being once upon a plain under the shelter of a few scrambling thorn-trees, (*mimosa Nilotica*) he thought he should be able to steal upon an elephant that was near the spot; but was discovered, pursued, and overtaken by the animal, which

which laid hold of him with his trunk, and beat him to death. This, however, is the only instance in the memory of man, of any of these hunters having met with a misfortune in the exercise of their profession; excepting another peasant of the name of RULOPH CHAMPER, in whose side an elephant made a deep hole with its toe, as (without seeing the man) it was lifting up its foot in order to step over him. I examined the scar left after this wound, and found a deep depression of four of the ribs, which were still fractured, and of which the man complained a good deal upon any change of weather. This misfortune had happened to him many years before, near *Zwartkops-rivier*, where, with two of his companions, he lay sleeping in the open air, by a fire that was almost burnt out. These, very luckily for them, awoke a little before the arrival of the elephant, and crept away among the bushes; but the saddle-horses belonging to all the three, which, indeed, were tied to a tree, had their backs broke in several places. The elephants, which were four or five in number, were passing on their way very leisurely, at the time when they did this mischief.

From what has been already related, it follows evidently, that the elephant-hunt, so circumstantially described by M. DE LA CAILLE, in his *Journal Historique du Voyage fait au Cap de B. Esperance*, p. 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, as being undertaken by the colonists with lances, can be nothing else but a story, with which somebody imposed upon the good abbé's credulity; and which, when I was at the Cape, several people that knew a little more of the matter, were graceless enough to make a jest of. Neither is there  
much

1775.  
November.



1775.  
November.

much more probability in the account given by this author, of a misfortune that happened to an elephant-hunter in this country. The story runs thus: Once on a time three brothers, natives of Europe, who had already made a handsome fortune by following this profession, had, each of them being on horseback and armed with a lance, attacked an elephant by turns; which, however, at length, laid hold on one of the horses that had stumbled, and threw him, together with his rider, up into the air, a hundred paces from him; then taking up the latter, ran him through the body with one of his large tusks; upon which the animal held him up with exultation, as it were, thus impaled and shrieking in a horrid manner, to the two other horsemen, his unhappy brothers. It is not extremely probable, that an elephant could throw a horse a hundred paces from him, any more than that a man should be able to cry out and shriek, when he was pierced through, and spitted on the thick tooth of an elephant. But in the abbé's defence it must be remembered, that this ingenious astronomer did not intend to print any historical account of the Cape; the short remarks he made upon this subject, being not published till after his death.

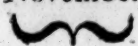
The elephant's manner of copulating is a point hitherto much contested; for, notwithstanding the great number there are of them in India, many of which are apt to be in rutt in so high a degree as to run mad in consequence of it, still nobody has ever been able to make them copulate. Several authors have explained the matter in this way; that the elephants were too modest to suffer any human creature to be witness of their union, (a circumstance

stance which these animals have always reason to be apprehensive of,) though the male and female are both shut up together in the same dark stable. Others again have gone so far as to assert, that the elephants are so shy, as not to suffer any of their own kind to be present at their copulation. And many have endeavoured to explain the continence of these animals in their domesticated state, from the consideration of their magnanimity and pride, supposing them to have too much sense, as well as greatness of soul, to wish to multiply their race, and thus debase it by bringing it into the world in a state of bondage to mankind. But since we know, that elephants, previous to this, suffer themselves to be brought to obey by compulsion, and, indeed, to a greater degree of subjection than almost any other animal, it should seem that we cannot, with any reason, bestow our approbation on this latter opinion.

1775.  
November.

In all probability, therefore, this repugnance in a point to which nature, on the other side, visibly encourages all her creatures, proceeds from the peculiar make of the elephant, rendering it partly unfit for the performance of these rites; an impediment which nature, perhaps, found it necessary to set up against the too great increase of these gigantic animals; as, were it otherwise, by desolating and laying waste the whole extent of the warmer climates, they would bring on the destruction of their own species. Moreover, as nature does not operate without means, may not the continence of the elephant, whether implanted in it by nature, or whether it be the mere consequence of its form, or other accidental circumstances, may not, I say, this

1775.  
November.



this continence be the means employed by nature for the promotion of the growth and strength of this animal, which are so considerably beyond those of any other? Elephants (excepting some males, which, being either too old or too young to contend with their stronger rivals, are hunted away by them) always keep in herds; so that while some few are, perhaps, prevented from copulating in the early part of life, and consequently from being enervated, it is, probably, as I said before, the peculiar formation of their bodies which, after all, proves the greatest obstacle in this point; for the parts of generation in both sexes are placed about the middle, just under the belly, and those of the male are very short in proportion to its body. From this peculiarity in their formation most authors have, without sufficient foundation concluded, that the females are capable of admitting the embraces of the male in no other manner than lying on their backs. Nay, although no one has ever been able to say, that he had been an eye-witness to this, yet that great naturalist, M. BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 63, looks upon it as so incontrovertible a point, that he assures us, he should not once have doubted of it, even if the travellers DE FEYNES, TAVERNIERS, and BUS-SYS did not accord with him, which, however, they do in this particular. He therefore objects likewise against Aristotle, and that with so much the greater reason, as this author describes their copulation as differing in no other way from that of other quadrupeds, than merely in the female's lowering her loins on this occasion. Nevertheless, in order to determine this singular question with more certainty, I let slip no opportunity of interrogating

on the subject every elephant-hunter I saw. To this query they all agreed in replying, that with respect to the above-mentioned argument, they were most inclined to approve of the common opinion, if they had not been differently informed by two of their companions, JACOB KOK and MARCUS POTGIETER, who had actually seen elephants copulate. I met, however, only with the former of these hunters, who told me, he had likewise himself been of opinion, that the female was obliged to lie on her back on this occasion; till at length, being out along with POTGIETER hunting of elephants, he had occasion to think otherwise. On a certain spot they came to, they could reckon about eight elephants, which, on account of the small size of their tusks, they took for females, excepting two large ones; which, making several circles round one of these that they took for females, (the only one, perhaps, in rut) frequently, in all probability, by way of caressing her, struck her with their trunks, till at length she threw herself down upon her knees, and keeping the spine of her back in a stiff and extended position, brought her hind feet quite close to her fore feet, or somewhat beyond them; so that she almost, as it were, stood upon her head. In this forced posture they saw her wait a long while together for the caresses of the males, who, in fact, likewise endeavoured to perform the matrimonial rites, but from jealousy hindered each other, whenever either of them began to mount. After two hours had thus elapsed, the patience of our hunters began to tire; and the rather, because, on account of the uneven and stoney nature of the ground, which, however, had

1775.  
November.

1775.  
November.

no wood upon it, and of a river being between them, they could not dare to advance and fire at these animals. I will not dissemble, that though I have not the least occasion to doubt the veracity of my informer, and though what he told me is by no means impossible, I yet find great difficulty in this matter. But on the other hand, the same may be said of M. DE BUFFON's, or the common opinion; first, as they have not been able to confirm it by the testimony of any eye-witness, nor even by any instance of this kind in other quadrupeds properly so called; that is, in such animals as have some degree of affinity with elephants; secondly, as the female's lying on her back can hardly be more convenient for the male, especially as the vagina, according to what I am told, goes from the fore part backwards; thirdly, it is besides well known, that the older elephants, on account of the unwieldiness of their bodies, chiefly stand when they sleep, in order to avoid the trouble and difficulty of lying down and getting up again. TAVERNIER, indeed, in his third volume, informs us, that the tame females when in rut make themselves a kind of bed, and lay themselves in it on their backs, at the same time inviting the male elephant by a peculiar cry, &c. but as the author did not see this himself, and that besides it is entirely contrary to the modesty and dislike to copulation for which the female elephants have always been remarked, I cannot do otherwise than leave M. TAVERNIER's relation and different opinions touching the subject, to the test of future experience\*.

With

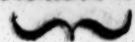
\* Compare with the foregoing account that given by WOLF with respect to this subject, in a book just published, called "The Life and Adventures of John Christopher

With regard to the time that the female elephants go with young, I could get no information; but that their cubs suck with their trunks, is confirmed by the observations of many. The female elephants have, moreover, been seen followed by two or three cubs at a time, though of very different sizes, viz. from three to eight or nine feet high; but the largest of them, which consequently was almost full grown, was, nevertheless, to the great astonishment of the huntsman, suckled by the mother. And when it so happens, as is not unfrequently the case, that by a female being shot, an infant-cub has been deprived of its mother, and at the same time been separated from the other elephants, it has endeavoured to associate with the hunters and their horses, in the place of its deceased mother, and followed them wherever they went. With regard to this, several farmers assured me, that they could get some milch-cows from the Hottentots in the way of barter, or take some from home along with them, to rear the elephant's cubs with, in case they had any tolerable encouragement given them by the governor: but, perhaps, in defect of milch-cows, which, in fact, are rather difficult to be had there, they may bring up the young elephants with gruel or porridge, or else with decoctions, or other

1775.  
November.

pher Wolf, with his Voyage to Ceylon." This author pretends to have had as much experience in regard to elephants, as the generality of jockies in England with respect to horses; and positively asserts, that the female lies on her back on this occasion, at the same time giving a circumstantial description of the whole process. In the Additions to the History of the Elephants which M. DE BUFFON has given in his Supplement, Tom. III. (ed. in 4to) and Tom. VI. p. 165, (ed. in 12mo) a M. BLES describes the copulation of the elephants in Ceylon, in the same manner as farmer KOK does here.

1775.  
November.



preparations of those herbs which it has been remarked, that the elephants principally chuse to feed on.

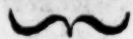
According to the accounts of authors, and to what I could learn both from the Hottentots and colonists, elephants have no scrotum; but their young sucklings might probably, nevertheless, undergo a certain operation, and thus might be domesticated to greater advantage than those that are now used in India; for by means of this operation, as well as by habit, they would infallibly be less nice in their food, less riotous and unruly, more hardy, and not in the least subject to the fury that sometimes seizes them in the rutting season. But though food seems more difficult to be got for elephants in India, than it possibly could be at the Cape, yet I doubt whether it would be worth while for many private people in that colony to keep them; but it certainly would be very proper for government to endeavour to tame some of these animals, and use them in its service. In India an elephant has an hundred pounds of rice-groats it daily, raw and boiled, and mixed up with butter and sugar; besides, this they give it arrack and pifang, (vid. BUFFON, p. 43;) but as this animal in its savage state gets neither butter nor arrack, this, perhaps, is to the full as unnecessary as to have it served out of golden vessels, and be waited on by noblemen, as is done in Pegu. M. DE BUFFON, p. 143, supposes the consumption of provision by a wild elephant to amount to 150 pounds of grass and roots daily; and in the *Memoires pour servir a l'Hist. des Animaux* we find, that in the last century, an elephant in the menagerie at Versailles, was reckoned to be very sufficiently fed with 80 pounds of bread,

bread, two buckets of soup, and twelve bottles of wine every day. This elephant died in its 17th year, but would, perhaps, have lived longer, if it had not not been fed quite so plentifully; as otherwise the age of an elephant is reckoned 150, 200, and even 300 years, or more. Perhaps a young one brought up at the Cape, would be contented with distiller's wash, grains, cabbage, and other vegetables, together with parboiled barley, malt, or wheat. Wine being not very wholesome for them, might be very well dispensed with; but as by promising it liquors, this animal may be made to exert itself to a greater degree than usual, it might not be amiss to give it a few bottles of wine now and then. However, as wine in this colony is at a very low price, the expence with regard to this article is likewise tolerable: nevertheless, it cannot be denied, but that even at the Cape it must be difficult to find so large an animal as this in provision; but, on the other hand, it must be remembered, what great advantages may be gained by keeping them; for besides that the elephant is extremely docile, sensible, and obedient, its strength is very considerable. It is said to be able with its trunk, to lift two hundred weight on to its shoulders from the ground without the least difficulty, and to carry goods to the amount of three thousand two hundred weight with ease and pleasure. It is likewise able to pull up trees by the roots with its tusks, and break the branches off with its snout (vid. BUFFON, l. c. p. 41, 42;) nay, with this singular instrument it can untie knots with great readiness, open locks, and take up the smallest piece of money from the ground.

1775.  
November.

“ But

1775.  
November.

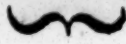


“ But to give an idea (says M. de BUFFON) of the service this animal is capable of doing, it is sufficient to mention, that all the casks, sacks, and packs which are sent from one place to another in the Indies, are conveyed by elephants; that they are capable of carrying burthens on their backs, necks, tusks, and even in their mouths, by means of a rope, one end of which is given to them, and which they hold between their teeth; that being endued with as much intelligence as strength, they take care not to break nor do any damage to the parcels entrusted to their care; that they take them from off the beach into the boats without suffering them to be wet, laying them down gently, and adjusting them in their proper places; that when they have put them into the place where they were ordered, they try with their trunks, whether they stand safe or not; and if a cask is in danger of rolling, they will go and get stones of their own accord to set against it.”

So that it is no wonder, that an animal of such great utility sells in India for nine, or ten, nay, even as high as thirty-six thousand livres (vid. l. c. p. 43.) These animals would be found particularly serviceable in bringing timber from *Houtniquas* and *Groot Vaders-bosch*, and in transporting goods between the CAPE and BAY-FALSO; especially as, according to BUFFON, p. 42. they can with great ease perform a journey of fifteen or twenty leagues a day, and twice as much if you push them on. They make as much way in their walk as a horse does in his usual trot, and in running as a horse does in a gallop, (l. c.) When in some places they are disturbed by the hunters at the  
Cape,

Cape, and find no woods there to shelter them, they do not stop before they get several days journey from the spot where they were. As the elephants in this colony are now become more wary, withdrawing into *Sitsicamma* and other woody tracts of country where they are difficult to get at, or far up the country on the north side of *Visch-rivier* and into *Cafferland*, people have lately been less inclined to hunting them than they were for several years back; especially as they are obliged to sell all the ivory to the company, which pays by the pound less by one half for the small tusks than what it does for the large ones: for which reason, the peasants frequently smuggle the small tusks to the Cape in their butter-tubs, with a view to get somewhat better payment for them from the private merchants. Many years back, when the elephants were to be found near the Cape, nine or ten people (several of whom were living when I was there) particularly distinguished themselves by their success in shooting these animals, though not without undergoing some danger and hunger, and the greatest difficulties for many months together; after which, on the other hand, they would in an equal, or perhaps much shorter period of time, as freely and prodigally spend what they had earned in these expeditions, which might be from an hundred to three hundred rixdollars a man. The consequence of this was, that a considerable number of elephants have been extirpated: nevertheless, it is agreed on all hands, that this is a mere nothing in comparison of the number of those that escape; as sometimes one sees them in flocks to the amount of several hundreds or even thousands, though, perhaps, one is not able to shoot

1775.  
November.



1775.  
November.

shoot above one of them: so that they, probably, herd together in infinitely greater numbers about the more remote and unfrequented rivers in the other parts of Africa, where, perhaps, they do not only find an asylum, but even exercise dominion over mankind; while the people that inhabit those parts are without the knowledge of gun-powder, an article of such various utility, the invention of which people are so universally of accord to find fault with, the great use of which, however, in the conservation and civilization of our species (though I have never heard acknowledged by any one) it does not appear to me difficult to perceive; a great many Negroes, for want of powder and fire-arms, being obliged to make their dwellings under-ground, merely on account of the elephants; by which, however, they have often the mortification of seeing their plantations destroyed.

The Hottentots that I took into my service near *Zondags-rivier*, told me, that in a hunting party, some of their acquaintance had got an elephant's cub for their share, which followed them to their *craal*, where they had killed it, and feasted on its flesh. The mother, who probably had at length traced it out by the scent, went at night, when it was dark, to the *craal*, and, by way of revenge, destroyed and turned every thing she found topsy turvy.

Both Negroes and Hottentots lay snares for these animals by means of pits which they make, covering them over neatly afterwards, in places where the elephants are used to pass, but the quantity caught by this method is very inconsiderable. I have also been told, that the Hottentots are sometimes adventurous enough to throw poisoned darts at  
an

an elephant, after which they must have the patience to follow the animal several days by the scent, before the poison is capable of spreading over its huge body, and of causing it to fall.


1775.  
November.

The Negroes, who, according to certain private information I have received, mutually buy and sell the tail of the elephant at the price of its weight in gold (or, according to M. DE BUFFON, p. 63,) exchange it in the way of barter for two or three slaves, induced by some superstitious notion, have the boldness to cut it off from the body of the living animal. The Hottentots, however, set no more value upon it than they do upon the tails of the buffalo or other animals, which they carry in their girdles, as tokens of their dexterity and success in hunting.

I brought the tail of an elephant home with me. The skin of it being stripped from the tail itself a foot, is two inches broad, and about the thickness of a thin ox's hide. Probably on the body of the animal, when alive, this tail was scarcely thicker than a man's thumb.

From the tip of it, and near it to about a foot higher up, on the outside, grow some stiff smooth hairs, of a glossy black colour, and fourteen or fifteen inches long, in all to the number of about one hundred and eighty, of the thickness of middling packthread or iron wire. These hairs are not hollow, but of a horny nature throughout their whole substance; a great many of them, however, are tough, and will bear to be doubled or tied in knots without breaking, and can scarcely be snapped asunder by the strength of a man, and would therefore be useful for making beards to fishing-hooks; though some of them,

1775.  
November.




on the other hand, are very brittle. The greater part are rather flat than round, and many of them very uneven and a little twisted, while some are thicker towards the point. Perhaps these hairs are not to be found upon every elephant, but only upon the large and old ones; as several of my acquaintance, who have seen these animals in the menageries of Peterburgh and Paris, could not recollect having observed these hairs, just as I have been describing them, and shewed to them at the time.

Fossil elephants teeth, perhaps, are seldom to be had at the Cape; probably from their not having dug deep any where thereabouts, and from the Hottentots having long since caught up and carried away such as, after the death of any elephant, may have been to be found near the surface, and likewise from the Caffres being accustomed to make bracelets of such as they can procure. Seafaring men, however, who have visited the eastern coast of Africa, have informed me, that they have ivory there either for barter or for sale, in a much greater quantity than it is probable the barbarous inhabitants could themselves procure by hunting. This likewise accords with what I think I remember to have read in some old writers of voyages. A farmer told me, that when he lived in the district of *Cango* in this colony, he had found some elephants teeth, not in the least damaged, three feet under ground, which he imagined had been buried there in former times by the Hottentots as a treasure. It is likewise possible, that they might have been buried by degrees, and in process of time by the winds raising the sand and dust near them, and afterwards were farther covered over by the mould produced by

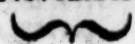
by decayed trees and vegetables. As likewise people at the Cape are very little used to pry into the bowels of the earth, there perhaps still lie buried, from the like causes, in several spots thereabouts, a hundred times this quantity of elephants teeth. It has, however, much more puzzled the philosophers with their systems and conjectures to explain, how elephants teeth and bones, as well as the remains of the rhinoceros, should get to the cold latitude of Siberia, where, by the name of relicks of the *Mammoth*, (an imaginary subterraneous animal,) they are dug up in greater quantities than any where else.

1775.  
November.



In the mean while, till this matter is cleared up, as after the whole is mere conjecture; M. DE BUFFON, for instance, (see his *Supplement*, of late refuted with great solidity by M. MARIVETZ, *Physique du Monde*, Tom. I.) modifying the earth according to his own fancy, and, after having previously brought it to a swelling heat, supposing it first began to cool at Siberia and near the pole, at which time the creation of elephants, &c. took place; others again drowning it in a deluge, in order to have an opportunity of carrying thither by the torrent the rhinoceros and elephant from the warmer climates of Asia: I, for my part, could wish, that these great men with their systems, would allow them quietly to take their own course, and to get to Siberia on their feet. No easier method at least, none more natural, nor more consistent with the constant practice of other migrating animals can possibly be thought of. Who is not, for instance, acquainted with the pertinacious migrations from time to time of the *lemings* (*mus lemmus*,) where they must in the end be frozen and famished to death, in

1775.  
November.



case they chance to escape in the mean time, being made a prey to ravenous animals, or being drowned in crossing rivers.

The *mus migratorius seu accedula* of M. PALLAS, is another instance of this disposition in animals to migrate. Of the migration of antilopes, especially of the *spring-boks*, downwards to the *Cape of Good Hope*, I shall have occasion to make mention farther on. The more considerable peregrinations of locusts, indeed, will, perhaps, be of no avail, as examples in the cases of quadrupeds; but those produced above are sufficient to make it probable, that elephants likewise are subject to migrations, either from some motive equally unknown with that of the lemmings, or for certain reasons which offer, as it were, of themselves to our conjectures: for instance, a considerable increase in the number of these animals, their want of food, the inconveniencies attending an unusually dry and hot season, their being molested by mankind, or affrighted by the eruptions of volcanos and earthquakes in their native soil.

I put the too great increase of the elephants in the first place, on account of the almost incredible number one sees at the *Cape of Good Hope*, as well as the many centuries this animal is said to live. If moreover we assume the hypothesis, that the south-east part of Asia, which is at present inhabited by a numerous and prolific race of men, viz. the Chinese, had been as favourable to the increase of elephants, more especially in the first ages of the world, which are supposed to have been the most fertile in all the productions of nature; it will naturally follow, that the numbers of these animals would, some time or other,

other, have received so great an augmentation, that the scarcity of food, and the mutual conflicts between different herds of elephants, must have obliged some of them to seek their subsistence elsewhere.

1775.  
November.

Dry and hot summers would naturally have increased this deficiency of food for elephants, and accelerated their removal; and at the same time, for the sake of coolness, determined their course towards the north, and finally to Siberia. I am very ready to believe with natural philosophers, that this latter country was formerly not so cold as it is at present; but cannot suppose it to have been by any means warm enough to harbour elephants, excepting indeed in summer time, as it is well known, that our Lapland summers, though short, are yet extremely warm.

Swarms of elephants having thus, for one or more causes, left their native habitations, and by degrees, or, perhaps, by a hasty and sudden removal, having arrived at a great distance from it, in more severe climates, and been there overtaken by a cold autumn or winter, it would be no wonder, if they had got out of their latitude, and spread themselves still farther into Siberia and the neighbouring countries; and there having perished, have been buried at greater or less depths by earthquakes, by the falling in of steep mountains, and by rivers changing their course, and at length have left to inquisitive posterity evident monuments of their migrations.

A journey of about twenty-five or thirty degrees, or about one thousand one hundred and forty miles, between China and Siberia, cannot be looked upon as long for elephants,

1775.  
November.

phants, as I have already observed at p. 334, that these animals can with ease travel to the extent of a degree, or twenty leagues in a day, or sometimes twice as much : and, indeed, according to *L'Afrique de MARMOL*, Tom. I. p. 58, when they are put to it, they will make, in the space of one day, six days journey.

By the account I have given of the elephants at the Cape, I find that I have been induced to dwell with some proximity on the history of this animal. I would therefore wish, in order to make it the more complete, to quote from different naturalists and writers of travels some remarkable passages, which tend greatly to illustrate the understanding and disposition of the elephant.

“ In India they were once employed in launching of ships. One was directed to force a very large vessel into the water ; the work proved superior to his strength ; his master, with a sarcastic tone, bid the keeper take away this lazy beast, and bring another in his stead ; the poor animal instantly repeated his efforts, fractured his scull, and died on the spot.” (PENNANT’S *Hist. of Quad.* p. 155, from LUDOLPH. *Com. in Hist. Æthiop.*)

“ In *Delli* an elephant, passing along the streets, put his trunk into a taylor’s shop, where several people were at work ; one of them pricked the end of it with his needle. The beast passed on, but in the next dirty puddle filled his trunk with water, returned to the shop, and spurning every drop among the people who had offended him, spoilt their work.” (PENN. *l. c.* from HAMILTON’S *History of the EAST-INDIES.*)

“ An

“ An elephant in *Adfmeer*, which often passed through the bazar or market, as he went by a certain herb-woman, always received from her a mouthful of greens. At length he was seized with one of his periodical fits of rage, broke from his fetters, and running through the market, put the crowd to flight; and among others this woman, who in haste forgot a little child she had brought with her. The animal, recollecting the spot where his benefactress was wont to sit, took up the infant gently in his trunk, and placed it in safety on a stall before a neighbouring house.” (PENN. from TERRY'S *Voyage*.)

1775.  
November.

“ Another in *Dekan* not having received the arrack it had been promised by its *cornac* or governor, by way of revenge killed him. The cornac's wife, who was an eye-witness to this, took her two children and flung them before the elephant, saying, Now you have destroyed their father, you may as well put an end to their lives and mine. It instantly stopped, relented, took the greatest of the children, placed him on its neck, adopted him for its cornac, and never afterwards would permit any body else to mount it.” (BUFFON, Tom. XI. p. 77, from the Marquis DE MONTMIRAIL.

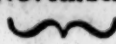
If the elephant is of a revengeful disposition, it is likewise equally remarkable for gratitude. A foldier at Pondicherry, who was accustomed, whenever he received the portion that came to his share, to carry a certain quantity of it to one of these animals, having one day drank rather too freely, and finding himself pursued by the guards, who were going to take him to prison, took refuge under the elephant's body and fell asleep. In vain did the

1775.  
November.

guard try to force him from this asylum, as the elephant protected him with his trunk. The next morning the foldier, recovering from his drunken fit, shuddered with horror to find himself stretched under the belly of this huge animal. The elephant, which, without doubt, perceived the man's embarrassment, caressed him with his trunk, in order to inspire him with courage, and make him understand, that he might now depart in safety. (BUFFON, p. 78.)

A painter was desirous of drawing the elephant which was kept in the menagerie at Versailles in an uncommon attitude, which was that of holding his trunk raised up in the air with his mouth open. The painter's boy, in order to keep the animal in this posture, threw fruit into his mouth; but as the lad frequently deceived him, and made an offer only of throwing him the fruit, he grew angry; and, as if he had known, that the painter's intention of drawing him was the cause of the affront that was offered him, instead of revenging himself on the lad, he turned his resentment on the master, and taking up a quantity of water in his trunk, threw it on the paper on which the painter was drawing, and spoiled it. (*Mem. pour servir a l'Hist. des Animaux, par Messieurs de l'Acad. des Sciences, Part III.*)

On the 4th we came to *Leeuwen-bosch*, a little wood so called, on a river of the same name, from the circumstance of its having been formerly in a peculiar manner inhabited by lions. At this time there lived here a slave of each sex, for the purpose of tending a few cattle belonging to a farmer, and of preserving the corn-fields from the inroads

roads of the gazels. The slave's hut composed the whole of the buildings on the premises, besides an open shed, under which we took our night's lodging. <sup>1775.</sup> November. 

On the 5th we entered into *Sitsicamma*, where we visited the three first farmers that lay in our road. As in this province there were various unknown plants, and no naturalist had been there before us, we staid there till the 12th, when we took our departure, and set off for *Zee-koe*, or *Sea-cow-river*; and finally, from the 15th to the conclusion of the month, took up our lodging in a farm situated at the lower or southern ferry-place of this river.

On the eastern side of *Leeuwen-bosch* the country may be said to be a champain or open country, the long range of hills, by the side of which we had travelled all the way from the Cape, terminated here, or else running on to the north. This tract of land seems to come under the character I have given of the *Sweet* grafs-fields and plains towards the shore. The same may be said of the hither part of *Sitsicamma*, which, especially near the shore, was extremely low and sandy.

The *myrica cerifera* is likewise to be found here, as well as at the *Duyven*, or Doves, as they are called at the Cape. The greenish wax-like and tallowy substance, with which at a certain time of the year the berries are covered, and which is probably formed by insects, being used by the inhabitants for making candles, which burn rather better than those prepared from tallow.

On the plains I saw numerous herds of the *antilope dorcas*, (or *bartbeest*, vide Plate I. Vol. II.) and likewise saw the *gnometie*, or little gazel, I spoke of at p. 279.

1775.  
November.

guard try to force him from this asylum, as the elephant protected him with his trunk. The next morning the soldier, recovering from his drunken fit, shuddered with horror to find himself stretched under the belly of this huge animal. The elephant, which, without doubt, perceived the man's embarrassment, caressed him with his trunk, in order to inspire him with courage, and make him understand, that he might now depart in safety. (BUFFON, p. 78.)

A painter was desirous of drawing the elephant which was kept in the menagerie at Versailles in an uncommon attitude, which was that of holding his trunk raised up in the air with his mouth open. The painter's boy, in order to keep the animal in this posture, threw fruit into his mouth; but as the lad frequently deceived him, and made an offer only of throwing him the fruit, he grew angry; and, as if he had known, that the painter's intention of drawing him was the cause of the affront that was offered him, instead of revenging himself on the lad, he turned his resentment on the master, and taking up a quantity of water in his trunk, threw it on the paper on which the painter was drawing, and spoiled it. (*Mem. pour servir a l'Hist. des Animaux, par Messieurs de l'Acad. des Sciences, Part III.*)

On the 4th we came to *Leeuwen-bosch*, a little wood so called, on a river of the same name, from the circumstance of its having been formerly in a peculiar manner inhabited by lions. At this time there lived here a slave of each sex, for the purpose of tending a few cattle belonging to a farmer, and of preserving the corn-fields from the inroads

roads of the gazels. The slave's hut composed the whole of the buildings on the premises, besides an open shed, under which we took our night's lodging. 1775.  
November.

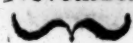
On the 5th we entered into *Sitsicamma*, where we visited the three first farmers that lay in our road. As in this province there were various unknown plants, and no naturalist had been there before us, we staid there till the 12th, when we took our departure, and set off for *Zee-koe*, or *Sea-cow-river*; and finally, from the 15th to the conclusion of the month, took up our lodging in a farm situated at the lower or southern ferry-place of this river.

On the eastern side of *Leeuwen-bosch* the country may be said to be a champain or open country, the long range of hills, by the side of which we had travelled all the way from the Cape, terminated here, or else running on to the north. This tract of land seems to come under the character I have given of the *Sweet* grass-fields and plains towards the shore. The same may be said of the hither part of *Sitsicamma*, which, especially near the shore, was extremely low and sandy.

The *myrica cerifera* is likewise to be found here, as well as at the *Duyven*, or Doves, as they are called at the Cape. The greenish wax-like and tallowy substance, with which at a certain time of the year the berries are covered, and which is probably formed by insects, being used by the inhabitants for making candles, which burn rather better than those prepared from tallow.

On the plains I saw numerous herds of the *antelope dorcas*, (or *bartbeest*, vide Plate I. Vol. II.) and likewise saw the *gnometie*, or little gazel, I spoke of at p. 279.

1775.  
November.



The interior part of *Sitsicamma* is said to consist of an impenetrable forest. Two Hottentots, who wished to penetrate through it from the *Houtniquas* side, are said to have been obliged, after having made a fruitless attempt during ten or twelve days, to turn back again, happy to have reached home in safety. They perceived a great number of elephants, with several broad beaten tracks made by these animals, but which extended only from north to south, so as to terminate and lose themselves in thick woods either near the shore, or at the range of mountains which separates *Sitsicamma* from *Houtniquas*. Buffaloes are likewise found there in great numbers.

*Kromme-rivier* itself at its mouth, or where it empties itself into the sea, is very broad and deep; so that ships might lie at anchor in it very commodiously, if the sea-breezes and the surge, which, probably, are every day varying the shape of this coast, had not blocked up the mouth of it.

*Zeekoe-rivier*, which in several places had been deep enough to harbour a great number of those large animals called *sea-cows*, (*hippopotamus amphibius*, Plate IV. Vol. II.) from which it derives its name, we now found so much choaked up with sand near the sea-side, that we could go over it dry-shod.

In *Kromme-rivier*, the farmer that lived on the spot had brought those animals to be so familiar, that I saw them swimming up and down the river in broad day-light, and often stick their nostrils up out of the water, in order to blow themselves or take breath.

On the heights near the upper farm on *Zeekoe-rivier* grew the *bread-tree* (*brood-boom*) of the Hottentots, discovered

vered by Profeffor THUNBERG, and of which he has given a defcription and drawing by the name of *Cycas Caffra*, in the *Nova Acta Reg. Soc. Scient. Ups.* Vol. II. p. 283. Tab. V. The pith or marrow (medulla) which abounds in the trunk of this little palm, is collected and tied up in dressed calf or fheep-fkins, and then buried in the earth for the fpace of feveral weeks, till it becomes fufficiently mellow and tender to be kneaded up with water into a pafte, of which they afterwards make fmall loaves or cakes, and bake them under the afhes. (For a fuller defcription of this vide l. c.) Other Hottentots, not quite fo nice, nor endued with patience enough to wait this tedious method of preparing it, are faid to dry and roaft the marrow, and afterwards make a kind of brown frumenty of it. This *cycas* grows likewise near the *Drie Fonteins* in *Lange-kloof*.

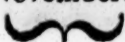
1775.  
November.

In all *Sitficamma* there were but eight farms. Among other rare and curious vegetables, it is faid there is a kind of fig-tree in the woods here, which is of a lofty gigantic growth, with undivided leaves; and the fruit of it is as good, if not better, than that produced from thofe which are cultivated in our gardens.

At *Slangen-rivier*, two years before my arrival in thefe parts, a fhip is faid to have fent a boat afhore, the crew of which filled feveral casks with water; and afterwards, going directly on board the fhips, fet fail before any of the colonifts could come up to fpeak with them. Having had an opportunity of taking obfervations on, and of laying down on my map a long tract of the coaft between *Sitficamma* and *Zondags-rivier*, and being obliged to beftow names on two remarkable points projecting from it, I

Y y 2

thought

1775.  
November.  


thought proper to name them after two experienced Swedish navigators, who at the same time have deserved the approbation of the public by the charts they have given of the African coast, I mean the Captains EKEBERG and BURTZ. The former has given the world a good chart and description of *Table* and *False-bays*. The other in his later voyages has added to the observations made by the former gentleman upon these places, and has extremely well laid down the coast between *Mossel-bay* and the *Cape*; during the period that, being on his return from China in the Swedish East-Indiaman, the *Stockholm Slott*, he had the misfortune to be detained for a considerable length of time by contrary winds, in consequence of his ship's having lost her rudder. Captain BURTZ likewise kindly communicated to me the views of the country as they are seen from the sea, which are placed at the top of my map.

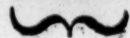
The little island which I have placed near POINT EKEBERG I have, in fact, never seen myself, but thought it right, at all events, to lay down on that spot, as Captain BURTZ was induced by an old Portuguese chart, that gives a tolerable idea of the coast, to conclude, that the bay called in it *Bay-constant*, where there is a little island near the point, is the same inlet that I have laid down near *Kromme-rivier*; so that, being on shore, I possibly might not be situated so as to see the island distinct from the continent.

Here it is likewise necessary to remark, that all the maps and charts of the eastern coast of Africa hitherto known, are faulty in making the extent of it to the eastward much less than it really is, and than I found it to be in my journey over land. I am likewise sensible, that  
many

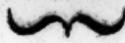
many navigators have, in the course of their voyages, taken notice of the same error; and among them Captain Cook, at the time when, being on his return from his first voyage round the globe in the *Endeavour*, he fell in with this coast unawares. Moreover, during our stay near *Sea-cow-river*, a ship was seen one evening under full sail making directly for the shore, and did not tack about till she was almost too near. I afterwards learnt at the Cape, that this was a Dutch vessel; and that from the chart she carried with her, she had not expected to come upon the coast nearly so soon, nor had she perceived it till just before she had tacked about. My host, who, while the vessel was hovering about the coast, had rode along with me to a part of the shore higher than the rest, could distinguish the ship's crew from thence; but it seems that none of them saw us, probably on account of some mist or exhalation proceeding from the land.

I remember to have read somewhere in an English Magazine an account of the Doddington, an English East-Indiaman, having suffered shipwreck on an island or rock situated in  $33\frac{1}{2}$  deg. or, more probably,  $32\frac{1}{2}$  S. lat. near the eastern coast of Africa. This account mentions, that two persons rowed in a skiff from the wreck to the continent, where, as soon as they arrived, which was towards the evening, wearied out with hard labour, they turned the boat topsy turvy, and crept under it in order to go to rest; notwithstanding which they were in great danger from the wild beasts, (probably the *hyenas* or *tiger-wolves*) which endeavoured to squeeze themselves in under the boat in order to get at them. The next morning they met with  
the

1775.  
November.



1775.  
November.

 the wild inhabitants of the country, (in all likelihood the *Bosbies-men*) who took from them a brace of pistols and their clothes; though after a little consideration, and on the sailors earnestly entreating them on their knees, they suffered them to keep their boat and oars, and return to their disastrous island, as to an asylum; whence they at length, together with some more of the crew, proceeded in a bark made out of the wreck to the northward, and came to a nation that abounded in cattle and elephants teeth, (probably the Caffres) where they were very kindly received, &c. On recollecting myself, and comparing this account with one I had from the colonists, it appears to me that this ship was wrecked right before the mouth of *Zondags-rivier*; as about twenty or thirty years ago, a smoke was seen proceeding from the island situated there. A farmer of the name of VEREIRA, who at that time was a hunting of elephants in this district, had bought of the Hottentots a pistol and a piece of red cloth, which they said they had got of some people who had come to them from sea. The colonists likewise informed me, that a year after this event, a dogger was sent from the Cape, at the request of the English East-India company, in order to search for the above-mentioned islands, and the goods that were left there; but that the captain came back, as they thought on purpose, without executing his commission. It perhaps would still pay for the labour to build a boat at *Zondags-rivier*, with a view to search for these small islands; but in order for people coming from the sea to find them, it would be necessary that somebody should have previously observed the true latitude on the continent directly opposite

sight to them; after which, by making signals by fires, the same place might easily be discovered. I often saw the above-mentioned islands from *Point Padron* in the harbour of *Krakekamma*.

1775.  
November.

The farm near *Sea-cow-river*, where we took up our head quarters from the 15th to the 30th, belonged to an honest old colonist, by nation, if I remember right, a Hessian. He was a sensible, active, ingenious man, and consequently had got his farm into the best order; upon which he had built many more tenements, than we had seen on any farm we had hitherto visited in the whole course of our journey. The main body of the house alone consisted of six rooms. He had a great number of Hottentot servants, as well as cattle; but had laid the foundation of his fortune by hunting elephants. Having been a great traveller himself in his youth, he wished to render us every service that lay in his power; offering to assist us with a good Hottentot guide, who was at the same time an excellent shot, as soon as he heard that we intended to expose ourselves to all the dangers and hardships that might arise in the course of an expedition of one hundred leagues, between that place and *Bruntjes Hoogte*, for the sake of botanizing and hunting. But, unluckily for us, the corn-harvest was now approaching, it beginning on the 23d of this month; besides which, many of his Hottentot labourers were laid up with a bilious fever.

I was therefore obliged to wait till the harvest was over, and to forward it with all the assistance my Hottentots could give. In the mean time he delegated to me the province of attending and curing the sick, and that with the greater confi-

1775.  
November.

confidence, as I had just before made two female Malabar slaves belonging to a neighbour of his, find their legs again, who, out of mere idleness, had kept their beds for several days under pretence of illness. Three slaves of the same nation, likewise belonging to this neighbour of his, also recovered by my assistance from a bilious fever; one of them, who had but just before fallen ill, was cured by a strong decoction of tobacco, the only emetic I just then had at hand. She bore, however, several tea-cups full of this disgusting liquor before it operated. The other two, who had lain above twelve days, at last got over the disorder by an alteration in their diet; but two other slaves, who were likewise Malabars, had just before died here of the same fever. A violent bleeding at the nose was said to have supervened a short time before death, and immediately after it the gall gushed out in great quantities through their nostrils; a circumstance, to which the assistants, very injudiciously keeping the fresh air from them with the greatest care, by covering them up with the bed-clothes and shutting the doors quite close, did not a little contribute.

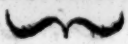
With the Christians the disorder was at the height on the third day, but with the slaves and Hottentots on the fifth or seventh.

I observed that the Hottentots complained much of a pain in their heads and necks, and sometimes in their shoulders. This pain vanished and moved downwards into their arms and legs, (so that they were not able to stand) as soon as the disorder changed for the better, which mostly happened after the administration of emetics. In a Christian girl the crisis came on with violent pains in the feet.

The

The pulse was, it must be owned, tolerably high; those that tried venesection, however, obtained no relief from it, and were, notwithstanding, troubled with a bleeding at the nose in the course of the disorder. The whites of the eyes remained yellow a long while, excepting in such as had vomited sufficiently, and by that means a metastasis of the pains was made from the neck to the legs and feet. The sick Hottentots belonging to my last host JACOB KOK, who had been just captured, and, by passing into his service, had made too sudden a transition from their savage manner of living, bore very dangerous doses before they could be made to vomit. For this purpose, besides the tobacco, I made use of *vinum emeticum, seu aqua benedicta rulandi*, which I prepared according to the Dispensary of the London college for 1762, viz. two ounces of *croc. antim. lot.* in a bottle of common Cape wine.

1775.  
November.



Though sixty drops of this was sufficient to cause a pretty violent vomiting in a Hottentot girl of fifteen years of age, brought up from her infancy among the Christians, and likewise in several adults, that made use of it at the Cape, yet four ounces had not the least effect on three Hottentot girls of about the same age, whom I had under my care all at one time; I was obliged, therefore, to force them to swallow pieces of shag tobacco in substance, and to drink several basons of the tobacco decoction, before I could bring them to vomit.

To two slender and diminutive youths, who were newly captured, I gave, by degrees, several spoonfuls of the *aqua benedicta* above-mentioned, till each of them had taken about two ounces of it, after which it began to operate. A youth of about twenty years of age, who had been very

1775.  
November.

lately caught, took eleven grains of *gummi gutta*, but did not seem to feel the least effect from it; upon which I gave him, as well as to an old Hottentot newly captured, forty and above years of age, (both of them lean and slender) several tea-cups full of the *aqua benedicta*, which was now very thick and full of sediment, taking care at the same time to shake up all the crocus of antimony from the bottom of the bottle. At first I trembled myself for the consequences which might ensue from such large doses, but found that they had very little effect, till I let the patient swallow, all at once, a foot at least in substance of tobacco cut in pieces, and drink several large basons full of a strong infusion of tobacco, and at the same time swallow down the tobacco of which the infusion was made. Nay, I was obliged into the bargain, to empty Mr. IMMELMAN's snuff-box into the throat of the younger of them, in order to encourage the vomiting: the operation was for all that very moderate in this case; otherwise, the more bile the patients vomited, the sooner they got well, viz. in the space of about two or three days.

A fat bouncing Hottentot woman, who had been several years with the Christians, either feigned or fancied herself sick. I have great reason to believe, that she pretended to be so, in order to have the pleasure of swallowing the pieces of tobacco, and the tobacco decoction, which I so liberally distributed on this occasion. Here it must be observed, that I placed the sick in the shade near the front door, and administered the medicines myself, in order to be able to judge the better of their operation; but must confess, that I was amazed to find these people's stomachs require such large doses of so bitter and strong a poison, as is tobacco.

Though,

Though, in fact, it is to the full as astonishing, to see the colonists, particularly such of them as have been bred in India, eat greedily of so pungent and fiery a substance as raw capsicum, just as if it was a piece of bread or a sweet-meat. As a preservative for the health, I made every body in the family take a spoonful of vinegar, with fresh rue, fasting; after which, nobody was attacked with the disorder.

1775.  
November.

On the 29th, the Hottentots in the neighbourhood asked the permission of their masters to have a ball and dance, in compliment to my Hottentots, who had rendered them the essential service of assisting them in getting in their corn, and were now shortly going away. Their request was granted, and as soon as the moon began to shine, the ball was opened al fresco. About twenty persons of both sexes joined in this dance, which was kept up till past midnight with the greatest spirit; and, indeed, I may say, without the least intermission. The ball, however, did not finish with this; but they went afterwards under cover, and, sitting all round in a ring, kept swinging the upper part of their bodies backwards and forwards with a slow and even motion, singing all the while in a dull monotonous manner. A dressed skin was stretched over a kettle, on which they drummed with their fingers, in unison with the voice.

The Hottentot woman, who had made or fancied herself sick, in order to get some of the tobacco decoction, seemed to be the principal person that had the direction of the dancing, as well as the music, vocal and instrumental. Should the reader wish for a more particular description of this dance, I can say little else concerning it, than that

Z z 2

it

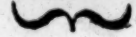
1775.  
November.

it is not to be described, at least not in all its different figures and movements. Neither, indeed, do I conceive, that it was confined to any particular rules; the chief intention seeming to be, to put the body into motion: for which purpose, every body hopped and jumped about both by themselves, and occasionally with each other; and doubtless with the same intentions they wreathed, twined, and twisted their bodies into every droll and uncommon attitude their fancy led them to. Though, perhaps, a Hottentot might be induced to form the same opinion of our most fashionable dances. In the mean time it is possible, that the Hottentot dance I have been endeavouring to give some idea of, was not totally without art in its kind, as my Hottentots from *Buffeljagts-rivier* said they had never seen such a one before, and that they were not capable of joining in it. Our host and hostess, who likewise looked on for a time, pointed out to me, however, two of their country dances; one was called the baboon-dance, in which they imitated baboons or apes: this, as well as the others, was distinguished by a thousand grimaces, the performers now and then, moreover, going upon all fours. The other was called the bee-dance, in imitation of a swarm of bees. In this every performer now appeared to make a buzzing noise. In this manner the ball continued till day-break, when the greater part of the dancers were obliged to return to their daily labours.

I likewise at this time saw an instance of the polygamy practised by the Hottentots, a practice, however, which is said to be very rare among them. An old Hottentot had married two wives, and seemed in a manner very proud of the

the possession of them, as doing credit to his manhood. I was informed, however, that the ladies very often quarrelled, and not unfrequently came to blows; and that when their spouse went to part them, they used both with one accord to fall upon him, and wreak their vengeance upon his hair.—In these times, when the Hottentots for the greater part are slaves, it is not to be wondered at, that their manners are subject to changes. In the mean while I could not get any intelligence to be depended upon, how far polygamy had been formerly more or less practised. The marriage ceremonies among the Boshies-men, are said to be no other than such as are inevitably necessary and agreeable to nature, viz. the agreement of the parties and consummation.

1775.  
November.



My host and hostess, who twenty years before had lived nearer to the Cape, viz. at *Groot Vaders Bosch*, told me they believed the report, that a master of the ceremonies performed the matrimonial rites, by the immediate conspersion of the bride and bridegroom with his own water, was not without foundation; but that this was practised only within their craals, and never in the presence of any of the colonists. My Hottentots, whom I frequently questioned upon this subject, chose neither to confess the fact, nor absolutely to deny it, so that probably this usage is still retained in some craals.

That the funeral ceremonies are alike with every different tribe of Hottentots, we are well assured, as likewise that they are conducted in the following manner. The deceased is thrust either naked or with his cloak on, into some hole in the earth, or subterraneous passage, where they generally

1775.  
November.

usually become a prey to some wild beast. However, they usually stuff a large bundle of brush-wood, or bushes, into the aperture of this hole or passage.

I was very assiduous in my enquiries, in how far it was true, that the Hottentots secluded from society such as were old and helpless. The only person that could give me any instance of this custom being practised, was my host. In his younger days, being out a hunting in *Krakekamma*, in company with one VANDER WAT, with whom I was likewise acquainted, they observed in the extensive desert plains of that district, a little narrow slip enclosed with bushes and brambles. Their curiosity being excited, they rode up to it, and found within it an old blind female Hottentot, who, at first, as soon as she heard the Christians coming, endeavoured to crawl away and hide herself; but afterwards made her appearance, though with a very sour aspect: she confessed, however, that she had been left to her fate by the inhabitants of her clan. But neither did she desire nor receive any assistance from these Christians, nor, indeed, had they made any enquiries whether this was done with or against her consent.

Calling afterwards at the *craal* she belonged to, all the information they got there was, that the old woman had actually been left there in that manner by them. With respect to any conveniencies she might have about her, they could perceive nothing, but a trough which contained a little water.

Another custom, no less horrid, which has hitherto been remarked by no one, but which I had fully confirmed to me, is, that the Hottentots are accustomed to inter, in case of

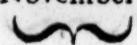
the mother's death, children at the breast alive. That very year, and on the very spot, where I then dwelt, just before my arrival, there had been the following instance of it :

1775.  
November.

A Hottentot woman at this farm had died of the epidemic fever. The other Hottentots, who did not imagine that they should be able, neither did they chuse to rear the female infant she had left behind her, had already wrapt it in a sheep-skin alive, in order to bury it, together with its deceased mother; when they were prevented from accomplishing their purpose, by some of the farmers in the neighbourhood. The child, however, died soon after of convulsions. My hostess, who at this time was rather in years, informed me, that about sixteen or seventeen years before, she had lighted upon a Hottentot infant in the district of *Zwellendam*, which was bundled up in skins in the manner above-mentioned, and tied fast to a bush, near where the child's mother had been newly buried. The infant had so much life left, as to be in a condition to be recovered. It was afterwards brought up by Mrs. Kok's parents, but died at the age of eight or nine years. From several instances of this kind related to me by others it follows, that children are never interred alive, or exposed, but when their nearest relatives, who are their natural guardians, are dead: so that I think we may conclude from this, that even superannuated people are never exposed, but in case of their having no children nor near relations to take care of them: and as these cases may occur but seldom, it is not to be wondered at if this practice should come to be less in vogue, and if consequently

we

1775.  
November.

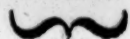


we should not so often hear of it. In the mean time, whatsoever it be that has given rise to this custom, yet we that have the happiness of being in a more civilized state, have certainly not without reason accused the Hottentots of inhumanity on this occasion. Still, however, they deserve rather to be pitied, than to be reviled and loaded with reproaches on this account; for on reflecting a little, we should, perhaps, find, that too many persons, even in our boasted civilized societies, are left almost destitute and unprotected; or, perhaps, are entirely abandoned to their dreadful fate. Indeed I fear, that if we were fairly and strictly to compare the failings and crimes of the Hottentots with those of civilized nations, the issue would turn out very little to the honour of either, and still less to that of the latter. And in fact, if we impartially consider the conduct of mankind in a general view, we shall not, perhaps, find great reason to flatter it: neither, indeed, would this be the way essentially to serve our fellow-creatures, as self-love and flattery, it is allowed on all hands, renders us dangerous enemies to ourselves; and the case is just the same with regard to mankind in general.

On the 30th, or the day after the ball, we prepared for our departure. Our host, who had hitherto entertained us in a remarkably hospitable manner, was even more than commonly careful to provide us with every thing that he thought we should want on our journey. With this view, he lent me a couple of good serviceable draught-oxen, in the place of two of mine; one of which could not be made use of, on account of its having been bit by a serpent, nor the other by reason of its being in a very  
bad

bad condition. He likewise, as I mentioned before, complimented us with his best Hottentot, whose name was PLATTJE, and whom he had always taken with him himself, in several hunting parties he had made up the country, to carry his arms for him, and assist in killing the game.

1775.  
November.



Our hostess, who was very well apprized that we should not often find a table ready spread for us in a desert of an hundred *uurs* in length, and that game did not always abound there, made up an excellent viaticum for us, consisting of a box full of biscuits, ten pounds of butter, and a large wether cut in pieces and salted in its own skin; which, after being taken off, was tied up again at each end with the meat in it, so as to serve for a sack. The rest of our provision consisted of two loaves of coarse bread, together with a bag of flour for my Hottentots, who at this time were three in number.

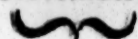
During our abode here we found a vast number of insects, and many species which we had not seen before. Among all these, what most excited my admiration was a *termes*. On a warm day, about the conclusion of the month, (I forgot to set down precisely the day) there came out of the earth in several places thousands of white insects, in shape somewhat resembling ants. Some of these were about half an inch long, and had each of them four wings, with which they soon began to fly about, and swarm round each other in the air like *ephemeræ*, though they were not observed to copulate. When caught, their wings came off remarkably easily, especially if they were not taken the greatest care of. Their bodies were milk-white, and extremely soft, so that one could easily squeeze a white liquor out of them. During this,

VOL. I.

A a a

I like-

1775.  
November.



I likewise saw thousands of smaller insects or ants, but without wings, making their way out of the holes the former had just made in the earth. These seemed very easily enraged, and were apt to bite; the heads were likewise larger in proportion, and their jaws were more pointed and sharper than those of the former. I collected a sufficient quantity of both sorts, in order to present them to my entomological friends, and particularly the largest of them to Baron DE GEER, who has adopted them, in Tom. VII. of his Memoirs, p. 47. Plate XXXVIII. Fig. 1—4. by the name *termes Capense*. This illustrious author has the greater reason to call them by the name of termes, as he himself, as well as Mr. FRISH, has discovered a termes with the rudiments of wings.

It was at the distance of a mile and a half from the farm, on rather a woody spot, that I discovered the *termes Capense*, and observed them piercing the ground in several places, and with great impatience making their way through the surface. As I was at that time taken up in attending my Hottentot patients, the greater part of these animals disappeared by the next morning, when I got back to the place of their transformation; so that I could make no farther observation on the œconomy of these insects, which, in all probability, is highly wonderful. Neither can I say with any certainty, whether this *termes Capensis* be the same species with the white ants, (as they are called) which build and inhabit those dark-grey hillocks of earth from three to four feet high, which I mentioned before, that the fugitive Boshies-men in *Lange-kloof* frequently explored to no manner of purpose: for several times, when I had an opportunity,

opportunity, or gave myself time to break into them, (and that not without some trouble) in order to examine them, I had the mortification to find the birds fled. But in the ant-hills or clumps of earth of about a foot high, which I explored on the mountains in *False-bay*, I found a grey-coloured kind of termes, or, as it is there called, pismire, somewhat different from the white unwinged ones described above: but this was lost in my collection while I was absent on my voyage round the world, so that I cannot with any precision determine to what species it belonged. The same disagreeable accident happened to me with respect to another very diminutive species of termes, or white ant, which I got a sight of twice in the road between *Bosbies-mans-rivier* and *Visch-rivier*. This termes was not greater than our *termes pulsatorium*, or death-watch; and, as well as I can remember, was very like the white ant of the East-Indies, or the *termes fatale*. Contrary to all expectation, these made their way out of the hard ground, coming to be our guests in considerable numbers, whenever we happened to set our butter-tub, or any thing fat or greasy belonging to our provender-chest on the ground.

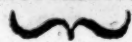
The winged ants first-mentioned (*termes Capense*) my host had seen in a much greater quantity; he likewise informed me, that the *Bosbies-men* and other Hottentots, who were obliged to seek their own food themselves, soon grew fat and in good condition by eating these insects. For this purpose, they were said sometimes to boil them in their earthen vessels, in the manner they usually did grasshoppers; and at other times to eat them raw, as I at that moment saw my host's Hottentots do with respect to some few which

A a a 2

flew,

1775.  
November.

1775.  
November.



flew, or rather were driven by the wind into their master's grounds; where the people being then busy in getting in their corn, neither could, nor, indeed, as they had plenty of other food, did they need to spend their time in catching these insects. As my host's only son likewise tasted one of these winged ants, I was induced to follow his example. It seemed to me merely to feel cold in the mouth, without any particular taste; though with greens it would, probably, make as good a dish as seago, or crabs, those scorpion-like insects, which we have accustomed ourselves to eat in Europe. In one part of *Carniola* near the Danube, where they are used to collect *ephemeræ* by the cart-load for the purpose of manuring their land, an insect-eating race like the Hottentots would, doubtless, make as good a feast upon them, as they do in Africa upon ants and locusts. Whether the most mischievous species of *termes*, the *termes fatale*, Syft. Nat. or, as they are called, the white ants of the East and West-Indies, whether these naturally inhabit the Cape, I cannot determine with any degree of certainty; though it has been often asserted, that the white ants sometimes come thither with the East-India ships, and nestle themselves in there for some time. Mr. IMMELMAN's parents told me, that a brick floor, laid upon the bare earth in the lower part of the house, sunk all at once to the extent of about four feet square and two feet deep: and it was found, that this unexpected mine proceeded from some white ants, which had made their nests beneath the flooring, and from thence likewise had begun to form avenues to the pantry. However, they destroyed at once the whole colony of these unwelcome guests, by  
pouring

1775.  
November.

pouring boiling water upon them. Otherwise people are wont, according to the accounts I have received from those who have been in the East-Indies, to drive away these insects with petrolæum, and other strong-scented oils. Rotten fish, which are said to be as bad as poison to pismires, would likewise, probably, clear the houses of the *termes*. Though, perhaps, the strongest poison for these insects is arsenic; as a small pinch of it only strewed in any place in the vicinity of them will, according to M. CHANVELON, in his *Voyage to Martinico*, kill many millions of them in a few hours.

The damages caused by the white ants, as they are called, (which, however, perhaps, consist of many different species) may be pretty well guessed at from what has been said already. It, however, deserves likewise to be mentioned, that merchandize to an infinite amount are destroyed yearly both in the East and West-Indies by these vermin. In the space of a few hours they are able to eat into a chest, and, as it were, cut to pieces all the linen, silk, clothes, and books in it; on which account, people in these countries are obliged to have their trunks and merchandize slung upon ropes. It is likewise, perhaps, capable of multiplying its species more than any other insect; for Professor LINNÆUS very kindly shewed me a female, which he had just before received from the East-Indies, and which was an inch and a half long, and of an extreme bulk, and consequently capable of laying millions of eggs.

Though I could not learn whether the more noxious species of white ants are natives of the Cape or not, yet it is very well known, that Africa, at least that part of it  
near

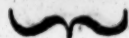
1775.  
November.

near Senegal, is pestered with them. In so short a space of time as between the evening and midnight, they have been known to form a vault or covered way of earth or clay, which they have gone in quest of and prepared themselves, as other observers have remarked. This arched way reached from the floor of M. ADANSON's chamber to the head of his bed, (see his *Voyage au Senegal*.) They moreover not only began to cut his sheet and mattress in pieces, but even had the impudence to fall foul on M. ADANSON himself. A Hottentot with a good appetite, would here have had a fair opportunity of putting in execution the *lex talionis* \*.

The locusts, likewise, sometimes afford a high treat to the more unpolished and remote hordes of the Hottentots; when, as sometimes happens, after an interval of eight, ten, fifteen, or twenty years, they make their appearance in incredible numbers. At these times they come from the north, migrating to the southward, and do not suffer themselves to be impeded by any obstacles, but fly boldly on, and are drowned in the sea whenever they come to it. The females of this race of insects, which are most apt to migrate, and are chiefly eaten, are said not to be able to fly; partly by reason of the shortness of their wings, and partly on account of their being heavy and distended with eggs; and shortly after they have laid these in the sand they are said to die. It is particularly of these that the Hottentots are said to make a brown coffee-coloured soup, which, at the same time, acquires from the eggs a

\* In Vol. LXXI. of the Phil. Transf. may be seen a more circumstantial and complete account of these insects, by Mr. Smeathman.

fat and greasy appearance. Several different people agreed in giving me this account, and at the same time informed me, that the Hottentots were highly rejoiced at the arrival of these locusts, though they are sure to destroy every bit of verdure on the ground: but the Hottentots make themselves ample amends for this loss, by falling foul on the animals themselves, eating them in such quantities as, in the space of a few days, to get visibly fatter and in better condition than before. My host in particular informed me, that being one locust-year on a hunting expedition on the other side of *Visch*-river, the Hottentots in those parts explained the abundance of these insects as proceeding from some great *master conjuror* a good way to the northward, having removed a stone from the mouth of a certain deep pit, out of which he had let loose these animals, in order to be food for them. The intentions of nature, however, in the production of locusts, is hardly answered, by their sometimes serving to fatten a few Hottentots. But I over-ran too hastily the very extensive tracts composing the southern promontory of this quarter of the globe, to be able to point out with any degree of certainty, any other uses accruing from the migration of the locusts thither in such great numbers. I will venture, however, to throw out a conjecture, which, at least, can do no harm; namely, that according to all accounts, wherever the swarms of locusts alight, the vegetables are sometimes entirely consumed and destroyed, appearing as if they had been burnt up by fire. Perhaps, the use of these creatures is the same with that of fire, which latter is applied by the colonists and Hottentots to the purpose of clearing their

1775.  
November.

1775.  
November.

their fields from weeds. The ground is, indeed, by this means, in both cases, stripped quite bare; but merely in order that it may shortly afterwards appear in a much more beautiful dress, being, in this case, decked with many kinds of annual grasses, herbs, and superb lilies, which had been choaked up before by shrubs and perennial plants. These last, moreover, which, throughout the whole of the preceding year, were hard, dry, withered, and half dead, of a pale yellow colour, harsh, and unfit for fodder, have now an opportunity of springing up again, so as to produce with their young shoots and leaves, pastures adorned with a delightful verdure for the use of the cattle and game.

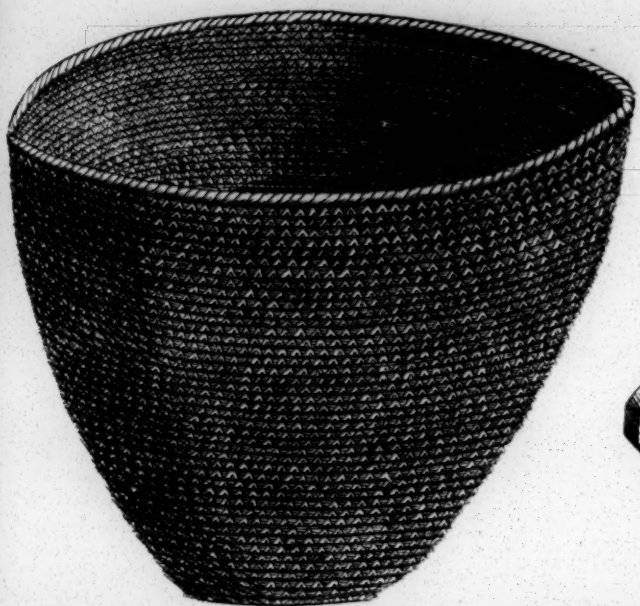
The weather in this month was warmer than in any of the preceding, especially towards the conclusion of it, when we quitted *Lange-kloof*, and *Kromme-rivier*, and came to the plains by the sea-side.

The thermometer generally rose at about eight o'clock in the morning from 65 to 70 in the shade, and in the shade at noon it was sometimes as high as 80.

The rainy days were the 11th, 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, and 26th; sometimes with a south-east, and at other times with a south-westerly wind. On the remaining days, which were fine and free from rain, the north-west and west winds almost always prevailed.



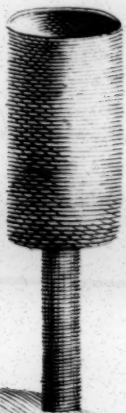
END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.



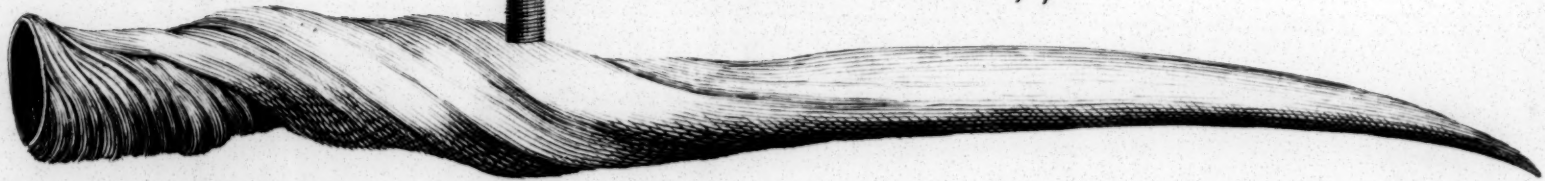
*1. Milk Basket.*



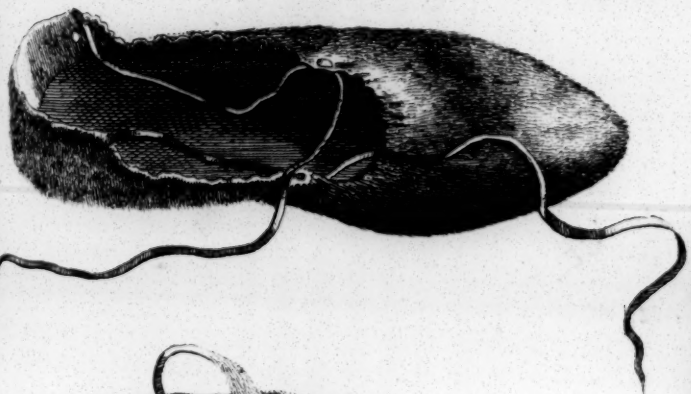
*2. Necklace of Shells*  
*Nat. Size*



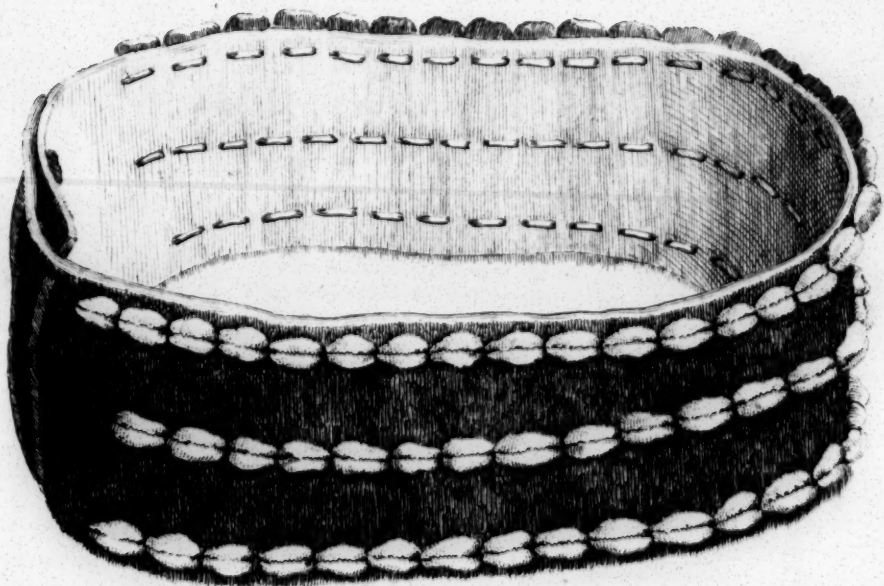
*3. Boshiesman Tobacco-pipe*



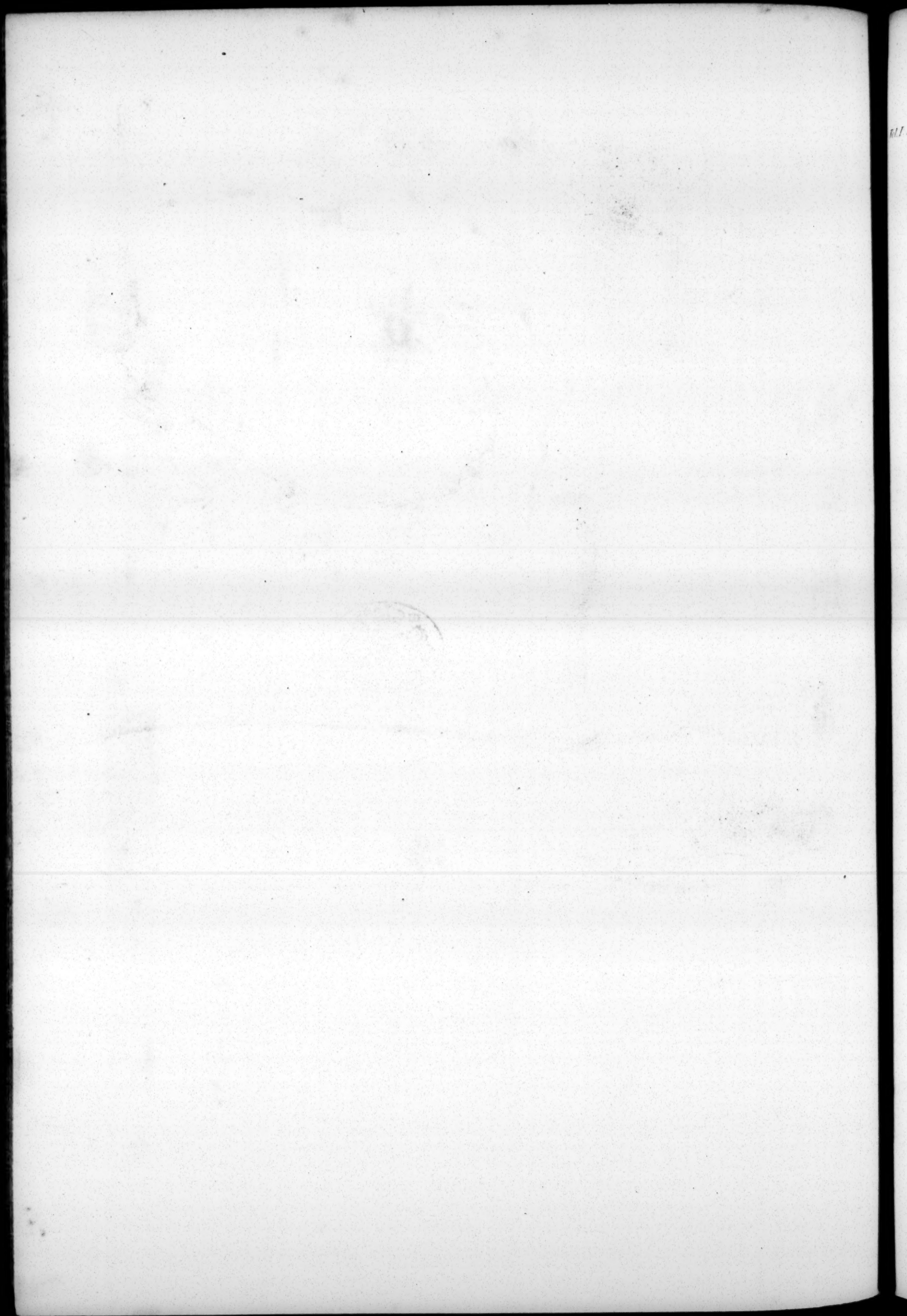
*4. Field Shoe.*



*6 Man's Belt.*



*5. Woman's head Ornament.*

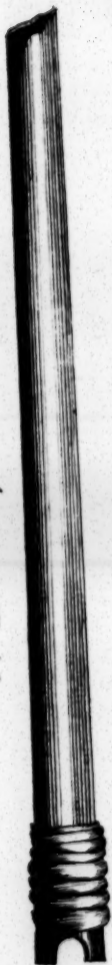


*Arms &c. of the Hottentots.*

7 Arrow head



6. Bottom of the Arrow



5 Quiver.



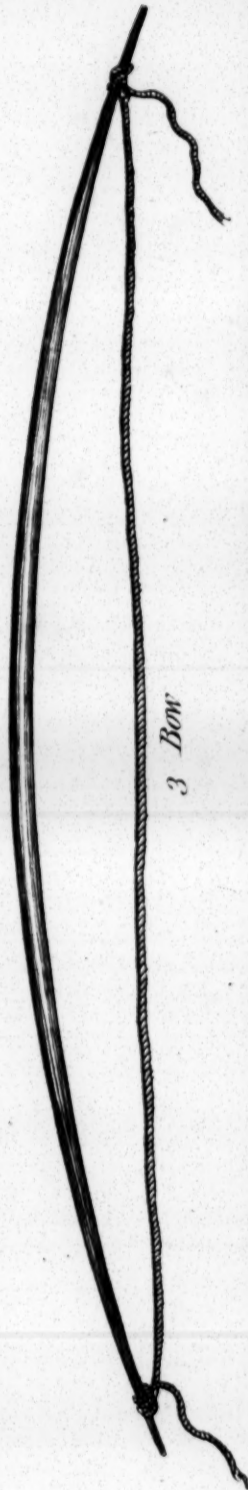
*Metallic Ear-rings*



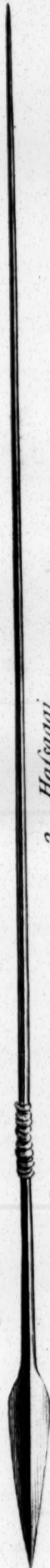
4 Head of the Arrow. nat. size.



3 Bow



2 Haisagui



1. Head of the Haisagui







